



CX410 Series

User's Guide

June 2013

www.lexmark.com

Machine type(s):

7527

Model(s):

415, 436

Contents

Safety information.....	7
Learning about the printer.....	9
Finding information about the printer.....	9
Selecting a location for the printer.....	10
Printer configurations.....	11
Understanding the basic functions of the scanner.....	12
Using the ADF and scanner glass.....	13
Understanding the printer control panel.....	14
Using the printer control panel.....	14
Understanding the home screen.....	14
Understanding the colors of the Sleep button and indicator lights.....	16
Using the touch-screen buttons.....	16
Setting up and using the home screen applications.....	18
Finding the IP address of the computer.....	18
Finding the IP address of the printer.....	19
Accessing the Embedded Web Server.....	19
Customizing the home screen.....	19
Understanding the different applications.....	20
Activating the home screen applications.....	20
Finding information about the home screen applications.....	20
Setting up Forms and Favorites	20
Setting up Card Copy	21
Using MyShortcut	22
Setting up Multi Send	22
Setting up Scan to Network	23
Setting up Remote Operator Panel.....	24
Exporting and importing a configuration.....	24
Additional printer setup.....	26
Installing internal options.....	26
Installing hardware options.....	32
Attaching cables.....	35
Setting up the printer software.....	36

Networking.....	38
Verifying printer setup.....	43
Loading paper and specialty media.....	44
Setting the paper size and type.....	44
Configuring Universal paper settings.....	44
Loading the 250- and 550-sheet tray.....	44
Loading the manual feeder.....	47
Loading the 650-sheet duo tray.....	48
Loading the multipurpose feeder.....	49
Linking and unlinking trays.....	51
Paper and specialty media guide.....	54
Using specialty media.....	54
Paper guidelines.....	57
Supported paper sizes, types, and weights.....	60
Printing.....	64
Printing forms.....	64
Printing a document.....	64
Printing from a flash drive or mobile device.....	66
Printing confidential and other held jobs.....	68
Printing information pages.....	70
Canceling a print job.....	71
Copying.....	72
Making copies.....	72
Copying photos.....	73
Copying on specialty media.....	73
Creating a copy shortcut using the printer control panel.....	74
Customizing copy settings.....	74
Placing information on copies.....	79
Canceling a copy job.....	80
Understanding the copy options.....	81
E-mailing.....	85
Setting up the printer to e-mail.....	85
Creating an e-mail shortcut.....	85

E-mailing a document.....	86
Customizing e-mail settings.....	88
Canceling an e-mail.....	89
Understanding the e-mail options.....	89
Faxing.....	92
Setting up the printer to fax.....	92
Sending a fax.....	106
Creating shortcuts.....	109
Customizing fax settings.....	110
Canceling an outgoing fax.....	111
Holding and forwarding faxes.....	111
Understanding the fax options.....	112
Scanning.....	115
Using Scan to Network.....	115
Scanning to an FTP address.....	115
Scanning to a computer or flash drive.....	117
Understanding the scan options.....	119
Understanding printer menus.....	123
Menus list.....	123
Supplies menu.....	124
Paper menu.....	125
Reports menu.....	134
Network/Ports.....	135
Security menu.....	144
Settings menu.....	147
Saving money and the environment.....	200
Saving paper and toner.....	200
Saving energy.....	201
Recycling.....	205
Securing the printer.....	207
Using the security lock feature.....	207
Statement of Volatility.....	207
Erasing volatile memory.....	208

Erasing non-volatile memory.....	208
Erasing printer hard disk memory.....	209
Configuring printer hard disk encryption.....	209
Finding printer security information.....	210
Maintaining the printer.....	211
Storing supplies.....	211
Cleaning printer parts.....	211
Checking the status of parts and supplies.....	213
Estimated number of remaining pages.....	213
Ordering supplies.....	214
Replacing supplies.....	216
Moving the printer.....	235
Managing the printer.....	237
Finding advanced networking and administrator information.....	237
Checking the virtual display.....	237
Setting up e-mail alerts.....	237
Viewing reports.....	237
Configuring supply notifications from the Embedded Web Server.....	238
Modifying confidential print settings.....	239
Copying printer settings to other printers.....	239
Restoring factory default settings.....	239
Clearing jams.....	241
Avoiding jams.....	241
Understanding jam messages and locations.....	242
[x]-page jam, clear standard bin [203.xx].....	244
[x]-page jam, open front door to clear fuser [202.xx].....	247
[x]-page jam, open front door [20y.xx].....	250
[x]-page jam, open front door to clear duplex [23y.xx].....	251
[x]-page jam, open tray [x] [24y.xx].....	252
[x]-page jam, clear manual feeder [251.xx].....	254
[x]-page jam, clear multipurpose feeder [250.xx].....	254
[x]-page jam, open automatic feeder top cover. [28y.xx].....	256

Troubleshooting.....258

 Understanding the printer messages.....258

 Solving printer problems.....272

 Solving print problems.....279

 Solving copy problems.....306

 Solving fax problems.....310

 Solving scanner problems.....315

 Solving home screen applications problems.....320

 Embedded Web Server does not open.....320

 Contacting customer support.....322

Notices.....323

 Product information.....323

 Edition notice.....323


 Power consumption.....327

Index.....341


Safety information


Connect the power cord to a properly grounded electrical outlet that is near the product and easily accessible.


Do not place or use this product near water or wet locations.


 **CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY:** This product uses a laser. Use of controls or adjustments or performance of procedures other than those specified herein may result in hazardous radiation exposure.

This product uses a printing process that heats the print media, and the heat may cause the media to release emissions. You must understand the section in your operating instructions that discusses the guidelines for selecting print media to avoid the possibility of harmful emissions.

 **CAUTION—HOT SURFACE:** The inside of the printer might be hot. To reduce the risk of injury from a hot component, allow the surface to cool before touching.

 **CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY:** The lithium battery in this product is not intended to be replaced. There is a danger of explosion if a lithium battery is incorrectly replaced. Do not recharge, disassemble, or incinerate a lithium battery. Discard used lithium batteries according to the manufacturer's instructions and local regulations.

 **CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY:** The printer weight is greater than 18 kg (40 lb) and requires two or more trained personnel to lift it safely.


 **CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY:** Before moving the printer, follow these guidelines to avoid personal injury or printer damage:


- Turn the printer off using the power switch, and then unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet.
- Disconnect all cords and cables from the printer before moving it.
- Lift the printer off the optional tray, and then set it aside instead of trying to lift the tray and printer at the same time.

Note: Use the handholds located on both sides of the printer to lift it.


Use only the power cord provided with this product or the manufacturer's authorized replacement.

Use only the telecommunications (RJ-11) cord provided with this product or a 26 AWG or larger replacement when connecting this product to the public switched telephone network.





 **CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD:** If you are accessing the controller board or installing optional hardware or memory devices sometime after setting up the printer, then turn the printer off, and unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet before continuing. If you have any other devices attached to the printer, then turn them off as well, and unplug any cables going into the printer.

 **CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD:** Make sure that all external connections (such as Ethernet and telephone system connections) are properly installed in their marked plug-in ports.

This product is designed, tested, and approved to meet strict global safety standards with the use of specific manufacturer's components. The safety features of some parts may not always be obvious. The manufacturer is not responsible for the use of other replacement parts.

 **CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY:** Do not cut, twist, bind, crush, or place heavy objects on the power cord. Do not subject the power cord to abrasion or stress. Do not pinch the power cord between objects such as furniture and walls. If any of these things happen, a risk of fire or electrical shock results. Inspect the power cord regularly for signs of such problems. Remove the power cord from the electrical outlet before inspecting it.


Refer service or repairs, other than those described in the user documentation, to a service representative.

-  **CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD:** To avoid the risk of electrical shock when cleaning the exterior of the printer, unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet and disconnect all cables from the printer before proceeding.
-  **CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD:** Do not use the fax feature during a lightning storm. Do not set up this product or make any electrical or cabling connections, such as the fax feature, power cord, or telephone, during a lightning storm.
-  **CAUTION—TIPPING HAZARD:** Floor-mounted configurations require additional furniture for stability. You must use either a printer stand or printer base if you are using multiple input options. If you purchased a multifunction printer (MFP) that scans, copies, and faxes, then you may need additional furniture. For more information, see www.lexmark.com/multifunctionprinters.
-  **CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY:** To reduce the risk of equipment instability, load each tray separately. Keep all other trays closed until needed.

SAVE THESE INSTRUCTIONS.


Learning about the printer

Finding information about the printer

What are you looking for?	Find it here
Initial setup instructions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Connecting the printer Installing the printer software 	Setup documentation—The setup documentation came with the printer and is also available at http://support.lexmark.com .
Additional setup and instructions for using the printer: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Selecting and storing paper and specialty media Loading paper Configuring printer settings Viewing and printing documents and photos Setting up and using the printer software Configuring the printer on a network Caring for and maintaining the printer Troubleshooting and solving problems 	<i>User's Guide</i> and <i>Quick Reference Guide</i> —The guides may be available on the <i>Software and Documentation</i> CD. For more information, visit http://support.lexmark.com .
Instructions for: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Connecting the printer to an Ethernet network Troubleshooting printer connection problems 	<i>Networking Guide</i> —Open the <i>Software and Documentation</i> CD, and then navigate to: Documentation > User's Guide and other publications > Networking Guide
Help using the printer software	Windows or Mac Help—Open a printer software program or application, and then click Help . Click  to view context-sensitive information. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Help is automatically installed with the printer software. The printer software is located in the printer program folder or on the desktop, depending on your operating system.

What are you looking for?	Find it here
<p>The latest supplemental information, updates, and customer support:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Documentation • Driver downloads • Live chat support • E-mail support • Voice support 	<p>Lexmark support Web site— http://support.lexmark.com</p> <p>Note: Select your country or region, and then select your product to view the appropriate support site.</p> <p>Support telephone numbers and hours of operation for your country or region can be found on the support Web site or on the printed warranty that came with your printer.</p> <p>Record the following information (located on the store receipt and at the back of the printer), and have it ready when you contact customer support so that they may serve you faster:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Machine Type number • Serial number • Date purchased • Store where purchased
Warranty information	<p>Warranty information varies by country or region:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • In the U.S.—See the Statement of Limited Warranty included with this printer, or at http://support.lexmark.com. • In other countries and regions—See the printed warranty that came with your printer.

Selecting a location for the printer

 **CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY:** The printer weight is greater than 18 kg (40 lb) and requires two or more trained personnel to lift it safely.

When selecting a location for the printer, leave enough room to open trays, covers, and doors. If you plan to install any options, then leave enough room for them also. It is important to:

- Set up the printer near a properly grounded and easily accessible electrical outlet.
- Make sure airflow in the room meets the latest revision of the ASHRAE 62 standard or the CEN Technical Committee 156 standard.
- Provide a flat, sturdy, and stable surface.
- Keep the printer:
 - Clean, dry, and free of dust.
 - Away from stray staples and paper clips.
 - Away from the direct airflow of air conditioners, heaters, or ventilators.
 - Free from direct sunlight and humidity extremes.
- Observe the recommended temperatures and avoid fluctuations:

Ambient temperature	15.6 to 32.2°C (60 to 90°F)
Storage temperature	-40 to 43°C (-40 to 110°F)

- Allow the following recommended amount of space around the printer for proper ventilation:



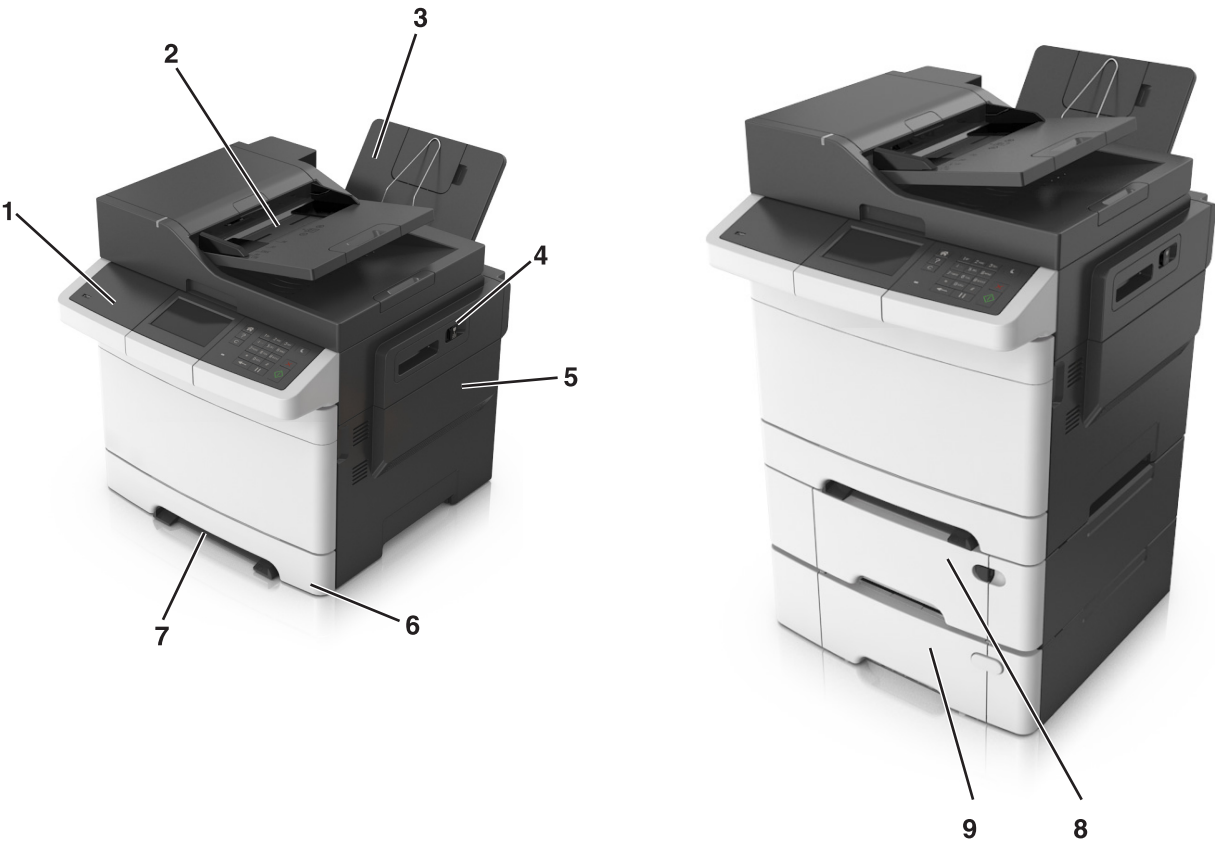
1	Right side	304.8 mm (12 in.)
2	Front	508 mm (20 in.)
3	Left side	76.2 mm (3 in.)
4	Rear	101.6 mm (4 in.)
5	Top	291.7 mm (11.5 in.)

Printer configurations



CAUTION—TIPPING HAZARD: Floor-mounted configurations require additional furniture for stability. You must use either a printer stand or printer base if you are using multiple input options. If you purchased a multifunction printer (MFP) that scans, copies, and faxes, then you may need additional furniture. For more information, see www.lexmark.com/multifunctionprinters.

Basic models





1	Printer control panel
2	Automatic document feeder (ADF)
3	Standard bin
4	Top door latch
5	Right side cover
6	Standard 250-sheet tray (Tray 1)
7	Manual feeder
8	Optional 650-sheet duo tray with integrated multipurpose feeder (Tray 2)
9	Optional 550-sheet tray (Tray 3)

Understanding the basic functions of the scanner

- Make quick copies or set the printer to perform specific copy jobs.
- Send a fax using the printer control panel.
- Send a fax to multiple fax destinations at the same time.
- Scan documents and send them to your computer, an e-mail address, or an FTP destination.
- Scan documents and send them to another printer (PDF through an FTP).

Using the ADF and scanner glass

Automatic document feeder (ADF)	Scanner glass
 <p>Use the ADF for multiple-page documents including two-sided (duplex) pages.</p>	 <p>Use the scanner glass for single-page documents, book pages, small items (such as postcards or photos), transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings).</p>

Using the ADF

When using the ADF:

- Load the document into the ADF tray faceup, short edge first.
- Load up to 50 sheets of plain paper into the ADF tray.
- Scan sizes from 105 x 148 mm (4.1 x 5.8 inches) wide to 216 x 355 mm (8.5 x 14 inches) long.
- Scan media weights from 52 to 120 g/m² (14 to 32 lb).
- Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF tray. Place these items on the scanner glass.

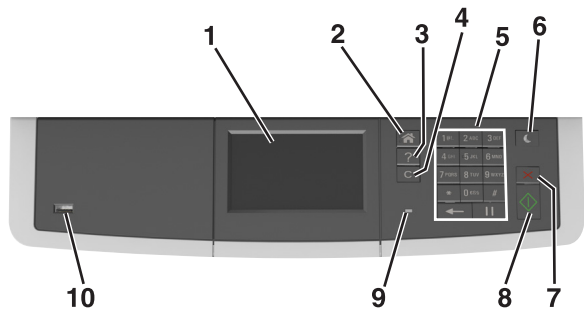
Using the scanner glass

When using the scanner glass:

- Place a document facedown on the scanner glass in the corner with the green arrow.
- Scan or copy documents from 216 x 296.9 mm (8.5 x 11.69 inches) dimension.
- Copy books up to 12.7 mm (0.5 inch) thick.

Understanding the printer control panel

Using the printer control panel

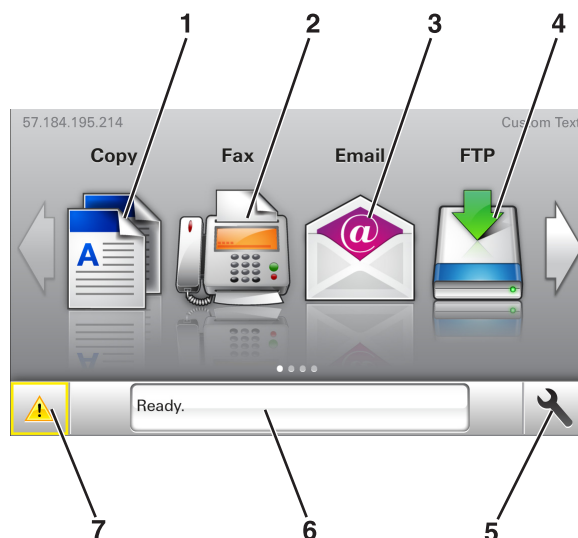


	Use the	To
1	Display	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• View the printer status and messages.• Set up and operate the printer.
2	Home button	Go to the home screen.
3	Help button	Go to the Help menus.
4	Clear all / Reset button	Reset the default settings of a function, such as printing, copying, or e-mailing.
5	Keypad	Enter numbers, letters, or symbols.
6	Sleep button	Enable Sleep mode or Hibernate mode.
7	Cancel button	Cancel all printer activity.
8	Start button	Start a job, depending on which mode is selected.
9	Indicator light	Check the status of the printer.
10	USB port	Connect a flash drive to the printer. Note: Only the front USB port supports flash drives.

Understanding the home screen

When the printer is turned on, the display shows a basic screen, referred to as the home screen. Use the home screen buttons and icons to initiate an action such as copying, faxing, or scanning; to open the menu screen; or respond to messages.

Note: Your home screen may vary depending on your home screen customization settings, administrative setup, and active embedded solutions.





Touch	To	
1	Copy	Access the Copy menus and make copies.
2	Fax	Access the Fax menus and send fax.
3	E-mail	Access the E-mail menus and send e-mails.
4	FTP	Access the File Transfer Protocol (FTP) menus and scan documents directly to an FTP server.
5	Menu icon	Access printer menus. Note: The menus are available only when the printer is in ready state.
6	Status message bar	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Show the current printer status such as Ready or Busy. Show printer supply conditions such as Imaging unit low or Cartridge Low. Show intervention messages and the instructions on how to clear them.
7	Status/Supplies	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Show a printer warning or error message whenever the printer requires intervention to continue processing. View more information on the printer warning or message, and on how to clear it.

This may also appear on the home screen:

Touch	To
Search Held Jobs	Search current held jobs.
Jobs by user	Access print jobs saved by user.
Profiles and Solutions	Access profiles and solutions.

Features

Feature	Description
Attendance message alert 	If an attendance message affects a function, then this icon appears and the red indicator light blinks.

Feature	Description
Warning 	If an error condition occurs, then this icon appears.
Printer IP address Example: 123 . 123 . 123 . 123	The IP address of your printer is located at the top left corner of the home screen and appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods. You can use the IP address when accessing the Embedded Web Server to view and remotely configure printer settings even when you are not physically near the printer.

Understanding the colors of the Sleep button and indicator lights

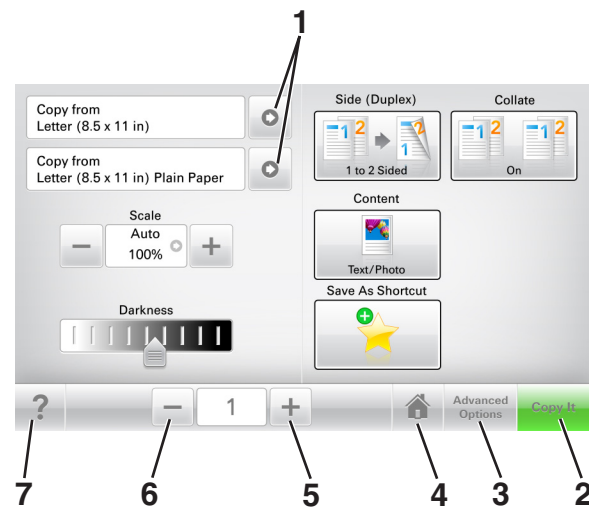
The colors of the Sleep button and indicator lights on the printer control panel signify a certain printer status or condition.

Indicator light	Printer status
Off	The printer is off or in Hibernate mode.
Blinking green	The printer is warming up, processing data, or printing.
Solid green	The printer is on, but idle.
Blinking red	The printer requires user intervention.

Sleep button light	Printer status
Off	The printer is off, idle or in Ready state.
Solid amber	The printer is in Sleep mode.
Blinking amber	The printer is entering or waking from Hibernate mode.
Blinking amber for 0.1 second, then goes completely off for 1.9 seconds in a slow, pulsing pattern	The printer is in Hibernate mode.




Using the touch-screen buttons

Note: Your home screen, icons, and buttons may vary, depending on your home screen customization settings, administrative setup, and active embedded solutions.



	Touch	To
1	Arrows	View a list of options.
2	Copy It	Print a copy.
3	Advanced Options	Select a copy option.
4	Home	Go to the home screen.
5	Increase	Select a higher value.
6	Decrease	Select a lower value.
7	Tips	Open a context-sensitive Help dialog.

Other touch-screen buttons

Touch	To
Accept 	Save a setting.
Cancel 	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Cancel an action or a selection.• Exit a screen and return to the previous screen without saving changes.
Reset 	Reset values on the screen.

Setting up and using the home screen applications

Notes:

- Your home screen may vary, depending on your home screen customization settings, administrative setup, and active embedded applications. Some applications are supported only in select printer models.
- There may be additional solutions and applications available for purchase. For more information, visit www.lexmark.com or contact the place where you purchased the printer.

Finding the IP address of the computer

Note: Make sure that you know how your printer and computer are connected to the network (Ethernet or wireless).

The computer IP address is required when setting up home screen applications, such as:

- Forms and Favorites
- Multi Send
- Scan to Network

For Windows users


- 1 Open the command window.

In Windows 8

From the Search charm, type **run**, and then navigate to:

Apps list > **Run** > type **cmd** > **OK**

In Windows 7 or earlier

- a Click  or click **Start**, and then click **Run**.
- b In the Start Search or Run dialog, type **cmd**.
- c Press **Enter**, or click **OK**.

- 2 Type **ipconfig**, and then click **Go** or press **Enter**.

Note: Type **ipconfig /all** to see additional useful information.

- 3 Look for **IP Address**.

The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.

For Macintosh users

Note: This is applicable only in Mac OS X version 10.5 or later.

- 1 From the Apple menu, navigate to:
System Preferences > Network
- 2 Click **Ethernet**, **Wi-Fi**, or **AirPort**.

3 Click **Advanced > TCP/IP**.

4 Look for **IPv4 Address**.

Finding the IP address of the printer

Note: Make sure your printer is connected to a network or to a print server.

You can find the printer IP address:

- From the top left corner of the printer home screen.
- From the TCP/IP section in the Network/Ports menu.
- By printing a network setup page or menu settings page, and then finding the TCP/IP section.

Note: An IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.

Accessing the Embedded Web Server

The Embedded Web Server is the printer Web page that lets you view and remotely configure printer settings even when you are not physically near the printer.

1 Obtain the printer IP address:

- From the printer control panel home screen
- From the TCP/IP section in the Network/Ports menu
- By printing a network setup page or menu settings page, and then finding the TCP/IP section

Note: An IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123 . 123 . 123 . 123.

2 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

3 Press **Enter**.

Note: If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

Customizing the home screen

1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

Note: View the printer IP address on the printer home screen. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.

2 Do one or more of the following:

- Show or hide the icons of basic printer functions.
 - a Click **Settings > General Settings > Home screen customization**.
 - b Select the check boxes to specify which icons appear on the home screen.

Note: If you clear a check box beside an icon, then the icon does not appear on the home screen.

c Click **Submit**.

- Customize the icon for an application. For more information, see [“Finding information about the home screen applications” on page 20](#) or see the documentation that came with the application.

Understanding the different applications

Use	To
Card Copy	Scan and print both sides of a card on a single page. For more information, see “Setting up Card Copy” on page 21.
Fax	Scan a document, and then send it to a fax number. For more information, see “Faxing” on page 92.
Forms and Favorites	Quickly find and print frequently used online forms directly from the printer home screen. For more information, see “Setting up Forms and Favorites” on page 20.
Multi Send	Scan a document, and then send it to multiple destinations. For more information, see “Setting up Multi Send” on page 22.
MyShortcut	Create shortcuts directly on the printer home screen. For more information, see “Using MyShortcut” on page 22.
Scan to E-mail	Scan a document, and then send it to an e-mail address. For more information, see “E-mailing” on page 85.
Scan to Computer	Scan a document, and then save it to a predefined folder on a host computer. For more information, see “Setting up Scan to Computer” on page 118.
Scan to FTP	Scan documents directly to a File Transfer Protocol (FTP) server. For more information, see “Scanning to an FTP address” on page 115.
Scan to Network	Scan a document, and then send it to a network shared folder. For more information, see “Setting up Scan to Network” on page 23.

Activating the home screen applications

Finding information about the home screen applications


Your printer comes with preinstalled home screen applications. Before you can use these applications, you must first activate and set up these applications using the Embedded Web Server. For more information on accessing the Embedded Web Server, see [“Accessing the Embedded Web Server” on page 19.](#)

For more information on configuring and using the home screen applications, do the following:

- 1 Go to <http://support.lexmark.com>.
- 2 Click **Software Solutions**, and then select either of the following:
 - **Scan to Network**—This lets you find information about the Scan to Network application.
 - **Other Applications**—This lets you find information about the other applications.
- 3 Click the **Manuals** tab, and then select the document for the home screen application.

Setting up Forms and Favorites

Note: A later version of this *User's Guide* may contain a direct link to the *Administrator's Guide* of this application. To check for updates of this *User's Guide*, go to <http://support.lexmark.com>.

Use	To
	<p>Streamline work processes by letting you quickly find and print frequently used online forms directly from the printer home screen.</p> <p>Note: The printer must have permission to access the network folder, FTP site, or Web site where the bookmark is stored. From the computer where the bookmark is stored, use sharing, security, and firewall settings to allow the printer at least a <i>read</i> access. For help, see the documentation that came with your operating system.</p>

- 1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

Note: View the printer IP address on the printer home screen. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.

- 2 Click **Settings > Apps > Apps Management > Forms and Favorites**.

- 3 Click **Add**, and then customize the settings.

Notes:


- See the mouse-over help beside each field for a description of the setting.
- To make sure the location settings of the bookmark are correct, type the correct IP address of the host computer where the bookmark is located. For more information on obtaining the IP address of the host computer, see [“Finding the IP address of the computer” on page 18](#).
- Make sure the printer has access rights to the folder where the bookmark is located.

- 4 Click **Apply**.

To use the application, touch **Forms and Favorites** on the printer home screen, and then navigate through form categories, or search for forms based on a form number, name, or description.

Setting up Card Copy

Note: A later version of this *User's Guide* may contain a direct link to the *Administrator's Guide* of this application. To check for updates of this *User's Guide*, go to <http://support.lexmark.com>.

Use	To
	<p>Quickly and easily copy insurance, identification, and other wallet-size cards.</p> <p>You can scan and print both sides of a card on a single page, saving paper and showing the information on the card in a more convenient manner.</p>

- 1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

Note: View the printer IP address on the printer home screen. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.

- 2 Click **Settings > Apps > Apps Management > Card Copy**.

3 Change the default scanning options, if necessary.

- **Default tray**—Select the default tray to be used for printing scan images.
- **Default number of copies**—Specify the number of copies that should automatically print when the application is used.
- **Default contrast setting**—Specify a setting to increase or decrease the level of contrast when a copy of the scanned card is printed. Select **Best for Content** if you want the printer to adjust the contrast automatically.
- **Default scale setting**—Set the size of the scanned card when printed. The default setting is 100% (full size).
- **Color Output**—Select the check box to print the scanned card in color, or clear it to scan in black and white.
- **Resolution setting**—Adjust the quality of the scanned card.

Notes:


- When scanning a card, make sure the scan resolution is not more than 200 dpi for color, and 400 dpi for black and white.
- When scanning multiple cards, make sure the scan resolution is not more than 150 dpi for color, and 300 dpi for black and white.
- **Print Borders**—Select the check box to print the scan image with a border around it.

4 Click **Apply**.

To use the application, touch **Card Copy** on the printer home screen, and then follow the instructions.

Using MyShortcut


Note: A later version of this *User's Guide* may contain a direct link to the *Administrator's Guide* of this application. To check for updates of this *User's Guide*, go to <http://support.lexmark.com>.

Use	To
	Create shortcuts on the printer home screen, with settings for up to 25 frequently used copy, fax, or e-mail jobs.

To use the application, touch **MyShortcut**, and then follow the instructions on the printer display.

Setting up Multi Send

Note: A later version of this *User's Guide* may contain a direct link to the *Administrator's Guide* of this application. To check for updates of this *User's Guide*, go to <http://support.lexmark.com>.

Use	To
	<p>Scan a document, and then send the scanned document to multiple destinations.</p> <p>Note: Make sure there is enough space in the printer hard disk.</p>

- 1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

Note: View the printer IP address on the printer home screen. The printer IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.

- 2 Click **Settings > Apps > Apps Management > Multi Send**.

- 3 From the Profiles section, click **Add**, and then customize the settings.

Notes:


- See the mouse-over help beside each field for a description of the setting.
- If you select **FTP** or **Share Folder** as a destination, then make sure the location settings of the destination are correct. Type the correct IP address of the host computer where the specified destination is located. For more information on obtaining the IP address of the host computer, see [“Finding the IP address of the computer” on page 18](#).

- 4 Click **Apply**.

To use the application, touch **Multi Send** on the printer home screen, and then follow the instructions on the printer display.

Setting up Scan to Network

Note: A later version of this *User's Guide* may contain a direct link to the *Administrator's Guide* of this application. To check for updates of this *User's Guide*, go to <http://support.lexmark.com>.

Use	To
	<p>Scan a document and send it to a shared network folder. You can define up to 30 unique folder destinations.</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The printer must have permission to write to the destinations. From the computer where the destination is specified, use sharing, security, and firewall settings to allow the printer at least a <i>write</i> access. For help, see the documentation that came with your operating system. • The Scan to Network icon appears only when one or more destinations are defined.

- 1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

Note: View the printer IP address on the printer home screen. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.

- 2 Do either of the following:

- Click **Set up Scan to Network > Click here**.
- Click **Settings > Apps > Apps Management > Scan to Network**.

3 Specify the destinations, and then customize the settings.

Notes:

- See the mouse-over help beside some of the fields for a description of the setting.
- To make sure the location settings of the destination are correct, type the correct IP address of the host computer where the specified destination is located. For more information on obtaining the IP address of the host computer, see [“Finding the IP address of the computer” on page 18](#).
- Make sure the printer has access rights to the folder where the specified destination is located.

4 Click **Apply**.

To use the application, touch **Scan to Network** on the printer home screen, and then follow the instructions on the printer display.

Setting up Remote Operator Panel

This application enables you to interact with the printer control panel even when you are not physically near the network printer. From your computer, you can view the printer status, release held print jobs, create bookmarks, and do other print-related tasks.

1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

Note: View the printer IP address on the printer home screen. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.

2 Click **Settings > Remote Operator Panel Settings**.

3 Select the **Enable** check box, and then customize the settings.

4 Click **Submit**.

To use the application, click **Remote Operator Panel > Launch VNC Applet**.

Exporting and importing a configuration

You can export configuration settings into a text file, and then import the file to apply the settings to other printers.

1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

Note: View the printer IP address on the printer home screen. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.

2 To export or import a configuration for one application, do the following:

a Click **Settings > Apps > Apps Management**.

b From the list of installed applications, click the name of the application you want to configure.

c Click **Configure**, and then do either of the following:

- To export a configuration to a file, click **Export**, and then follow the instructions on the computer screen to save the configuration file.

Notes:

- When saving the configuration file, you can type a unique file name or use the default name.

- If a "JVM Out of Memory" error occurs, then repeat the export process until the configuration file is saved.
- To import a configuration from a file, click **Import**, and then browse to the saved configuration file that was exported from a previously configured printer.

Notes:

- Before importing the configuration file, you can choose to preview it first or load it directly.
- If a timeout occurs and a blank screen appears, then refresh the Web browser, and then click **Apply**.

3 To export or import a configuration for multiple applications, do the following:

a Click **Settings > Import/Export**.

b Do either of the following:

- To export a configuration file, click **Export Embedded Solutions Settings File**, and then follow the instructions on the computer screen to save the configuration file.
- To import a configuration file, do the following:
 - 1** Click **Import Embedded Solutions Settings File > Choose File**, and then browse to the saved configuration file that was exported from a previously configured printer.
 - 2** Click **Submit**.

Additional printer setup

Installing internal options



CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD: If you are accessing the controller board or installing optional hardware or memory devices sometime after setting up the printer, then turn the printer off, and unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet before continuing. If you have any other devices attached to the printer, then turn them off as well, and unplug any cables going into the printer.

Warning—Potential Damage: Controller board electronic components are easily damaged by static electricity. Touch something metal on the printer before touching any controller board electronic components or connectors.

Available internal options

- Memory card
 - DDR3 DIMM
- Flash memory
 - Fonts
 - Firmware
 - Forms and Barcode
 - Prescribe
 - IPDS

Note: The printer hard disk is an optional memory device that can be attached to the rear USB port of the printer.

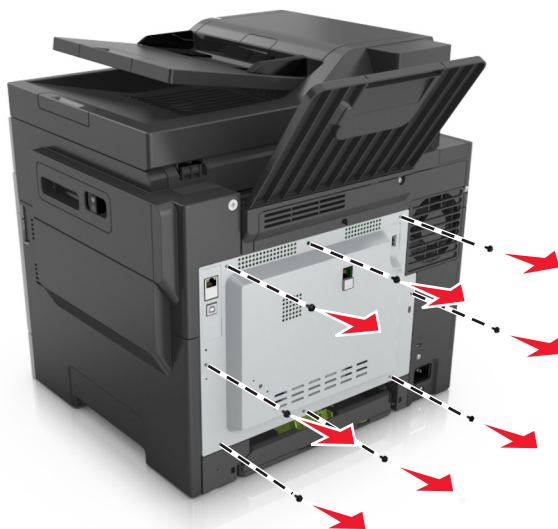
Accessing the controller board

⚠ CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD: If you are accessing the controller board or installing optional hardware or memory devices sometime after setting up the printer, then turn the printer off, and unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet before continuing. If you have any other devices attached to the printer, then turn them off as well, and unplug any cables going into the printer.

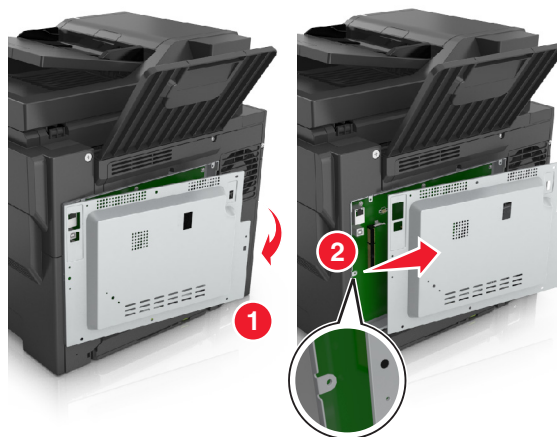
- 1 Access the controller board at the back of the printer.

Note: This task requires a flat-head screwdriver.

- 2 Turn the screws counterclockwise to remove them.

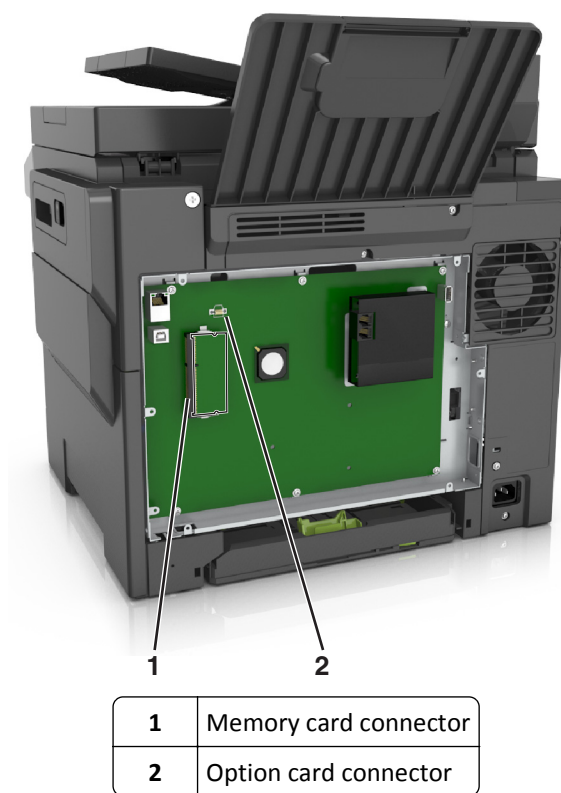


- 3 Slightly open the controller board access cover, and then shift to the right to remove it.

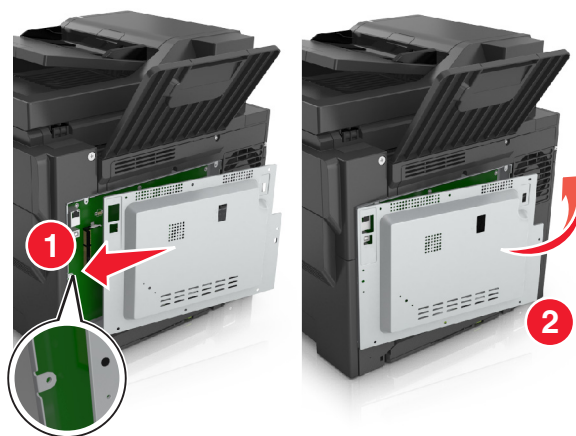


- 4 Locate the appropriate connector on the controller board.

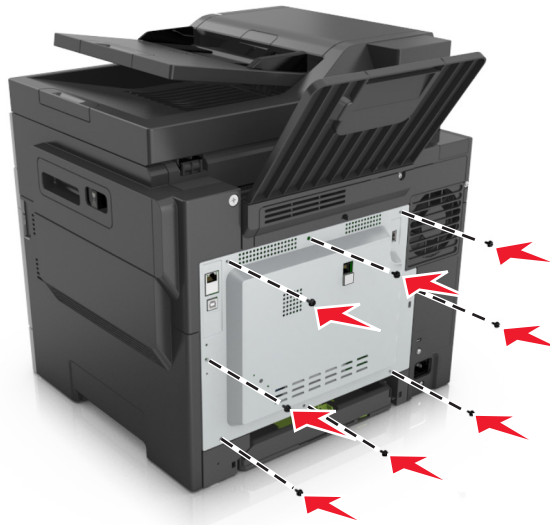
Warning—Potential Damage: Controller board electronic components are easily damaged by static electricity. Touch something metal on the printer before touching any controller board electronic components or connectors.



5 Reattach the cover.



- 6 Turn the screws clockwise to lock the cover.



Installing a memory card

CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD: If you are accessing the controller board or installing optional hardware or memory devices sometime after setting up the printer, then turn the printer off, and unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet before continuing. If you have any other devices attached to the printer, then turn them off as well, and unplug any cables going into the printer.

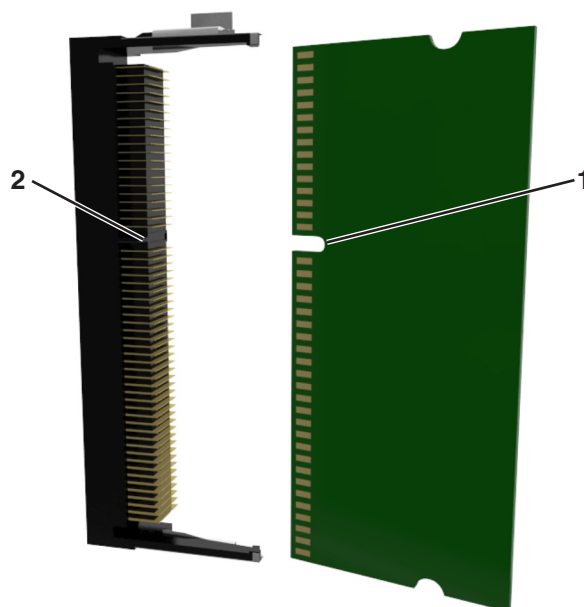
- 1 Access the controller board.

For more information, see [“Accessing the controller board” on page 27](#).

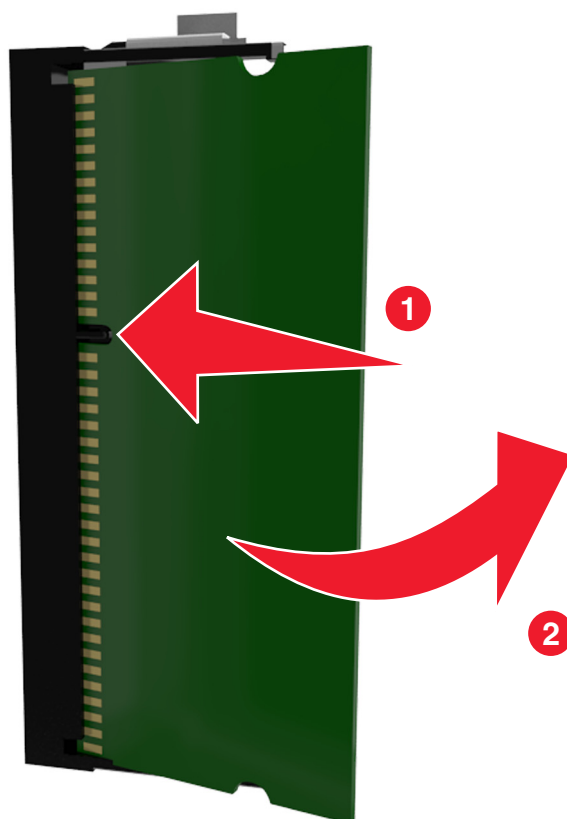
- 2 Unpack the memory card.

Warning—Potential Damage: Do not touch the connection points along the edge of the card. Doing so may cause damage.

- 3 Align the notch (1) on the memory card with the ridge (2) on the connector.



- 4 Push the memory card straight into the connector, and then push the card toward the controller board wall until it *clicks* into place.



- 5 Close the controller board access cover.

Installing an optional card

⚠ CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD: If you are accessing the controller board or installing optional hardware or memory devices sometime after setting up the printer, then turn the printer off, and unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet before continuing. If you have other devices attached to the printer, then turn them off as well, and unplug any cables going into the printer.

Warning—Potential Damage: Controller board electronic components are easily damaged by static electricity. Touch a metal surface on the printer before touching any controller board electronic components or connectors.

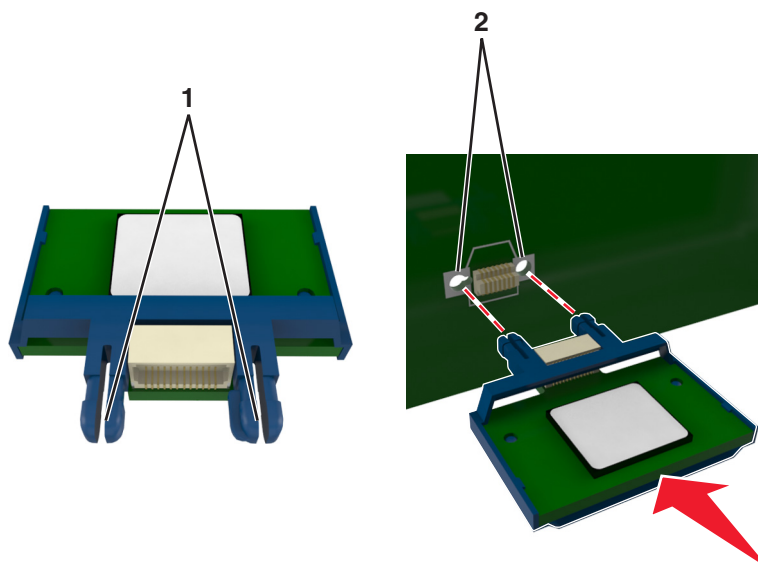
- 1 Access the controller board.

For more information, see [“Accessing the controller board” on page 27](#).

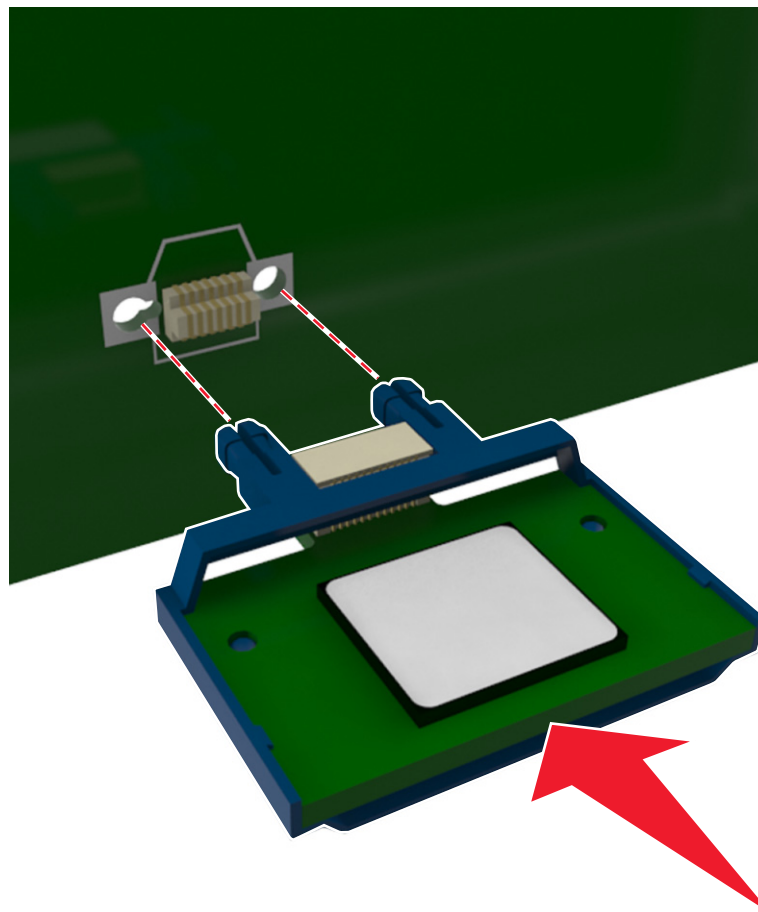
- 2 Unpack the optional card.

Warning—Potential Damage: Avoid touching the connection points along the edge of the card.

- 3 Holding the card by its sides, align the plastic pins (1) on the card with the holes (2) on the controller board.



- 4 Push the card firmly into place as shown in the illustration.



Warning—Potential Damage: Improper installation of the card may cause damage to the card and the controller board.


Note: The entire length of the connector on the card must touch and be flushed against the controller board.

- 5 Close the controller board access door.

Note: When the printer software and any hardware options are installed, it may be necessary to manually add the options in the printer driver to make them available for print jobs. For more information, see [“Updating available options in the printer driver” on page 37](#).

Installing hardware options

Order of installation

 **CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY:** The printer weight is greater than 18 kg (40 lb) and requires two or more trained personnel to lift it safely.

CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD: If you are accessing the controller board or installing optional hardware or memory devices sometime after setting up the printer, then turn the printer off, and unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet before continuing. If you have any other devices attached to the printer, then turn them off as well, and unplug any cables going into the printer.

Install the printer and any optional tray in the following order:

- Optional 550-sheet tray (Tray 3)
- Optional 650-sheet duo tray with integrated multipurpose feeder (Tray 2)
- Printer

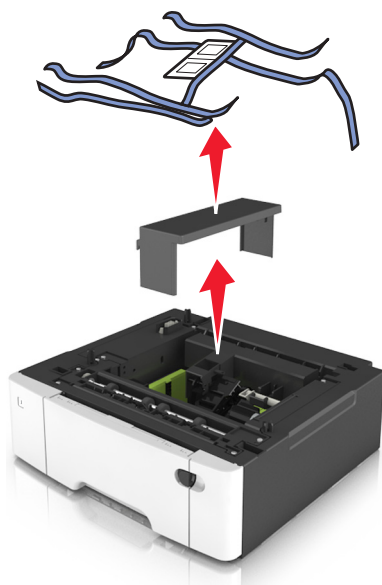
Installing optional trays

The printer supports two optional input sources: a 550-sheet tray (Tray 3) and a 650-sheet duo tray (Tray 2) with an integrated multipurpose feeder.

CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY: The printer weight is greater than 18 kg (40 lb) and requires two or more trained personnel to lift it safely.

CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD: If you are accessing the controller board or installing optional hardware or memory devices sometime after setting up the printer, then turn the printer off, and unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet before continuing. If you have any other devices attached to the printer, then turn them off as well, and unplug any cables going into the printer.

- 1 Unpack the optional tray and the dust cover, and then remove all packing material.

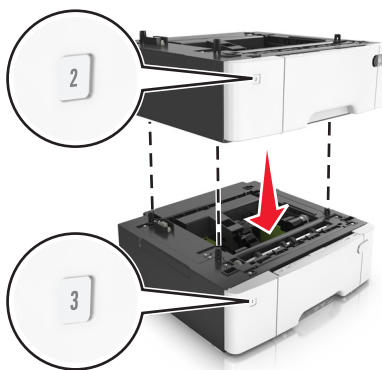


- 2 Place the tray near the printer.

- 3 Align the 650-sheet duo tray with the 550-sheet tray, and then lower it into place.

Notes:

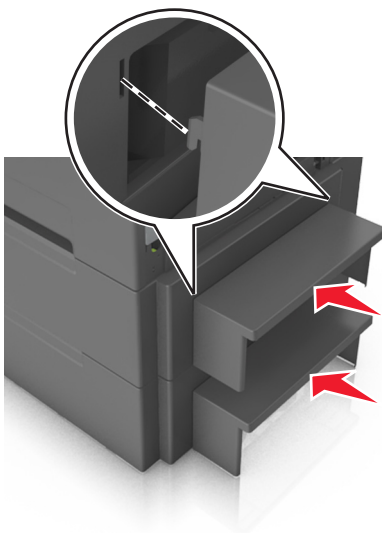
- If you are installing both the optional trays, then the 550-sheet tray (Tray 3) must always be below the 650-sheet tray (Tray 2).
- The standard 250-sheet tray can be labeled as Tray 1 by using the tray number label that came with the optional tray.



4 Align the printer with the 650-sheet duo tray, and then lower the printer into place.



5 Install the dust covers.



Note: When the printer software and any hardware options are installed, you may need to manually add the options in the printer driver to make them available for print jobs. For more information, see [“Updating available options in the printer driver” on page 37.](#)

Attaching cables

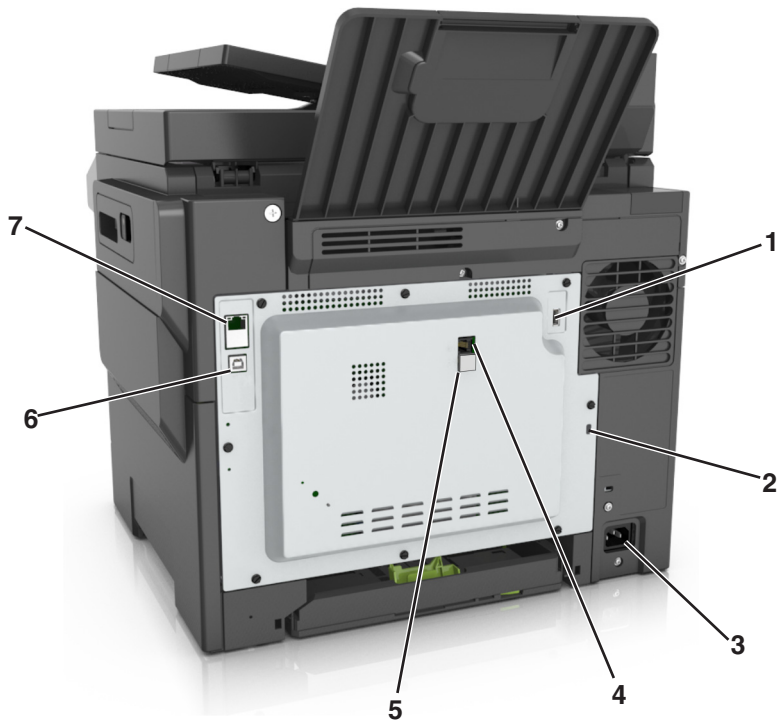
CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY: Do not use the fax feature during a lightning storm. Do not set up this product or make any electrical or cabling connections, such as the fax feature, power cord, or telephone, during a lightning storm.

Connect the printer to the computer using a USB cable or to the network using an Ethernet cable.

Make sure to match the following:

- The USB symbol on the cable with the USB symbol on the printer
- The appropriate Ethernet cable to the Ethernet port

Warning—Potential Damage: Do not touch the USB cable, any network adapter, or the printer in the area shown while actively printing. Loss of data or a malfunction can occur.



	Use the	To
1	Rear USB port	Attach an optional wireless network adapter or an optional printer hard disk.
2	Security lock port	Lock the controller board.
3	Printer power cord socket	Connect the printer to a properly grounded electrical outlet.
4	LINE port	Connect the printer to an active telephone line through a standard wall jack (RJ-11), DSL filter, or VoIP adapter, or any other adapter that allows you to access the telephone line to send and receive faxes.

	Use the	To
5	EXT port	Connect additional devices (telephone or answering machine) to the printer and the telephone line. Use this port if you do not have a dedicated fax line for the printer and if this connection method is supported in your country or region. Note: Remove the plug to access the port.
6	USB printer port	Connect the printer to a computer using a USB cable.
7	Ethernet port	Connect the printer to an Ethernet network.

Setting up the printer software

Installing the printer software

Notes:

- If you installed the printer software on the computer before but need to reinstall the software, then uninstall the current software first.
- Close all open software programs before installing the printer software.

1 Obtain a copy of the software installer package.

- From the *Software and Documentation* CD that came with your printer.
- From our Web site:

Go to www.lexmark.com, and then navigate to:

SUPPORT & DOWNLOADS > select your printer > select your operating system > download your software installer package

2 Do either of the following:

- If you are using the *Software and Documentation* CD, then insert the CD and wait for the installation dialog to appear.


If the installation dialog does not appear, then do the following:

In Windows 8

From the Search charm, type **run**, and then navigate to:

Apps list > **Run** > type **D:\setup.exe** > **OK**.

In Windows 7 or earlier

- Click , or click **Start** and then click **Run**.
- In the Start Search or Run dialog, type **D:\setup.exe**.
- Press **Enter**, or click **OK**.

Note: D is the letter of your CD or DVD drive.

In Macintosh

Click the CD icon on the desktop.

- If you are using the downloaded software installer from the Web, then double-click the installer that you have saved in your computer. Wait for the Select Installation Type dialog to appear, and then click **Install**.

Note: If you are prompted to run your software installation package, then click **Run**.

- 3 Click **Install**, and then follow the instructions on the computer screen.

Updating available options in the printer driver

When any hardware options are installed, you may need to manually add the options in the printer driver to make them available for use.

For Windows users


- 1 Open the printers folder.

In Windows 8

From the Search charm, type **run**, and then navigate to:

Apps list > **Run** > type **control printers** > **OK**

In Windows 7 or earlier

- a Click  or click **Start**, and then click **Run**.
- b In the Start Search or Run dialog, type **control printers**.
- c Press **Enter**, or click **OK**.

- 2 Depending on your device, do either of the following:
 - Press and hold the printer you want to update.
 - Right-click the printer you want to update.
- 3 From the menu that appears, do either of the following:
 - For Windows 7 or later, select **Printer properties**.
 - For earlier versions, select **Properties**.
- 4 Click the **Configuration** tab.
- 5 Do either of the following:
 - Click **Update Now - Ask Printer**.
 - Under Configuration Options, manually add any installed hardware options.
- 6 Click **Apply**.

For Macintosh users

- 1 From the Apple menu, navigate to either of the following:
 - **System Preferences** > **Print & Scan** > select your printer > **Options & Supplies** > **Driver**
 - **System Preferences** > **Print & Fax** > select your printer > **Options & Supplies** > **Driver**
- 2 Add any installed hardware options, and then click **OK**.

Networking

Notes:

- Purchase a MarkNet™ N8352 wireless network adapter first before setting up the printer on a wireless network. For information on installing the wireless network adapter, see the instruction sheet that came with the adapter.
- A Service Set Identifier (SSID) is a name assigned to a wireless network. Wired Equivalent Privacy (WEP), Wi-Fi Protected Access (WPA), WPA2, and 802.1X - RADIUS are types of security used on a network.

Preparing to set up the printer on an Ethernet network

To configure your printer to connect to an Ethernet network, organize the following information before you begin:

Note: If your network automatically assigns IP addresses to computers and printers, continue on to installing the printer.

- A valid, unique IP address for the printer to use on the network
- The network gateway
- The network mask
- A nickname for the printer (optional)

Note: A printer nickname can make it easier for you to identify your printer on the network. You can choose to use the default printer nickname, or assign a name that is easier for you to remember.

You will need an Ethernet cable to connect the printer to the network and an available port where the printer can physically connect to the network. Use a new network cable when possible to avoid potential problems caused by a damaged cable.

Installing the printer on an Ethernet network

For Windows users

1 Obtain a copy of the software installer package.

- From the *Software and Documentation* CD that came with your printer.
- From our Web site:

Go to www.lexmark.com, and then navigate to:

SUPPORT & DOWNLOADS > select your printer > select your operating system > download your software installer package

2 Do either of the following:

- If you are using the *Software and Documentation* CD, then insert the CD and wait for the installation dialog to appear.


If the installation dialog does not appear, then do the following:

In Windows 8

From the Search charm, type **run**, and then navigate to:

Apps list > **Run** > type **D:\setup.exe** > **OK**

In Windows 7 or earlier

- a Click , or click **Start** and then click **Run**.
- b In the Start Search or Run dialog, type **D:\setup.exe**.
- c Press **Enter**, or click **OK**.

Note: D is the letter of your CD or DVD drive.

- If you are using the downloaded software installer from the Web, then double-click the installer that you have saved in your computer. Wait for the Select Installation Type dialog to appear, and then click **Install**.

Note: If you are prompted to run your software installation package, then click **Run**.

3 Click **Install**, and then follow the instructions on the computer screen.

4 Select **Ethernet connection**, and then click **Continue**.

5 Attach the Ethernet cable when instructed to do so.

6 Select the printer from the list, and then click **Continue**.

Note: If the configured printer does not appear in the list, then click **Modify Search**.

7 Follow the instructions on the computer screen.

For Macintosh users

1 Allow the network DHCP server to assign an IP address to the printer.

2 Obtain the printer IP address either:

- From the printer control panel
- From the TCP/IP section in the Network/Ports menu
- By printing a network setup page or menu settings page, and then finding the TCP/IP section

Note: You will need the IP address if you are configuring access for computers on a different subnet than the printer.

3 Install the printer driver on the computer.

a Insert the *Software and Documentation* CD, and then double-click the installer package for the printer.

b Follow the instructions on the computer screen.

c Select a destination, and then click **Continue**.

d From the Easy Install screen, click **Install**.

e Type the user password, and then click **OK**.

All the necessary applications are installed on the computer.

f Click **Close** when installation is complete.

4 Add the printer.

- For IP printing:
 - a From the Apple menu, navigate to either of the following:
 - **System Preferences > Print & Scan**
 - **System Preferences > Print & Fax**
 - b Click +.
 - c If necessary, click **Add Printer or Scanner** or **Add Other Printer or Scanner**.

- d** Click the **IP** tab.
- e** Type the printer IP address in the address field, and then click **Add**.
- For AppleTalk printing:

Notes:

- Make sure AppleTalk is activated on your printer.
- This feature is supported only in Mac OS X version 10.5.

- a** From the Apple menu, navigate to:

System Preferences > Print & Fax

- b** Click **+**, and then navigate to:

AppleTalk > select your printer > Add

Preparing to set up the printer on a wireless network

Notes:

- Make sure your wireless network adapter is installed in your printer and working properly. For more information, see the instruction sheet that came with the wireless network adapter.
- Make sure your access point (wireless router) is turned on and is working properly.

Make sure you have the following information before setting up the printer on a wireless network:

- **SSID**—The SSID is also referred to as the network name.
- **Wireless Mode (or Network Mode)**—The mode is either infrastructure or ad hoc.
- **Channel (for ad hoc networks)**—The channel defaults to automatic for infrastructure networks.

Some ad hoc networks will also require the automatic setting. Check with your system support person if you are not sure which channel to select.

- **Security Method**—There are four basic options for Security Method:

- WEP key

If your network uses more than one WEP key, then enter up to four in the provided spaces. Select the key currently in use on the network by selecting the default WEP transmit key.

- WPA or WPA2 preshared key or passphrase

WPA includes encryption as an additional layer of security. The choices are AES or TKIP. Encryption must be set for the same type on the router and on the printer, or the printer will not be able to communicate on the network.

- 802.1X—RADIUS

If you are installing the printer on an 802.1X network, then you may need the following:

- Authentication type
- Inner authentication type
- 802.1X user name and password
- Certificates

- No security

If your wireless network does not use any type of security, then you will not have any security information.

Note: We do not recommend using an unsecured wireless network.

Notes:

- If you do not know the SSID of the network that your computer is connected to, then launch the wireless utility of the computer network adapter, and then look for the network name. If you cannot find the SSID or the security information for your network, then see the documentation that came with the access point, or contact your system support person.
- To find the WPA/WPA2 preshared key or passphrase for the wireless network, see the documentation that came with the access point, see the Embedded Web Server associated with the access point, or consult your system support person.

Connecting the printer using the Wireless Setup Wizard

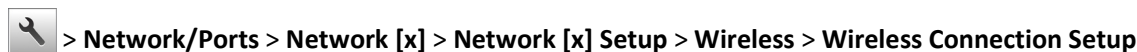
Before you begin, make sure that:

- A wireless network adapter is installed in the printer and is working properly. For more information, see the instruction sheet that came with the wireless network adapter.
- An Ethernet cable is disconnected from the printer.
- Active NIC is set to Auto. To set this to Auto, navigate to:



Note: Make sure to turn off the printer, then wait for at least five seconds, and then turn the printer back on.

- 1 From the printer control panel, navigate to:



- 2 Select a wireless connection setup.

Use	To
Search for networks	Show available wireless connections. Note: This menu shows all broadcast secured or unsecured SSIDs.
Enter a network name	Manually type the SSID. Note: Make sure to type the correct SSID.
Wi-Fi Protected Setup	Connect the printer to a wireless network using Wi-Fi Protected Setup.

- 3 Follow the instructions on the printer display.

Connecting the printer to a wireless network using Wi-Fi Protected Setup

Before you begin, make sure that:

- The access point (wireless router) is Wi-Fi Protected Setup (WPS) certified or WPS-compatible. For more information, see the documentation that came with your access point.
- A wireless network adapter installed in your printer is attached and working properly. For more information, see the instruction sheet that came with the wireless network adapter.

Using the Push Button Configuration method

- 1 From the printer control panel, navigate to:



> **Network/Ports** > **Network [x]** > **Network [x] Setup** > **Wireless** > **Wireless Connection Setup** > **Wi-Fi Protected Setup** > **Start Push Button Method**

- 2 Follow the instructions on the printer display.

Using the Personal Identification Number (PIN) method

- 1 From the printer control panel, navigate to:



> **Network/Ports** > **Network [x]** > **Network [x] Setup** > **Wireless** > **Wireless Connection Setup** > **Wi-Fi Protected Setup** > **Start PIN Method**

- 2 Copy the eight-digit WPS PIN.
- 3 Open a Web browser, and then type the IP address of your access point in the address field.

Notes:

- The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

- 4 Access the WPS settings. For more information, see the documentation that came with your access point.
- 5 Enter the eight-digit PIN, and then save the setting.

Connecting the printer to a wireless network using the Embedded Web Server

Before you begin, make sure that:

- Your printer is connected temporarily to an Ethernet network.
- A wireless network adapter is installed in your printer and working properly. For more information, see the instruction sheet that came with the wireless network adapter.

- 1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

Notes:

- View the printer IP address on the printer control panel. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

- 2 Click **Settings** > **Network/Ports** > **Wireless**.
- 3 Modify the settings to match the settings of your access point (wireless router).

Note: Make sure to enter the correct SSID, security method, preshared key or passphrase, network mode, and channel.

- 4 Click **Submit**.
- 5 Turn off the printer, and then disconnect the Ethernet cable. Then wait for at least five seconds, and then turn the printer back on.
- 6 To verify if your printer is connected to the network, print a network setup page. Then in the Network Card [x] section, see if the status is Connected.

Verifying printer setup

When all hardware and software options are installed and the printer is turned on, verify that the printer is set up correctly by printing the following:

- **Menu settings page**—Use this page to verify that all printer options are installed correctly. If an option you installed is not listed, then it is not installed correctly. Remove the option, and then install it again.
- **Network setup page**—If your printer has networking support, then use this page to verify that the network connection is working. This page also provides important information that aids network printing configuration.

Printing a menu settings page

From the home screen, navigate to:



> Reports > Menu Settings Page

Printing a network setup page

If the printer is attached to a network, then print a network setup page to verify the network connection. This page also provides important information that aids network printing configuration.

- 1 From the home screen, navigate to:



> Reports > Network Setup Page

- 2 Check the first section of the network setup page, and confirm that the status is **Connected**.

If the status is **Not Connected**, then the LAN drop may not be active, or the network cable may be malfunctioning. Consult a system support person for a solution, and then print another network setup page.

Loading paper and specialty media

This chapter covers the selection and handling of paper and specialty media. Proper selection and loading of media can improve how reliably documents print. For more information, see [“Avoiding jams” on page 241](#) and [“Storing paper” on page 60](#).

Setting the paper size and type

From the home screen navigate to:

 > **Paper Menu** > **Paper Size/Type** > select a tray > select the paper size or type > 

Configuring Universal paper settings

The Universal paper size is a user-defined setting that lets you print on paper sizes that are not preset in the printer menus.

Notes:

- The smallest supported Universal size is 76 x 127 mm (3 x 5 inches) and is loaded only in the multipurpose feeder and manual feeder.
- The largest supported Universal size is 215.9 x 359.9 mm (8.5 x 14.17 inches) and is loaded only in the multipurpose feeder and manual feeder.

1 From the home screen, navigate to:

 > **Paper Menu** > **Universal Setup** > **Units of Measure** > select a unit of measure

2 Touch **Portrait Width** or **Portrait Height**.

3 Select the width or height, and then touch .

Loading the 250- and 550-sheet tray

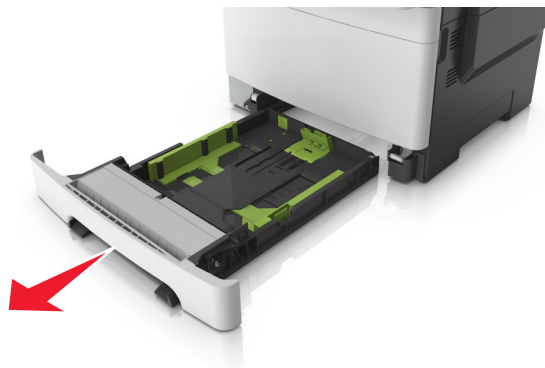
The printer has one 250-sheet tray (Tray 1) with an integrated manual feeder. The 250-sheet tray, the 650-sheet duo tray, and the 550-sheet tray support the same paper sizes and types and are loaded in the same way.



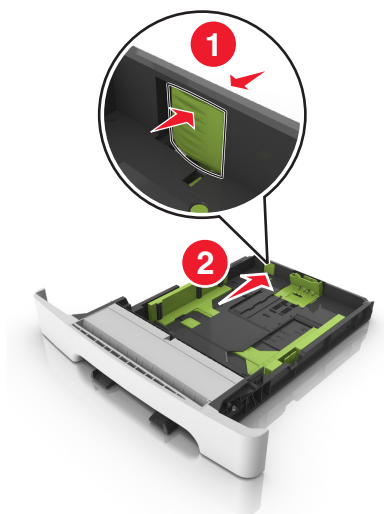
CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY: To reduce the risk of equipment instability, load each tray separately. Keep all other trays closed until needed.

1 Pull out the tray completely.

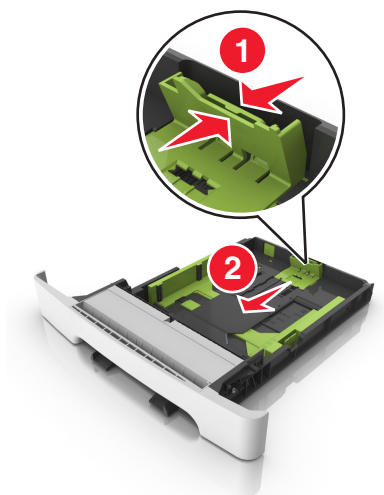
Note: Do not remove trays while a job is printing or while **Busy** appears on the display. Doing so may cause a jam.



- 2** If the paper is longer than letter-size paper, then squeeze and then slide the length guide at the back of the tray to extend it.



- 3** Squeeze, and then slide the length guide tab to the correct position for the size of the paper being loaded.



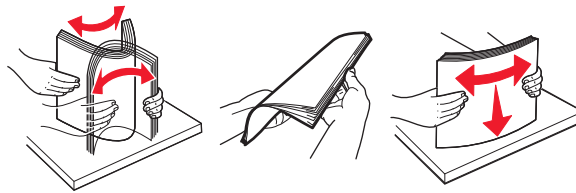
Note: Use the paper size indicators on the bottom of the tray to help position the guide.

- 4 Squeeze, and then slide the width guide tab to the correct position for the size of the paper being loaded.

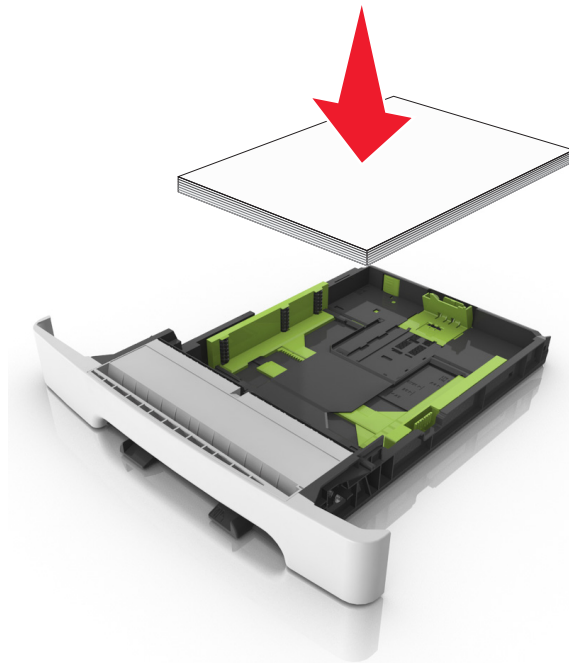


Note: Use the paper size indicators on the bottom of the tray to help position the guides.

- 5 Flex the sheets back and forth to loosen them, and then fan them. Do not fold or crease the paper. Straighten the edges on a level surface.

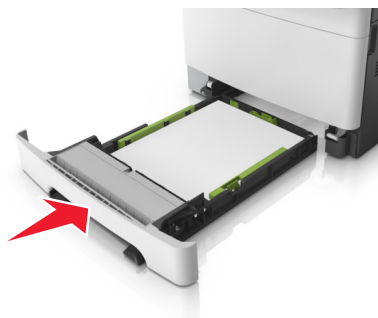


- 6 Load the paper stack with the recommended printable side faceup.



- 7 Place the paper guides securely against the edges of the paper.

- 8 Insert the tray.



- 9 From the printer control panel, set the paper size and paper type in the Paper menu to match the paper loaded in the tray.

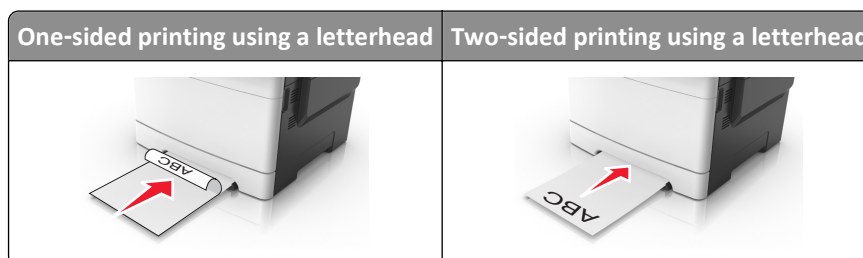
Note: Mixing paper sizes or paper types in a tray may cause jams.

Loading the manual feeder

The standard 250-sheet tray has an integrated manual feeder that can be used to print on different types of paper one sheet at a time.

- 1 Load a sheet of paper into the manual feeder:
- Printable side facedown for one-sided printing
 - Printable side faceup for two-sided (duplex) printing

Note: There are different ways for loading letterhead depending on the mode of printing.



- Load envelope with the flap side up and against the right side of the paper guide.



- 2 Feed paper into the manual feeder only to the point where its leading edge can contact the paper guides.

Note: To achieve the best possible print quality, use only high-quality media designed for laser printers.


- 3 Adjust the paper guides to the width of the paper loaded.

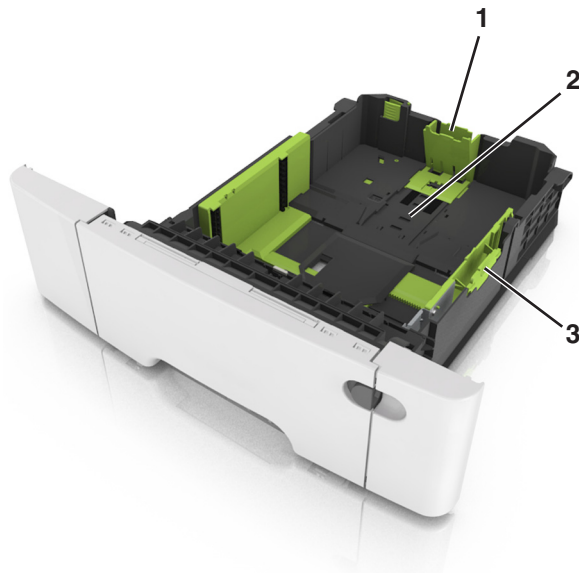
Warning—Potential Damage: Do not force the paper into the feeder. Forcing the paper may cause jams.



Loading the 650-sheet duo tray

The 650-sheet duo tray (Tray 2) consists of a 550-sheet tray and an integrated 100-sheet multipurpose feeder. The tray is loaded in the same way as the 250-sheet tray and the optional 550-sheet tray, and supports the same paper types and sizes. The only differences are the look of the guide tabs and the location of the paper size indicators.

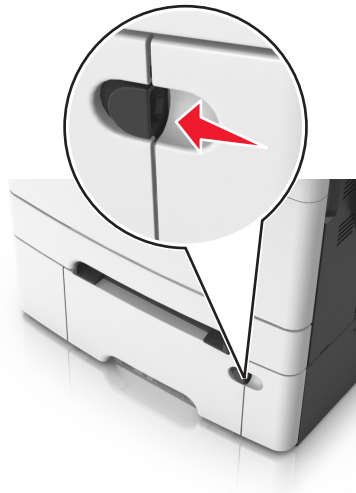
 **CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY:** To reduce the risk of equipment instability, load each tray separately. Keep all other trays closed until needed.



1	Length guide tab
2	Paper size indicator
3	Width guide tab

Loading the multipurpose feeder

- 1 Push the multipurpose feeder latch to the left.



- 2 Open the multipurpose feeder.



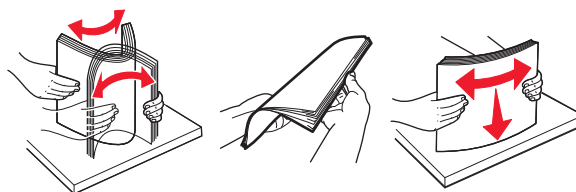
- 3 Pull the multipurpose feeder extender.

Note: Guide the extender gently so that the multipurpose feeder is fully extended and open.



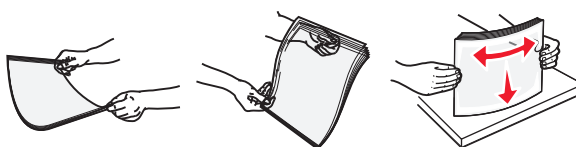
4 Prepare the paper for loading.

- Flex the sheets of paper back and forth to loosen them, and then fan them. Do not fold or crease the paper. Straighten the edges on a level surface.



- Hold transparencies by the edges, and then fan them. Straighten the edges on a level surface.

Note: Avoid touching the printable side of transparencies. Be careful not to scratch them.



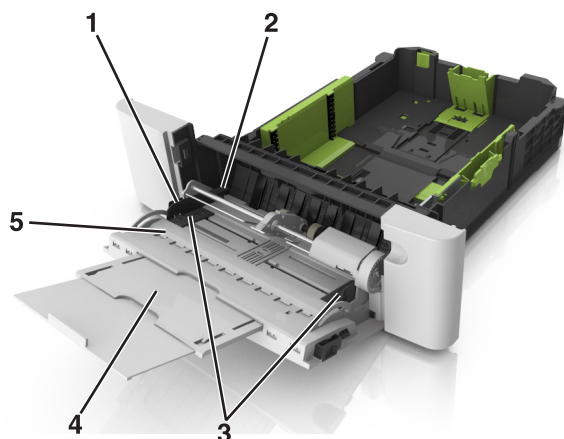
- Flex a stack of envelopes back and forth to loosen them, and then fan them. Straighten the edges on a level surface.

Warning—Potential Damage: Never use envelopes with stamps, clasps, snaps, windows, coated linings, or self-stick adhesives. These envelopes may severely damage the printer.



5 Locate the maximum paper fill indicator and tab.

Note: Make sure the paper or specialty media is below the maximum paper fill indicator located on the paper guides.



1	Width guide tab
2	Maximum paper fill indicator
3	Width guide
4	Feeder extender

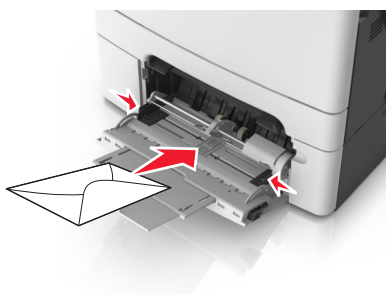
5	Paper size indicator
---	----------------------

6 Load the paper, and then adjust the width guide to lightly touch the edge of the paper stack.

- Load paper, card stock, and transparencies with the recommended printable side facedown and the top edge entering the printer first.



- Load envelopes with the flap side up and against the right side of the paper guide.



Notes:

- Do not load or close the multipurpose feeder while a job is printing.
- Load only one size and type of paper at a time.
- Paper should lie flat in the multipurpose feeder. Make sure the paper fits loosely in the multipurpose feeder and is not bent or wrinkled.

7 From the printer control panel, set the paper size and type in the Paper menu to match the paper loaded in the tray.

Linking and unlinking trays

When the paper size and paper type for any trays are the same, the printer links those trays. When one linked tray becomes empty, paper feeds from the next linked tray. We recommend giving all unique paper, such as letterhead and different colored plain papers, a different custom type name so that the trays they are in do not automatically link.

Linking and unlinking trays

1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

Notes:

- View the printer IP address on the printer home screen. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

2 Click **Settings > Paper Menu**.

3 Change the paper size and type settings for the trays you are linking.

- To link trays, make sure the paper size and type for the tray match that of the other tray.
- To unlink trays, make sure the paper size or type for the tray does *not* match that of the other tray.

4 Click **Submit**.

Note: You can also change the paper size and type settings using the printer control panel. For more information, see [“Setting the paper size and type” on page 44](#).

Warning—Potential Damage: Paper loaded in the tray should match the paper type name assigned in the printer. The temperature of the fuser varies according to the specified paper type. Printing issues may occur if settings are not properly configured.

Creating a custom name for a paper type

Using the Embedded Web Server

1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

Notes:

- View the printer IP address on the printer home screen. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

2 Click **Settings > Paper Menu > Custom Names**.

3 Select a custom name, and then type a custom paper type name.

4 Click **Submit**.

5 Click **Custom Types**, and then verify if the new custom paper type name has replaced the custom name.

Using the printer control panel

1 From the home screen, navigate to:



> Paper Menu > Custom Names

2 Select a custom name, and then type a custom paper type name.

3 Touch

4 Touch **Custom Types**, and then verify that the new custom paper type name has replaced the custom name.

Assigning a custom paper type

Using the Embedded Web Server

Assign a custom paper type name to a tray when linking or unlinking trays.

- 1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

Notes:

- View the printer IP address on the printer home screen. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

- 2 Click **Settings > Paper Menu > Custom Types**.

- 3 Select a custom paper type name, and then select a paper type

Note: Paper is the factory default paper type for all user-defined custom names.

- 4 Click **Submit**.

Using the printer control panel

- 1 From the home screen, navigate to:



> **Paper Menu > Custom Types**

- 2 Select a custom paper type name, and then select a paper type

Note: Paper is the factory default paper type for all user-defined custom names.

- 3 Touch .

Configuring a custom name

Using the Embedded Web Server

- 1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

Notes:

- View the printer IP address on the printer home screen. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

- 2 Click **Settings > Paper Menu > Custom Types**.


- 3 Select a custom name you want to configure, then select a paper or specialty media type, and then click **Submit**.

Using the printer control panel

- 1 From the home screen, navigate to:



> **Paper Menu > Custom Types**

- 2 Select a custom name you want to configure, and then touch .

Paper and specialty media guide



Notes:





- Make sure the paper size, type, and weight are set correctly on the computer or on the printer control panel.
- Flex, fan, and straighten the stack of specialty media before loading them.
- The printer may print at a reduced speed to prevent damage to the fuser.
- For more information on card stock and labels, see the *Card Stock & Label Guide* on the Lexmark support Web site at <http://support.lexmark.com>.

Using specialty media

Tips on using letterhead

- Use letterhead designed specifically for laser printers.
- Print a test page on the letterhead being considered for use before buying large quantities.
- Before loading letterhead, flex, fan, and straighten the stacks to prevent sheets from sticking together.
- Page orientation is important when printing on letterhead.

Source	Printing	Printable side	Paper orientation
Trays 	One-sided	Faceup	Load the sheet with the top edge entering the printer first.
Trays 	Two-sided	Facedown	Load the sheet with the bottom edge entering the printer first.
Note: Check with the manufacturer or vendor to determine whether or not the preprinted letterhead is acceptable for laser printers.			

Source	Printing	Printable side	Paper orientation
Manual feeder 	One-sided	Facedown	Load the sheet with the top edge entering the printer first.
Manual feeder 	Two-sided	Faceup	Load the sheet with the bottom edge entering the printer first.
Multipurpose feeder 	One-sided	Facedown	Load the sheet with the top edge entering the printer first.
Multipurpose feeder 	Two-sided	Faceup	Load the sheet with the bottom edge entering the printer first.
Note: Check with the manufacturer or vendor to determine whether or not the preprinted letterhead is acceptable for laser printers.			

Tips on using transparencies

Print a test page on the transparencies being considered for use before buying large quantities.

- From the printer control panel, set the paper size, type, texture, and weight in the Paper menu to match the transparencies loaded in the tray.
- Print a test page on the transparencies being considered for use before buying large quantities.
- Feed transparencies from the 250-sheet tray, manual feeder, or multipurpose feeder.
- Use transparencies designed specifically for laser printers.
- Avoid getting fingerprints on the transparencies to prevent print quality problems.
- Before loading transparencies, flex, fan, and straighten the stacks to prevent sheets from sticking together.

Tips on using envelopes

- From the printer control panel, set the paper size, type, texture, and weight in the Paper menu to match the envelopes loaded in the tray.
- Print samples on the envelopes being considered for use before buying large quantities.
- Use envelopes designed specifically for laser printers.
- For best performance, use envelopes made from 90-g/m² (24-lb) paper or 25% cotton.
- Use only new envelopes from undamaged packages.
- To optimize performance and minimize jams, do not use envelopes that:
 - Have excessive curl or twist.
 - Are stuck together or damaged in any way.
 - Have windows, holes, perforations, cutouts, or embossing.
 - Have metal clasps, string ties, or folding bars.
 - Have an interlocking design.
 - Have postage stamps attached.
 - Have any exposed adhesive when the flap is in the sealed or closed position.
 - Have bent corners.
 - Have rough, cockle, or laid finishes.
- Adjust the width guides to fit the width of the envelopes.
- Before loading the envelopes on the tray, flex and fan the envelopes to loosen them. Straighten the edges on a level surface.

Note: A combination of high humidity (over 60%) and high printing temperature may wrinkle or seal envelopes.

Tips on using labels

- From the printer control panel, set the paper size, type, texture, and weight in the Paper menu to match the labels loaded in the tray.
- Print samples on labels being considered for use before buying large quantities.
- For more information on label printing, characteristics, and design, see the *Card Stock & Label Guide* at <http://support.lexmark.com>.
- Use labels designed specifically for laser printers.
- Do not use labels with slick backing material.

- Use full label sheets. Partial sheets may cause labels to peel off during printing, resulting in a jam. Partial sheets also contaminate the printer and the cartridge with adhesive, and could void the printer and toner cartridge warranties.
- Do not use labels with exposed adhesive.
- Before loading labels on the tray, flex and fan labels to loosen them. Straighten the edges on a level surface.

Tips on using card stock

Card stock is heavy, single-ply specialty media. Many of its variable characteristics, such as moisture content, thickness, and texture, can significantly affect print quality.

- From the printer control panel, set the paper size, type, texture, and weight in the Paper menu to match the card stock loaded in the tray.
- Print samples on the card stock being considered for use before buying large quantities.
- Specify the paper texture and weight from the tray settings to match the paper loaded in the tray.
- Preprinting, perforation, and creasing may significantly affect the print quality and cause jams or other paper feed problems.
- Before loading the card stock on the tray, flex and fan the card stock to loosen them. Straighten the edges on a level surface.

Paper guidelines

Select the correct paper or specialty media to reduce printing problems. For the best print quality, try a sample of the paper or specialty media before buying large quantities.

Paper characteristics

The following paper characteristics affect print quality and reliability. Consider these characteristics when evaluating new paper stock.

Weight

The printer trays can automatically feed paper weights up to 176-g/m² (47-lb) bond grain long paper. The multipurpose feeder can automatically feed paper weights up to 176-g/m² (47-lb) bond grain long paper. Paper lighter than 60 g/m² (16 lb) might not be stiff enough to feed properly, causing jams. For best performance, use 75-g/m² (20-lb) bond grain long paper. For paper smaller than 182 x 257 mm (7.2 x 10.1 inches), we recommend 90 g/m² (24 lb) or heavier paper.

Note: Duplex printing is supported from 60–105-g/m² (16–28-lb) bond grain long paper.

Curl

Curl is the tendency for paper to curl at its edges. Excessive curl can cause paper feeding problems. Curl can occur after the paper passes through the printer, where it is exposed to high temperatures. Storing paper unwrapped in hot, humid, cold, or dry conditions, even in the trays, can contribute to paper curling prior to printing and can cause feeding problems.

Smoothness

Paper smoothness directly affects print quality. If paper is too rough, then toner cannot fuse to it properly. If paper is too smooth, then it can cause paper feeding or print quality issues. Always use paper between 100 and 300 Sheffield points; smoothness between 150 and 250 Sheffield points produces the best print quality.

Moisture content

The amount of moisture in paper affects both print quality and the ability of the printer to feed the paper correctly. Leave paper in its original wrapper until it is time to use it. This limits the exposure of paper to moisture changes that can degrade its performance.

Store paper in its original wrapper in the same environment as the printer for 24 to 48 hours before printing. Extend the time to several days if the storage or transportation environment is very different from the printer environment. Thick paper may also require a longer conditioning period.

Grain direction

Grain refers to the alignment of the paper fibers in a sheet of paper. Grain is either *grain long*, running the length of the paper, or *grain short*, running the width of the paper.

For 60–90-g/m² (16–24-lb) bond paper, grain long paper is recommended.

Fiber content

Most high-quality xerographic paper is made from 100% chemically treated pulped wood. This content provides the paper with a high degree of stability resulting in fewer paper feeding problems and better print quality. Paper containing fibers such as cotton can negatively affect paper handling.

Unacceptable paper

The following paper types are not recommended for use with the printer:

- Chemically treated papers used to make copies without carbon paper, also known as carbonless papers, carbonless copy paper (CCP), or no carbon required (NCR) paper
- Preprinted papers with chemicals that may contaminate the printer
- Preprinted papers that can be affected by the temperature in the printer fuser
- Preprinted papers that require a registration (the precise print location on the page) greater than ± 2.3 mm (± 0.9 in.), such as optical character recognition (OCR) forms

In some cases, registration can be adjusted with a software application to successfully print on these forms.

- Coated papers (erasable bond), synthetic papers, thermal papers
- Rough-edged, rough or heavily textured surface papers, or curled papers
- Recycled papers that fail EN12281:2002 (European)
- Paper weighing less than 60 g/m² (16 lb)
- Multiple-part forms or documents

Selecting paper

Using the appropriate paper prevents jams and helps ensure trouble-free printing.

To help avoid paper jams and poor print quality:

- *Always* use new, undamaged paper.
- Before loading paper, know the recommended printable side of the paper. This information is usually indicated on the paper package.
- *Do not* use paper that has been cut or trimmed by hand.
- *Do not* mix paper sizes, types, or weights in the same tray; mixing results in jams.
- *Do not* use coated papers unless they are specifically designed for electrophotographic printing.

Selecting preprinted forms and letterhead

Use these guidelines when selecting preprinted forms and letterhead:

- Use grain long for 60–90-g/m² (16–24-lb) paper.
- Use only forms and letterhead printed using an offset lithographic or engraved printing process.
- Avoid paper with rough or heavily textured surfaces.

Use inks that are not affected by the resin in toner. Inks that are oxidation-set or oil-based generally meet these requirements; latex inks might not.

When in doubt, contact your paper supplier.

Using recycled paper and other office papers

As an environmentally conscious company, Lexmark supports the use of recycled office paper produced specifically for use in laser (electrophotographic) printers. In 1998, Lexmark presented to the US government a study demonstrating that recycled paper produced by major mills in the US fed as well as non-recycled paper. However, no blanket statement can be made that *all* recycled paper will feed well.

Lexmark consistently tests its printers with recycled paper (20–100% post-consumer waste) and a variety of test paper from around the world, using chamber tests for different temperature and humidity conditions. Lexmark has found no reason to discourage the use of today's recycled office papers, but generally the following property guidelines apply to recycled paper.

- Low moisture content (4–5%)
- Suitable smoothness (100–200 Sheffield units, or 140–350 Bendtsen units, European)

Note: Some much smoother papers (such as premium 24 lb laser papers, 50–90 Sheffield units) and much rougher papers (such as premium cotton papers, 200–300 Sheffield units) have been engineered to work very well in laser printers, despite surface texture. Before using these types of paper, consult your paper supplier.

- Suitable sheet-to-sheet coefficient of friction (0.4–0.6)
- Sufficient bending resistance in the direction of feed

Recycled paper, paper of lower weight (<60 g/m² [16 lb bond]) and/or lower caliper (<3.8 mils [0.1 mm]), and paper that is cut grain-short for portrait (or short-edge) fed printers may have lower bending resistance than is required for reliable paper feeding. Before using these types of paper for laser (electrophotographic) printing, consult your paper supplier. Remember that these are general guidelines only and that paper meeting these guidelines may still cause paper feeding problems in any laser printer (for example, if the paper curls excessively under normal printing conditions).

Storing paper

Use these paper storage guidelines to help avoid jams and uneven print quality:

- For best results, store paper where the temperature is 21°C (70°F) and the relative humidity is 40 percent. Most label manufacturers recommend printing in a temperature range of 18–24°C (65–75°F) with relative humidity between 40 and 60 percent.
- Store paper in cartons, on a pallet or shelf, rather than on the floor.
- Store individual packages on a flat surface.
- Do not store anything on top of individual paper packages.
- Take paper out of the carton or wrapper only when you are ready to load it in the printer. The carton and wrapper help keep the paper clean, dry, and flat.

Supported paper sizes, types, and weights

The following tables provide information on standard and optional paper sources and the sizes, types, and weights of paper they support.

Note: For an unlisted paper size, select the closest *larger* listed size.

Supported paper sizes

Note: Your printer model may have a 650-sheet duo tray, which consists of a 550-sheet tray and an integrated 100-sheet multipurpose feeder. The 550-sheet tray of the 650-sheet duo tray supports the same paper sizes as the optional 550-sheet tray. The integrated multipurpose feeder supports different paper sizes, types, and weights.

Paper size and dimension	Standard 250-sheet tray	Manual feeder	650-sheet duo tray		550-sheet tray	ADF	Scanner glass	Duplex mode
			550-sheet tray	Multipurpose feeder				
A4 210 x 297 mm (8.3 x 11.7 in.)	✓ ¹	✓	✓ ¹	✓ ¹	✓ ¹	✓	✓	✓
A5 148 x 210 mm (5.83 x 8.3 in.)	✓ ¹	✓	✓ ²	✓ ¹	✓ ²	✓	✓	x
A6 105 x 148 mm (4.1 x 5.8 in.)	x	✓	x	✓ ¹	x	x	✓	x

¹ The paper source supports paper size without *size sensing*.

² Universal is supported in the standard 250- and optional 550-sheet trays only if the paper size is from 148 x 215.9 mm (5.83 x 8.5 in.) to 215.9 x 355.6 mm (8.5 x 14 in.).

³ Universal is supported in the multipurpose feeder and manual feeder only if the paper size is from 76.2 x 127 mm (3 x 5 in.) to 215.9 x 359.9 mm (8.5 x 14.17 in.).

⁴ Universal is supported in duplex mode only if the width is from 210 mm (8.27 in.) to 215.9 mm (8.5 in.), and the length is from 279.4 mm (11 in.) to 355.6 mm (14 in.).

Paper size and dimension	Standard 250-sheet tray	Manual feeder	650-sheet duo tray		550-sheet tray	ADF	Scanner glass	Duplex mode
			550-sheet tray	Multipurpose feeder				
JIS B5 182 x 257 mm (7.2 x 10.1 in.)	✓ ¹	✓	✓ ¹	✓ ¹	✓ ¹	✓	✓	x
Letter 216 x 279 mm (8.5 x 11 in.)	✓ ¹	✓	✓ ¹	✓ ¹	✓ ¹	✓	✓	✓
Legal 216 x 356 mm (8.5 x 14 in.)	✓ ¹	✓	✓ ¹	✓ ¹	✓ ¹	✓	x	✓
Executive 184 x 267 mm (7.3 x 10.5 in.)	✓ ¹	✓	✓ ¹	✓ ¹	✓ ¹	✓	✓	x
Oficio (Mexico) 216 x 340 mm (8.5 x 13.4 in.)	✓ ¹	✓	✓ ¹	✓ ¹	✓ ¹	✓	x	✓
Folio 216 x 330 mm (8.5 x 13 in.)	✓ ¹	✓	✓ ¹	✓ ¹	✓ ¹	✓	x	✓
Statement 140 x 216 mm (5.5 x 8.5 in.)	x	✓	x	✓ ¹	x	✓	✓	x
Universal 76 x 127 mm (3 x 5 in.) to 216 x 356 mm (8.5 x 14 in.)	x	✓ ^{1,3}	x	✓ ^{1,3}	x	✓	✓	x
Universal 148 x 210 mm (5.8 x 8.3 in) to 216 x 356 mm (8.5 x 14 in.)	✓ ^{1,2}	✓	✓ ^{1,2}	✓	✓ ^{1,2}	x	x	✓ ⁴

¹ The paper source supports paper size without *size sensing*.

² Universal is supported in the standard 250- and optional 550-sheet trays only if the paper size is from 148 x 215.9 mm (5.83 x 8.5 in.) to 215.9 x 355.6 mm (8.5 x 14 in.).

³ Universal is supported in the multipurpose feeder and manual feeder only if the paper size is from 76.2 x 127 mm (3 x 5 in.) to 215.9 x 359.9 mm (8.5 x 14.17 in.).

⁴ Universal is supported in duplex mode only if the width is from 210 mm (8.27 in.) to 215.9 mm (8.5 in.), and the length is from 279.4 mm (11 in.) to 355.6 mm (14 in.).

Paper size and dimension	Standard 250-sheet tray	Manual feeder	650-sheet duo tray		550-sheet tray	ADF	Scanner glass	Duplex mode
			550-sheet tray	Multipurpose feeder				
7 3/4 Envelope (Monarch) 98 x 191 mm (3.9 x 7.5 in.)	X	✓	X	✓ ¹	X	X	X	X
9 Envelope 98 x 225 mm (3.9 x 8.9 in.)	X	✓	X	✓ ¹	X	X	X	X
10 Envelope 105 x 241 mm (4.1 x 9.5 in.)	X	✓	X	✓ ¹	X	X	X	X
DL Envelope 110 x 220 mm (4.3 x 8.7 in.)	X	✓	X	✓ ¹	X	X	X	X
C5 Envelope 162 x 229 mm (6.4 x 9 in.)	X	✓	X	✓ ¹	X	X	X	X
B5 Envelope 176 x 250 mm (6.9 x 9.8 in.)	X	✓	X	✓ ¹	X	X	X	X
Other Envelope 98 x 162 mm (3.9 x 6.3 in.) up to 176 x 250 mm (6.9 x 9.8 in.)	X	✓	X	✓ ¹	X	X	X	X

¹ The paper source supports paper size without *size sensing*.

² Universal is supported in the standard 250- and optional 550-sheet trays only if the paper size is from 148 x 215.9 mm (5.83 x 8.5 in.) to 215.9 x 355.6 mm (8.5 x 14 in.).

³ Universal is supported in the multipurpose feeder and manual feeder only if the paper size is from 76.2 x 127 mm (3 x 5 in.) to 215.9 x 359.9 mm (8.5 x 14.17 in.).

⁴ Universal is supported in duplex mode only if the width is from 210 mm (8.27 in.) to 215.9 mm (8.5 in.), and the length is from 279.4 mm (11 in.) to 355.6 mm (14 in.).

Supported paper types and weights

Notes:



- Your printer model may have a 650-sheet duo tray, which consists of a 550-sheet tray and an integrated 100-sheet multipurpose feeder. The 550-sheet tray of the 650-sheet duo tray supports the same paper as the 550-sheet tray. The integrated multipurpose feeder supports different paper sizes, types, and weights.
- Labels, transparencies, envelopes, and card stock always print at reduced speed.

Paper type	250-sheet tray	Manual feeder	650-sheet duo tray		550-sheet tray	ADF	Scanner glass	Duplex mode
			550-sheet tray	Multipurpose feeder				
Paper <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Plain • Recycled • Glossy • Bond • Letterhead • Preprinted • Colored • Light • Heavy • Rough/Cotton • Custom Type [x] 	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Card stock	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	x
Transparencies	✓	✓	x	✓	x	✓	✓	x
Labels <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Paper 	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	x
Envelope	x	✓	x	✓	x	✓	✓	x

Printing

Printing forms

Use the Forms and Favorites application to quickly and easily access frequently used forms or other information that is regularly printed. Before you can use this application, first set it up on the printer. For more information, see [“Setting up Forms and Favorites” on page 20](#).

- 1 From the printer home screen, navigate to:
Forms and Favorites > select the form from the list > enter the number of copies > adjust other settings
- 2 Depending on your printer model, touch , , or **Submit**.

Printing a document

Printing a document

- 1 From the printer control panel, set the paper type and size to match the paper loaded.
- 2 Send the print job:

For Windows users

- a With a document open, click **File** > **Print**.
- b Click **Properties**, **Preferences**, **Options**, or **Setup**.
- c Adjust the settings, if necessary.
- d Click **OK** > **Print**.

For Macintosh users

- a Customize the settings in the Page Setup dialog:
 - 1 With a document open, choose **File** > **Page Setup**.
 - 2 Choose a paper size or create a custom size to match the paper loaded.
 - 3 Click **OK**.
- b Customize the settings in the Print dialog:
 - 1 With a document open, choose **File** > **Print**.
If necessary, click the disclosure triangle to see more options.
 - 2 From the print options pop-up menus, adjust the settings, if necessary.
Note: To print on a specific paper type, adjust the paper type setting to match the paper loaded, or select the appropriate tray or feeder.
 - 3 Click **Print**.

Printing in black and white

From the home screen, navigate to:

 > **Settings** > **Print Settings** > **Quality Menu** > **Print Mode** > **Black Only** > 

Adjusting toner darkness

Using the Embedded Web Server

- 1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

Notes:


- View the printer IP address on the printer home screen. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.


- 2 Click **Settings** > **Print Settings** > **Quality Menu** > **Toner Darkness**.

- 3 Adjust the setting, and then click **Submit**.

Using the printer control panel

- 1 From the home screen, navigate to:

 > **Settings** > **Print Settings** > **Quality Menu** > **Toner Darkness**

- 2 Adjust the setting, and then touch .

Using Max Speed and Max Yield

Max Speed and Max Yield let you choose between a faster print speed or a higher toner yield. Max Yield is the factory default setting.

- **Max Speed**—This lets you print in either black or color depending on what is set in the printer driver. The printer prints in color unless Black Only is selected in the printer driver.
- **Max Yield**—This lets you switch from black to color based on the color content found on each page. Frequent color mode switching can result to slower printing if the content of pages is mixed.

Using the Embedded Web Server

- 1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

Notes:

- View the printer IP address on the printer home screen. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

- 2 Click **Settings** > **Print Settings** > **Setup Menu**.

- 3 From the Printer Usage list, select **Max Speed** or **Max Yield**.

- 4 Click **Submit**.

Using the printer control panel

1 From the home screen, navigate to:



> **Settings** > **Print Settings** > **Setup Menu**

2 From the Printer Usage list, select **Max Speed** or **Max Yield**.

3 Touch **Submit**.

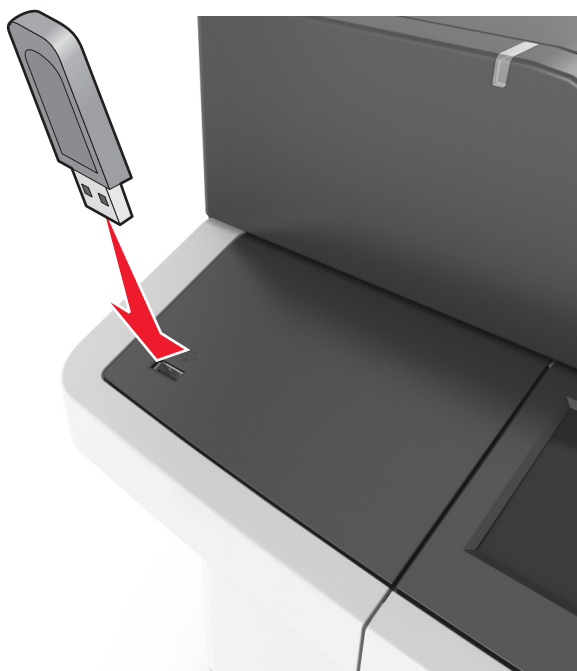
Printing from a flash drive or mobile device

Printing from a flash drive

Notes:

- Before printing an encrypted PDF file, you will be prompted to type the file password from the printer control panel.
- You cannot print files for which you do not have printing permissions.

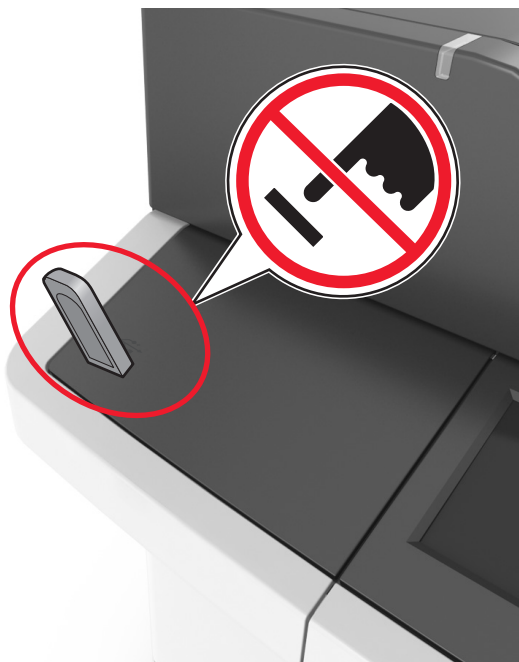
1 Insert a flash drive into the USB port.





Notes:

- A flash drive icon appears on the printer home screen when a flash drive is inserted.
- If you insert the flash drive when the printer requires attention, such as when a jam has occurred, then the printer ignores the flash drive.
- If you insert the flash drive while the printer is processing other print jobs, then **Busy** appears on the printer display. After these print jobs are processed, you may need to view the held jobs list to print documents from the flash drive.

Warning—Potential Damage: Do not touch the USB cable, any wireless network adapter, any connector, the memory device, or the printer in the areas shown while actively printing, reading, or writing from the memory device. Loss of data can occur.



- 2 From the printer control panel, touch the document you want to print.
- 3 Touch the arrows to get a preview of the document.
- 4 Use  or  to specify the number of copies to be printed, and then touch **Print**.

Notes:

- Do not remove the flash drive from the USB port until the document has finished printing.
- If you leave the flash drive in the printer after leaving the initial USB menu screen, then touch **Held Jobs** on the home screen to print files from the flash drive.

Supported flash drives and file types

Notes:

- High-speed USB flash drives must support the full-speed standard. Low-speed USB devices are not supported.
- USB flash drives must support the File Allocation Table (FAT) system. Devices formatted with New Technology File System (NTFS) or any other file system are not supported.

Recommended flash drives	File type
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Lexar JumpDrive FireFly (512MB and 1GB) • SanDisk Cruzer Micro (512MB and 1GB) • Sony Micro Vault Classic (512MB and 1GB) 	<p>Documents:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • .pdf • .xps <p>Images:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • .dcx • .gif • .jpeg or .jpg • .bmp • .pcx • .tiff or .tif • .png • .fls

Printing from a mobile device

To download a compatible mobile printing application, visit www.lexmark.com/mobile.

Note: Mobile printing applications may also be available from your mobile device manufacturer.

Printing confidential and other held jobs

Storing print jobs in the printer

- 1 From the home screen, navigate to:



> **Security** > **Confidential Print** > select a print job type

Use	To
Max Invalid PIN	Limit the number of times an invalid PIN can be entered. Note: When the limit is reached, the print jobs for that user name and PIN are deleted.
Confidential Job Expiration	Hold print jobs in the computer until you enter the PIN from the printer control panel. Note: The PIN is set from the computer. It must be four digits, using the numbers 0–9.
Repeat Job Expiration	Print and store print jobs in the printer memory.
Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Confidential, Verify, Reserve, and Repeat print jobs may be deleted if the printer requires extra memory to process additional held jobs. • You can set the printer to store print jobs in the printer memory until you start the print job from the printer control panel. • All print jobs that can be initiated by the user at the printer are called <i>held jobs</i>. 	

Use	To
Verify Job Expiration	Print one copy of a print job and hold the remaining copies. It lets you examine if the first copy is satisfactory or not. The print job is automatically deleted from the printer memory when all copies are printed.
Reserve Job Expiration	Store print jobs for printing at a later time. Note: The print jobs are held until deleted from the Held Jobs menu.
Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Confidential, Verify, Reserve, and Repeat print jobs may be deleted if the printer requires extra memory to process additional held jobs. You can set the printer to store print jobs in the printer memory until you start the print job from the printer control panel. All print jobs that can be initiated by the user at the printer are called <i>held jobs</i>. 	

2 Touch .

Printing confidential and other held jobs

Note: Confidential and Verify print jobs are automatically deleted from memory after printing. Repeat and Reserve jobs are *held* in the printer until you delete them.

For Windows users

- 1 With a document open, click **File > Print**.
- 2 Click **Properties, Preferences, Options, or Setup**.
- 3 Click **Print and Hold**.
- 4 Select the print job type (Confidential, Repeat, Reserve, or Verify), and then assign a user name. For a confidential print job, also enter a four-digit PIN.
- 5 Click **OK** or **Print**.
- 6 From the printer home screen, release the print job.
 - For confidential print jobs, navigate to:
Held jobs > select your user name > **Confidential Jobs** > enter the PIN > **Print**
 - For other print jobs, navigate to:
Held jobs > select your user name > select the print job > specify the number of copies > **Print**

For Macintosh users

- 1 With a document open, choose **File > Print**.
If necessary, click the disclosure triangle to see more options.
- 2 From the print options or Copies & Pages pop-up menu, choose **Job Routing**.
- 3 Select the print job type (Confidential, Repeat, Reserve, or Verify), and then assign a user name. For a confidential print job, also enter a four-digit PIN.
- 4 Click **OK** or **Print**.

5 From the printer home screen, release the print job.

- For confidential print jobs, navigate to:
Held jobs > select your user name > **Confidential Jobs** > enter the PIN > **Print**
- For other print jobs, navigate to:
Held jobs > select your user name > select the print job > specify the number of copies > **Print**

Modifying confidential print settings

Note: This feature is available only in network printers or printers connected to print servers.

1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

Notes:

- View the printer IP address on the printer home screen. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

2 Click **Configuration** > **Other Settings** tab > **Security** > **Confidential Print Setup**.

3 Modify the settings:

- Set a maximum number of PIN entry attempts. When a user exceeds that number, all of the jobs for that user are deleted.
- Set an expiration time for confidential print jobs. When a user has not printed the jobs within that time, all of the jobs for that user are deleted.

4 Save the modified settings.

Printing information pages

Printing a font sample list

1 From the home screen, navigate to:



> **Reports** > **Print Fonts**

2 Touch **PCL Fonts** or **PostScript Fonts**.

Printing a directory list

A directory list shows the resources stored in a flash memory or in the printer hard disk.




From the home screen, navigate to:



> **Reports** > **Print Directory**

Canceling a print job

Canceling a print job from the printer control panel

- 1 From the home screen, touch **Cancel Jobs**, or press  on the keypad.
- 2 Touch the job you want to cancel, and then touch .
- 3 Press  on the keypad to return to the home screen.

Canceling a print job from the computer

For Windows users


- 1 Open the printers folder.

In Windows 8

From the Search charm, type **run**, and then navigate to:

Apps list > **Run** > type **control printers** > **OK**



In Windows 7 or earlier

- a Click  or click **Start**, and then click **Run**.
 - b In the Start Search or Run dialog, type **control printers**.
 - c Press **Enter**, or click **OK**.
- 2 Double-click the printer icon.
 - 3 Select the print job you want to cancel.
 - 4 Click **Delete**.

For Macintosh users

- 1 From the Apple menu, navigate to either of the following:
 - **System Preferences > Print & Scan** > select your printer > **Open Print Queue**
 - **System Preferences > Print & Fax** > select your printer > **Open Print Queue**
- 2 From the printer window, select the print job you want to cancel, and then delete it.

Copying

ADF	Scanner glass
 <p>Use the ADF for multiple-page documents including two-sided (duplex) pages.</p>	 <p>Use the scanner glass for single-page documents, book pages, small items (such as postcards or photos), transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings).</p>

Making copies

Making a quick copy


- 1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF tray or facedown on the scanner glass.

Notes:

- Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF tray. Place these items on the scanner glass.
- The ADF indicator light comes on when the paper is loaded properly.

- 2 If you are loading a document into the ADF tray, then adjust the paper guides.

Note: To avoid a cropped image, make sure the size of the original document and the size of the copy paper are the same.

- 3 From the printer control panel, press .

Copying using the ADF

- 1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF tray.

Notes:

- Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF tray. Place these items on the scanner glass.

- The ADF indicator light comes on when the paper is loaded properly.

2 Adjust the paper guides.

3 From the home screen, navigate to:

Copy > specify the copy settings > **Copy It**

Copying using the scanner glass

1 Place an original document facedown on the scanner glass in the upper left corner.

2 From the home screen, navigate to:

Copy > specify the copy settings > **Copy It**

If you have more pages to scan, then place the next document on the scanner glass, and then touch **Scan the next page**.

3 Touch **Finish the Job**.

Copying photos

1 Place a photo facedown on the scanner glass in the upper left corner.

2 From the home screen, navigate to:

Copy > **Content** > **Photo** > 

3 From the Content Source menu, select the appropriate setting that best matches the original photo.

4 Touch  > **Copy It**

Note: If you have more photos to copy, then place the next photo on the scanner glass, and then touch **Scan the next page**.

5 Touch **Finish the Job**.

Copying on specialty media

Copying on transparencies

1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF tray or facedown on the scanner glass.

Notes:

- Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF tray. Place these items on the scanner glass.
- The ADF indicator light comes on when the paper is loaded properly.

2 From the home screen, navigate to:

Copy > **Copy from** > select the size of the original document

3 Navigate to:

Copy to > select the tray that contains transparencies > **Copy It**

If there are no trays that support transparencies, then navigate to:

Manual Feeder > select the size of the transparencies > **Transparency**

4 Load transparencies into the multipurpose feeder, and then touch **Copy It**.

Copying on letterhead

1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF tray or facedown on the scanner glass.

Notes:

- Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF tray. Place these items on the scanner glass.
- The ADF indicator light comes on when the paper is loaded properly.

2 From the home screen, navigate to:

Copy > **Copy from** > select the size of the original document

3 Touch **Copy to** > **Manual Feeder**.

4 Place the letterhead faceup, top edge first into the multipurpose feeder.


5 Select the size of the letterhead, and then touch **Letterhead** > **Copy It**.

Creating a copy shortcut using the printer control panel

1 From the home screen, touch **Copy**.

2 Adjust the copy settings, and then touch **Save As Shortcut**.

Note: If you change the settings after the copy shortcut has been created, then the settings are not saved.

3 Type a unique name for the shortcut, and then touch .

4 Verify that the shortcut name is correct, and then touch **OK**.

If the shortcut name is incorrect, then touch **Cancel**, and then reenter the information.

Notes:

- The shortcut name appears in the Copy Shortcuts icon on the printer home screen.
- You can use the shortcut when copying another document using the same settings.

Customizing copy settings

Copying to a different size

1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF tray or facedown on the scanner glass.

Notes:

- Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF tray. Place these items on the scanner glass.
- The ADF indicator light comes on when the paper is loaded properly.

2 If you are loading a document into the ADF tray, then adjust the paper guides.

3 From the home screen, navigate to:

Copy > Copy from > select the size of the original document

4 Navigate to:

Copy to > select a new size for the copy > **Copy It**

Note: If the selected paper size is different from the “Copy from” size, then the printer scales the size automatically.

Making copies using paper from a selected tray

1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF tray or facedown on the scanner glass.

Notes:

- Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF tray. Place these items on the scanner glass.
- The ADF indicator light comes on when the paper is loaded properly.

2 If you are loading a document into the ADF tray, then adjust the paper guides.

3 From the home screen, navigate to:

Copy > Copy from > select the size of the original document

4 Touch **Copy to**, and then select the tray that contains the paper type you want to use.

5 Touch **Copy It**.

Copying different paper sizes

Use the ADF to copy original documents with different paper sizes. Depending on the paper sizes loaded and the “Copy to” and “Copy from” settings, each copy is either printed on mixed paper sizes (Example 1) or scaled to fit a single paper size (Example 2).

Example 1: Copying on mixed paper sizes

1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF tray or facedown on the scanner glass.

Notes:

- Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF tray. Place these items on the scanner glass.
- The ADF indicator light comes on when the paper is loaded properly.

2 If you are loading a document into the ADF tray, then adjust the paper guides.

- 3 From the home screen, navigate to:

Copy > Copy from > Mixed Sizes > Copy to > Auto Size Match > Copy It

The scanner identifies the different paper sizes as they are scanned. Copies are printed on mixed paper sizes corresponding to the paper sizes of the original document.

Example 2: Copying on a single paper size

- 1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF tray or facedown on the scanner glass.

Notes:

- Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF tray. Place these items on the scanner glass.
- The ADF indicator light comes on when the paper is loaded properly.

- 2 If you are loading a document into the ADF tray, then adjust the paper guides.

- 3 From the home screen, navigate to:

Copy > Copy from > Mixed Sizes > Copy to > Letter > Copy It

The scanner identifies the different paper sizes as they are scanned, and then scales the mixed paper sizes to fit on the paper size selected.

Copying on both sides of the paper (duplexing)

- 1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF tray or facedown on the scanner glass.

Notes:

- Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF tray. Place these items on the scanner glass.
- The ADF indicator light comes on when the paper is loaded properly.

- 2 If you are loading a document into the ADF tray, then adjust the paper guides.

- 3 From the home screen, navigate to:

Copy > Sides (Duplex) > select the preferred duplexing method

Note: For the preferred duplexing method, the first number represents sides of the original documents while the second number represents sides of the copy. For example, select “2 sided to 2 sided” if you have two-sided original documents and you want two-sided copies.

- 4 Touch  > **Copy It**.



Reducing or enlarging copies

Copies can be scaled from 25% to 400% of the original document size.

- 1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF tray or facedown on the scanner glass.

Notes:

- Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF tray. Place these items on the scanner glass.

- The ADF indicator light comes on when the paper is loaded properly.
- 2 If you are loading a document into the ADF tray, then adjust the paper guides.
 - 3 From the home screen, touch **Copy**.
 - 4 From the Scale area, touch  or  to enlarge or reduce your copies.


Notes:

- The factory default setting for Scale is Auto.
 - If you leave Scale set to Auto, then the content of your original document will be scaled to fit the size of the paper onto which you are copying.
 - Touching **Copy to** or **Copy from** after setting Scale manually changes the scale value back to Auto.
- 5 Touch **Copy It**.

Adjusting copy quality

- 1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF tray or facedown on the scanner glass.

Notes:



- Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF tray. Place these items on the scanner glass.
 - The ADF indicator light comes on when the paper is loaded properly.
- 2 If you are loading a document into the ADF tray, then adjust the paper guides.
 - 3 From the home screen, navigate to:
Copy > Content
 - 4 Touch the button that best represents the content type of the document you are copying.
 - **Text**—The content of the original document is mostly text or line art.
 - **Text/Photo**—The original document is a mixture of text, graphics, and photos.
 - **Photo**—The original document is mostly a photo or an image.
 - **Graphics**—The original document is mostly business-type graphics, such as pie charts, bar charts, and animations.
 - 5 Touch .
 - 6 Touch the button that best represents the content source of the document you are copying.
 - **Color Laser**—The original document was printed using a color laser printer.
 - **Inkjet**—The original document was printed using an inkjet printer.
 - **Magazine**—The original document is from a magazine.
 - **Press**—The original document was printed using a printing press.
 - **Black/White Laser**—The original document was printed using a mono laser printer.
 - **Photo/Film**—The original document is a photo from a film.

- **Newspaper**—The original document is from a newspaper.
- **Other**—The original document was printed using an alternate or unknown printer.

7 Touch  > **Copy It.**

Collating copies

If you print multiple copies of a document, then you can choose to print the copies as a set (collated) or to print the copies as groups of pages (not collated).

Collated	Not collated
	


1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF tray or facedown on the scanner glass.

Notes:

- Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF tray. Place these items on the scanner glass.
- The ADF indicator light comes on when the paper is loaded properly.

2 If you are loading a document into the ADF tray, then adjust the paper guides.

3 From the home screen, navigate to:

Copy > enter the number of copies > **Collate** > select the preferred order of pages >  > **Copy It**

Placing separator sheets between copies

1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF tray or facedown on the scanner glass.

Notes:

- Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF tray. Place these items on the scanner glass.
- The ADF indicator light comes on when the paper is loaded properly.

2 If you are loading a document into the ADF tray, then adjust the paper guides.

3 From the home screen, navigate to:

Copy > **Separator Sheets**

Note: Set Collate to “1,2,3 - 1,2,3” to place separator sheets between copies. If Collate is set to “1,1,1 - 2,2,2,” then the separator sheets are added to the end of the copy job. For more information, see [“Collating copies” on page 78.](#)

4 Select one of the following:

- **Between Copies**
- **Between Jobs**

- **Between Pages**
- **Off**

5 Touch  > **Copy It.**

Copying multiple pages onto a single sheet

In order to save paper, you can copy either two or four consecutive pages of a multiple-page document onto a single sheet of paper.

Notes:

- Make sure to set the paper size to letter, legal, A4, or JIS B5.
- Make sure to set the copy size to 100%.


1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF tray or facedown on the scanner glass.

Notes:

- Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF tray. Place these items on the scanner glass.
- The ADF indicator light comes on when the paper is loaded properly.

2 If you are loading a document into the ADF tray, then adjust the paper guides.

3 From the home screen, navigate to:

Copy > Paper Saver > select the output you want >  > **Copy It**

Note: If Paper Saver is set to Off, then the Print Page Borders option is unavailable.

Placing information on copies

Placing a header or footer on pages

1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF tray or facedown on the scanner glass.

Notes:


- Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF tray. Place these items on the scanner glass.
- The ADF indicator light comes on when the paper is loaded properly.



2 If you are loading a document into the ADF tray, then adjust the paper guides.

3 From the home screen, navigate to:

Copy > Header/Footer

4 Select **Header** or **Footer**, and then touch .

5 Select where you want to insert the header or footer, then select a text option, and then touch .

- 6 Select where you want to print the header or footer, and then touch .
- 7 From the Header/Footer menu, touch  > **Copy It**.

Placing an overlay message on each page


- 1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF tray or facedown on the scanner glass.

Notes:

- Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF tray. Place these items on the scanner glass.
- The ADF indicator light comes on when the paper is loaded properly.

- 2 If you are loading a document into the ADF tray, then adjust the paper guides.

- 3 From the home screen, navigate to:

Copy > Overlay > select an overlay message > .

Note: The message choices are Urgent, Confidential, Copy, Custom, and Draft.

- 4 Touch **Copy It**.

Canceling a copy job

Canceling a copy job while the original document is in the ADF




When the ADF begins processing a document, touch **Cancel Job** on the printer control panel.

Canceling a copy job while copying pages using the scanner glass

From the home screen, touch **Cancel Job**.

Canceling appears on the display. When the job is canceled, the Copy screen appears.

Canceling a copy job while pages are being printed

- 1 From the printer control panel, press .
- 2 Touch the job you want to cancel, and then touch .
- 3 Press  to return to the home screen.

Understanding the copy options

Copy from

This option lets you select the paper size of the original document.

- Touch the paper size that matches the original document.
- To copy an original document that contains mixed paper sizes with the same width, touch **Mixed Sizes**.



Copy to

This option lets you select the size and type of paper on which your copies will be printed.

- Touch the paper size and type that matches the paper loaded.
- If the settings for “Copy from” and “Copy to” are different, then the printer automatically adjusts the Scale setting to accommodate the difference.
- If the type or size of paper you want to use is not loaded in one of the trays, then touch **Manual Feeder**, and manually load the paper in the manual feeder or multipurpose feeder.
- When “Copy to” is set to Auto Size Match, each copy matches the paper size of the original document. If a matching paper size is not in one of the trays, then **Paper size not found** appears and prompts to load a paper in a tray, manual feeder, or multipurpose feeder.

Scale

This option lets you scale the document from 25% to 400% of the original document size. You can also set automatic scaling.

- When copying to a different paper size, such as from legal-size to letter-size paper, set the “Copy from” and “Copy to” paper sizes automatically to scale the scan image to fit the size of the paper onto which you are copying.
- To decrease or increase the value by 1%, touch  or  on the printer control panel. To make a continuous decrease or increase in value, hold the button for two seconds or more.

Darkness

This option lets you adjust how light or dark the copies are in relation to the original document.

Sides (Duplex)

This option lets you make one- or two-sided copies from one- or two-sided original documents.

Collate

This option keeps the pages of a print job stacked in sequence when printing multiple copies of the document.

Copies

This option lets you set the number of copies to be printed.

Content

This option lets you set the original document type and source.

Select from the following content types:

- **Graphics**—The original document is mostly business-type graphics such as pie charts, bar charts, and animations.
- **Photo**—The original document is mostly a photo or an image.
- **Text**—The content of the original document is mostly text or line art.
- **Text/Photo**—The original document is a mixture of text, graphics, and photos.

Select from the following content sources:

- **Black/White Laser**—The original document was printed using a mono laser printer.
- **Color Laser**—The original document was printed using a color laser printer.
- **Inkjet**—The original document was printed using an inkjet printer.
- **Magazine**—The original document is from a magazine.
- **Newspaper**—The original document is from a newspaper.
- **Other**—The original document was printed using an alternate or unknown printer.
- **Photo/Film**—The original document is a photo from film.
- **Press**—The original document was printed using a printing press.

Color

This option lets you set the output to either color or monochrome for the scanned image.

Advanced Duplex



This option lets you specify the document orientation, whether documents are one-sided or two-sided, and how documents are bound.

Save As Shortcut

This option lets you save the current settings by assigning a shortcut name.

Note: Selecting this option automatically assigns the next available shortcut number.

Margin Shift

This option lets you increase or reduce the size of the margin of a page by shifting the scanned image. Touch  or  to set the margin you want. If the additional margin is too large, then the copy will be cropped.

Edge Erase

This option lets you remove smudges or marks around the edges of a document. You can choose to remove an equal area around all four sides of the paper, or pick a particular edge. Edge Erase also removes whatever is within the area selected, leaving nothing on that portion of the scan.

Overlay

This option lets you create a watermark (or message) that overlays the content of your copy. You can choose from Confidential, Copy, Draft, Urgent, and Custom. You can type a custom message in the "Enter the Custom Text Overlay and press OK" field. The message will appear, faintly, in large print across each page.

Cover Page Setup

This option lets you set up the cover page of copies and booklets.

Separator Sheets

This option lets you place a blank sheet of paper between copies, prints, pages, print jobs or copy jobs. The separator sheets can be drawn from a tray that contains a type or color of paper that is different from the paper your copies are printed on.

Header/Footer

This option lets you insert a header or footer and specify its location on a page.

Select one of the following:

- **Bates number**
- **Custom text**
- **Date/Time**
- **Page number**

Paper Saver

This option lets you print two or more pages of an original document on the same page. Paper Saver is also called *N-up* printing where *N* stands for the number of pages. For example, 2-up would print two pages of your document on a single page, and 4-up would print four pages of your document on a single page.

Advanced Imaging

This option lets you adjust the Auto Center, Background Removal, Color Balance, Color Dropout, Contrast, Mirror Image, Negative Image, Scan Edge to Edge, Shadow Detail, Sharpness, and Temperature settings before you copy the document.

Create Booklet

This option lets you create a sequence of printed and collated pages that, when folded, forms a booklet half the page size of the original document and with all the pages in order. You can choose between one-sided and two-sided.

Note: This option appears only when a printer hard disk is installed.



Custom Job

This option lets you combine multiple scan jobs into a single job and appears only when a working printer hard disk is installed.

Adjust ADF Skew

This option lets you straighten scanned images that are slightly skewed when received from the ADF tray.

E-mailing

ADF	Scanner glass
 <p>Use the ADF for multiple-page documents including two-sided (duplex) pages.</p>	 <p>Use the scanner glass for single-page documents, book pages, small items (such as postcards or photos), transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings).</p>

You can use the printer to e-mail scanned documents to one or more recipients. There are three ways to send an e-mail from the printer. You can type the e-mail address, use a shortcut number, or use the address book.

Setting up the printer to e-mail

Setting up the e-mail function

- 1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

Notes:

- View the printer IP address on the printer home screen. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

- 2 Click **Settings > E-mail/FTP Settings > E-mail Settings**.
- 3 Enter the appropriate information, and then click **Submit**.

Creating an e-mail shortcut

Creating an e-mail shortcut using the Embedded Web Server

- 1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

Notes:

- View the printer IP address on the printer home screen. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

2 Click **Settings**.


3 From the Other Settings column, click **Manage Shortcuts > E-mail Shortcut Setup**.

4 Type a unique name for the e-mail recipient, and then type the e-mail address. If you are entering multiple addresses, then separate each address with a comma.


5 Click **Add**.

Creating an e-mail shortcut using the printer control panel

1 From the home screen, navigate to:

E-mail > Recipient(s) > type the recipient's e-mail address > 

Note: To create a group of recipients, touch , and then type the next recipient's e-mail address.


2 Touch **Subject** > type the e-mail subject > .

3 Touch **Message** > type your message > .

4 Adjust the e-mail settings.

Note: If you change the settings after the e-mail shortcut has been created, then the settings are not saved.

5 Touch **Save As Shortcut**.

6 Type a unique name for the shortcut, and then touch .

7 Verify that the shortcut name is correct, and then touch **OK**.

If the shortcut name is incorrect, then touch **Cancel**, and then reenter the information.

Notes:

- The shortcut name appears in the E-mail Shortcuts icon on the printer home screen.
- You can use the shortcut when e-mailing another document using the same settings.

E-mailing a document

Sending an e-mail using the printer control panel

1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF tray or facedown on the scanner glass.

Notes:

- Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF tray. Place these items on the scanner glass.

- The ADF indicator light comes on when the paper is loaded properly.


2 If you are loading a document into the ADF tray, then adjust the paper guides.

Note: To avoid a cropped image, make sure that the size of the original document and the copy paper size are the same.

3 From the home screen, navigate to:

E-mail > Recipient(s)

4 Type the e-mail address, or press # and then enter the shortcut number.

To enter additional recipients, touch , and then enter the e-mail address or shortcut number that you want to add.

Note: You can also enter an e-mail address using the address book.

5 Touch  > **E-mail It.**

Sending an e-mail using a shortcut number


1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF tray or facedown on the scanner glass.

Notes:

- Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF tray. Place these items on the scanner glass.
- The ADF indicator light comes on when the paper is loaded properly.

2 If you are loading a document into the ADF tray, then adjust the paper guides.

3 Press #, then enter the shortcut number using the keypad, and then touch .

To enter additional recipients, touch , and then enter the e-mail address or shortcut number that you want to add.

4 Touch  > **E-mail It.**

Sending an e-mail using the address book



1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF tray or facedown on the scanner glass.

Notes:

- Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF tray. Place these items on the scanner glass.
- The ADF indicator light comes on when the paper is loaded properly.

2 If you are loading a document into the ADF tray, then adjust the paper guides.

3 From the home screen, navigate to:

E-mail > Recipient(s) >  > type the name of the recipient > 

- 4 Touch the name of the recipient.

To search for additional recipients, touch **New Search**, and then type the name of the next recipient.

- 5 Touch  > **E-mail It**.

Customizing e-mail settings

Adding e-mail subject and message information

- 1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF tray or facedown on the scanner glass.


Notes:

- Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF tray. Place these items on the scanner glass.
- The ADF indicator light comes on when the paper is loaded properly.

- 2 If you are loading a document into the ADF tray, then adjust the paper guides.

- 3 From the home screen, navigate to:

E-mail > **Recipient(s)** > type the e-mail address > 

- 4 Touch **Subject** > type the e-mail subject > .

- 5 Touch **Message** > type your message > .

Changing the output file type


- 1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF tray or facedown on the scanner glass.

Notes:

- Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF tray. Place these items on the scanner glass.
- The ADF indicator light comes on when the paper is loaded properly.

- 2 If you are loading a document into the ADF tray, then adjust the paper guides.

- 3 From the home screen, navigate to:

E-mail > **Recipient(s)** > type the e-mail address >  > **Send as**

- 4 Touch the button that represents the file type you want to send.

- **PDF**—Use this to create a single file with multiple pages, viewable with Adobe Reader. Adobe Reader is provided free by Adobe at www.adobe.com.
- **Secure PDF**—Use this to create an encrypted PDF file that protects the file contents from unauthorized access.
- **TIFF**—Use this to create multiple files or a single file. If Multi-page TIFF is turned off in the Settings menu of the Embedded Web Server, then TIFF saves one page in each file. The file size is usually larger than an equivalent JPEG.

- **JPEG**—Use this to create and attach a separate file for each page of your original document, viewable by most Web browsers and graphics programs.
- **XPS**—Use this to create a single XML Paper Specification (XPS) file with multiple pages, viewable using an Internet Explorer-hosted viewer and the .NET Framework, or by downloading a third-party standalone viewer.

5 Touch  > **E-mail It.**

Note: If you selected **Secure PDF**, then you will be prompted to enter your password twice.

Canceling an e-mail

- When using the ADF, touch **Cancel Job** while **Scanning** appears.
- When using the scanner glass, touch **Cancel Job** while **Scanning** appears, or while **Scan the Next Page / Finish the Job** appears.

Understanding the e-mail options

Recipient(s)

This option lets you enter the recipient of your e-mail. You may enter multiple e-mail addresses.

Subject

This option lets you type a subject line for your e-mail.

Message

This option lets you type a message that will be sent with your scanned attachment.

File Name

This option lets you customize the attachment file name.

Save As Shortcut

This option lets you save the current settings as a shortcut by assigning a shortcut name.

Note: Selecting this option automatically assigns the next available shortcut number.

Original Size

This option lets you set the paper size of the documents you are going to e-mail. When Original Size is set to Mixed Sizes, you can scan an original document that contains mixed paper sizes (letter- and legal-size pages).

Darkness

This option lets you adjust how light or dark your scanned documents are in relation to the original document.

Resolution

This option lets you adjust the output quality of your e-mail. Increasing the image resolution increases the e-mail file size and the time needed to scan your original document. Decreasing the image resolution reduces the file size.

Color

This option lets you set the output to either color or monochrome for the scanned image.

Send As

This option lets you set the output type for the scan image.

Select one of the following:

- **PDF**—Use this to create a single file with multiple pages.
Note: PDF is the factory default setting.
- **Secure PDF**—Use this to create an encrypted PDF file that protects the file contents from unauthorized access.
- **TIFF**—Use this to create multiple files or a single file. If Multi-page TIFF is turned off in the Settings menu of the Embedded Web Server, then TIFF saves one page in each file. The file size is usually larger than an equivalent JPEG.
- **JPEG**—Use this to create and attach a separate file for each page of your original document.
- **XPS**—Use this to create a single XPS file with multiple pages.

Content

This option lets you set the original document type and source.

Select from the following content types:

- **Graphics**—The original document is mostly business-type graphics, such as pie charts, bar charts, and animations.
- **Photo**—The original document is mostly a photo or an image.
- **Text**—The content of the original document is mostly text or line art.
- **Text/Photo**—The original document is a mixture of text, graphics, and photos.

Select from the following content sources:

- **Black/White Laser**—The original document was printed using a mono laser printer.
- **Color Laser**—The original document was printed using a color laser printer.
- **Inkjet**—The original document was printed using an inkjet printer.
- **Magazine**—The original document is from a magazine.
- **Newspaper**—The original document is from a newspaper.
- **Other**—The original document was printed using an alternate or unknown printer.
- **Photo/Film**—The original document is a photo from film.
- **Press**—The original document was printed using a printing press.

Page Setup

This option lets you change the following settings:

- **Sides (Duplex)**—This specifies if the original document is printed on only one side or on both sides of the paper. This also identifies what needs to be scanned for inclusion in the e-mail.
- **Orientation**—This specifies the orientation of the original document, and then changes the Sides (Duplex) and Binding settings to match the orientation.
- **Binding**—This specifies if the original document is bound on the long-edge or short-edge side.

Custom Job

This option lets you combine multiple scan jobs into a single job and appears only when a working printer hard disk is installed.

Scan Preview

This option lets you view the first page of the image before it is included in the e-mail. When the first page is scanned, the scanning is paused and a preview image appears.

Note: This option appears only when a working printer hard disk is installed.

Transmission Log

This option lets you print the transmission log or transmission error log.

Edge Erase

This option lets you remove smudges or any mark around the edges of a document. You can remove an equal area around all four sides of the paper, or you can pick a particular edge. Edge Erase also removes whatever is within the area selected, leaving nothing on that portion of the scan.



Advanced Imaging

This option lets you adjust the Background Removal, Color Balance, Color Dropout, Contrast, JPEG Quality, Mirror Image, Negative Image, Scan Edge to Edge, Shadow Detail, Sharpness, and Temperature settings before you e-mail the document.


Adjust ADF Skew

This option lets you straighten scanned images that are slightly skewed when received from the ADF tray.

Faxing

Automatic document feeder (ADF)	Scanner glass
 <p>Use the ADF for multiple-page documents including two-sided (duplex) pages.</p>	 <p>Use the scanner glass for single-page documents, book pages, small items (such as postcards or photos), transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings).</p>

Setting up the printer to fax

 **CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD:** Do not use the fax feature during a lightning storm. Do not set up this product or make any electrical or cabling connections, such as the fax feature, power cord, or telephone, during a lightning storm.

Notes:

- The following connection methods are applicable only in select countries or regions.
- During the initial printer setup, clear the fax function check box and any other function you plan to set up later, and then press **Continue**.
- The indicator light may blink red if the fax function is enabled and not fully set up.

Warning—Potential Damage: Do not touch the cables or the printer in the area shown while actively sending or receiving a fax.



Initial fax setup

Many countries and regions require outgoing faxes to contain the following information in a margin at the top or bottom of each transmitted page, or on the first page of the transmission: fax name (identification of the business, other entity, or individual sending the message) and fax number (telephone number of the sending fax machine, business, other entity, or individual). For more information, see [“Regulatory notices for telecommunication terminal equipment” on page 330](#).

To enter your fax setup information, use the printer control panel, or use your browser to access the Embedded Web Server and then enter the Settings menu.

Note: If you do not have a TCP/IP environment, then you must use the printer control panel to enter your fax setup information.

Using the printer control panel for fax setup

When the printer is turned on for the first time, a series of start-up screens appear. If the printer has fax capabilities, then the Fax Name and Fax Number screens appear.

- 1 When the Fax Name screen appears, do the following:
 - a Enter the name to be printed on all outgoing faxes.
 - b Enter the fax name, and then touch **Submit**.
- 2 When the Fax Number screen appears, enter the fax number, and then touch **Submit**.

Using the Embedded Web Server for fax setup

- 1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

Notes:

- View the printer IP address on the printer home screen. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

- 2 Click **Settings > Fax Settings > Analog Fax Setup**.
- 3 In the Fax Name field, type the name to be printed on all outgoing faxes.

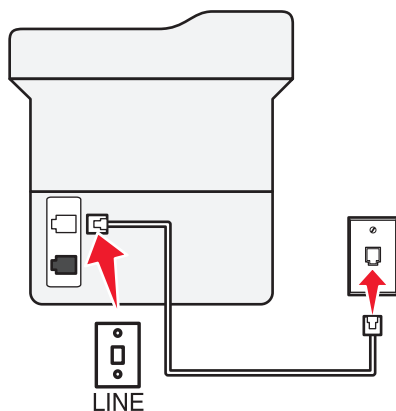
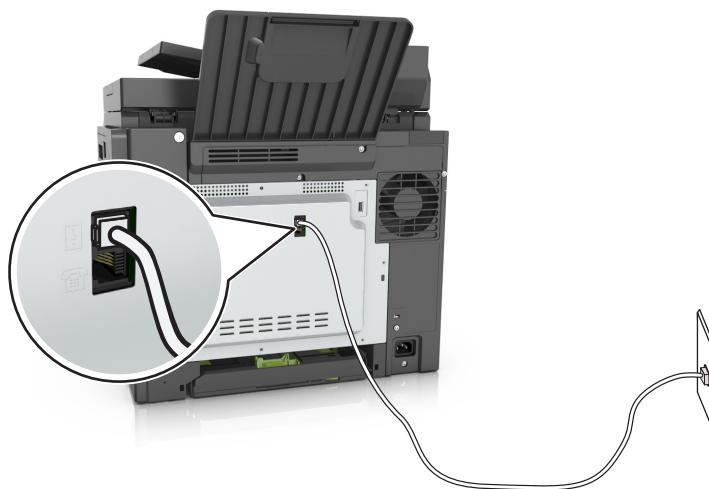
4 In the Fax Number field, enter the printer fax number.

5 Click **Submit**.


Choosing a fax connection

Scenario 1: Standard telephone line

Setup 1: Printer is connected to a dedicated fax line



To connect:

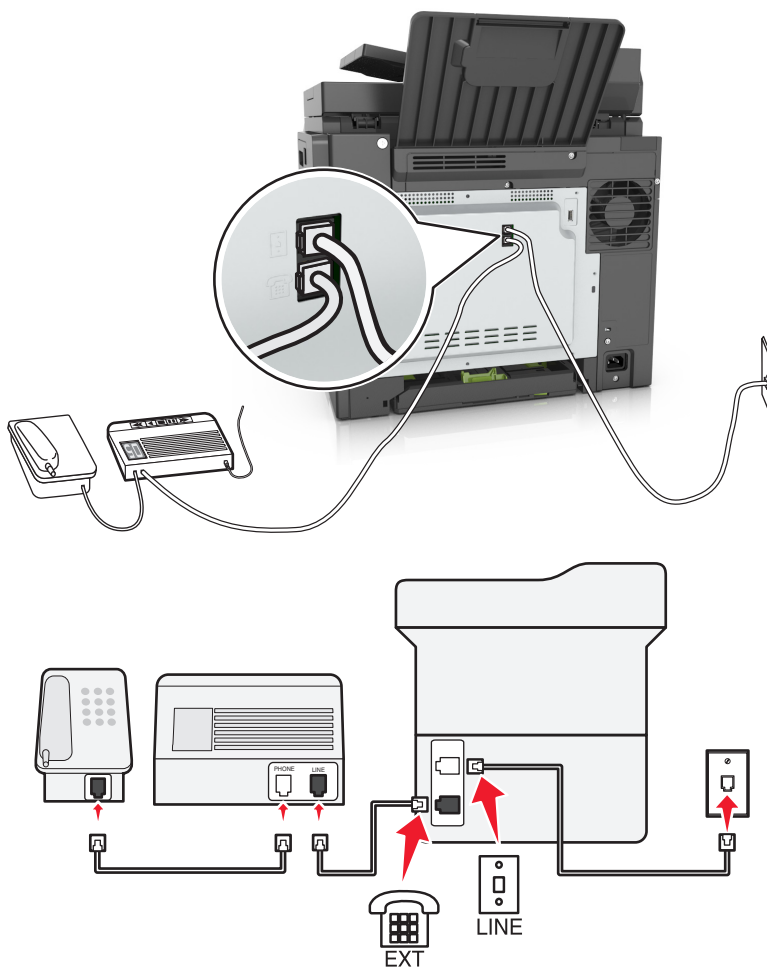
- 1** Connect one end of the telephone cable that came with the printer to the  port of the printer.
- 2** Connect the other end of the telephone cable to an active analog wall jack.



Tips for this setup:

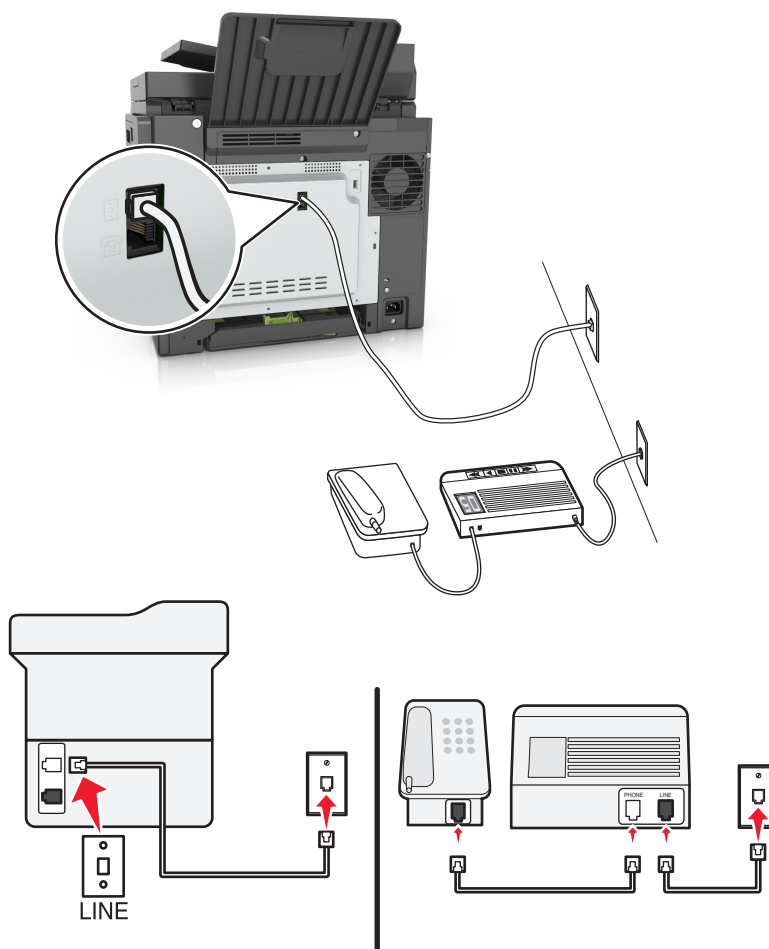
- You can set the printer to receive faxes automatically (Auto Answer On) or manually (Auto Answer Off).
- If you want to receive faxes automatically (Auto Answer On), then set the printer to pick up on any number of rings that you want.


Setup 2: Printer is sharing the line with an answering machine

Connected to the same telephone wall jack

**To connect:**

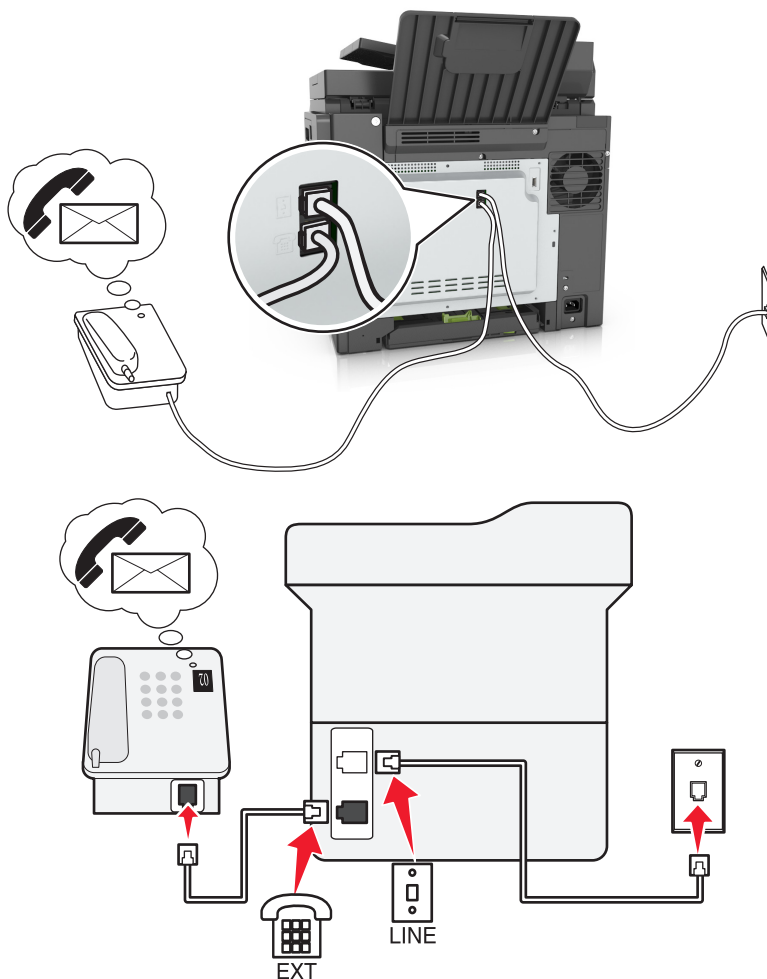
- 1 Connect one end of the telephone cable that came with the printer to the  port of the printer.
- 2 Connect the other end of the telephone cable to an active analog wall jack.
- 3 Connect the answering machine to the  port of the printer.



Connected to different wall jacks**To connect:**

- 1 Connect one end of the telephone cable that came with the printer to the  port of the printer.
- 2 Connect the other end of the telephone cable to an active analog wall jack.

Tips for this setup:

- If you have only one telephone number on your line, then you need to set the printer to receive faxes automatically (Auto Answer On).
- Set the printer to pick up calls two rings after the answering machine. For example, if the answering machine picks up calls after four rings, then set the printer to pick up after six rings. This way, the answering machine picks up calls first and your voice calls are received. If the call is a fax, then the printer detects the fax signal on the line and takes over the call.
- If you subscribe to a distinctive ring service provided by your telephone company, then make sure that you set the correct ring pattern for the printer. Otherwise, the printer does not receive faxes even if you have set it to receive faxes automatically.

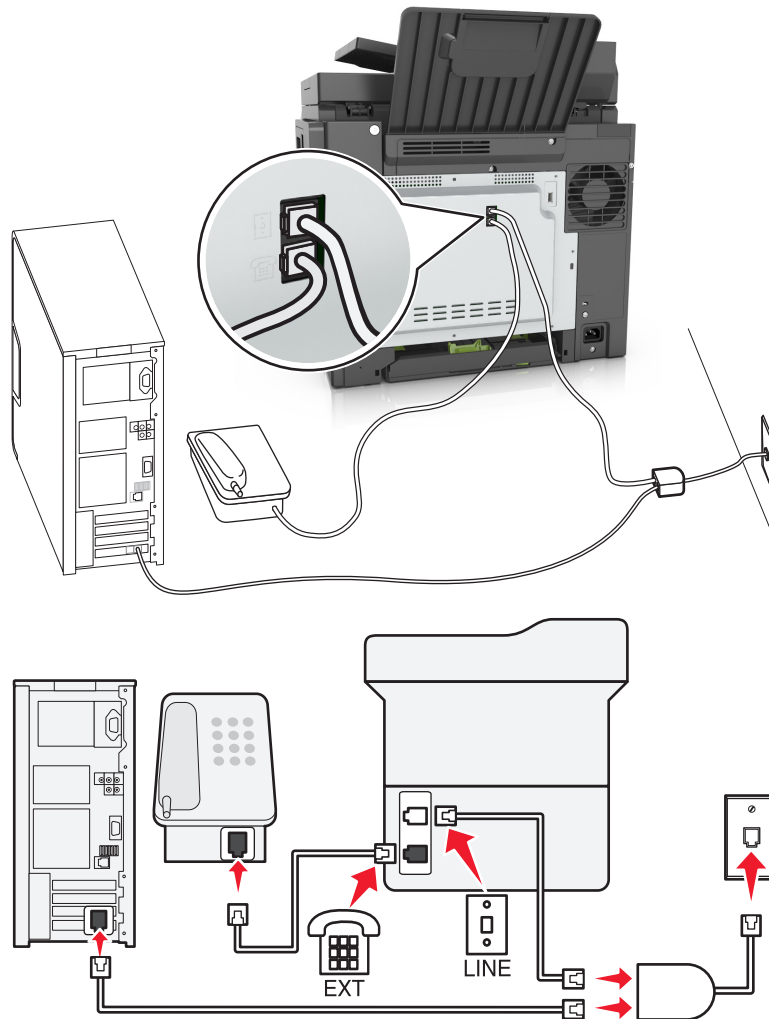
Setup 3: Printer is sharing the line with a telephone subscribed to voice mail service**To connect:**

- 1 Connect one end of the telephone cable that came with the printer to the  port of the printer.
- 2 Connect the other end of the telephone cable to an active analog wall jack.
- 3 Connect the telephone to the  port of the printer.

Tips for this setup:

- This setup works best if you subscribe to a distinctive ring service. If you have distinctive ring service, then make sure that you set the correct ring pattern for the printer. Otherwise, the printer does not receive faxes even if you have set it to receive faxes automatically.
- If you have only one telephone number on your line, then you need to set the printer to receive faxes manually (Auto Answer Off).
When you answer the telephone and you hear fax tones, press ***9*** or the manual answer code on the telephone to receive the fax.
- You can also set the printer to receive faxes automatically (Auto Answer On), but you need to turn off the voice mail service when you are expecting a fax. This setting works best if you are using voice mail more often than fax.



Scenario 2: Digital Subscriber Line (DSL)



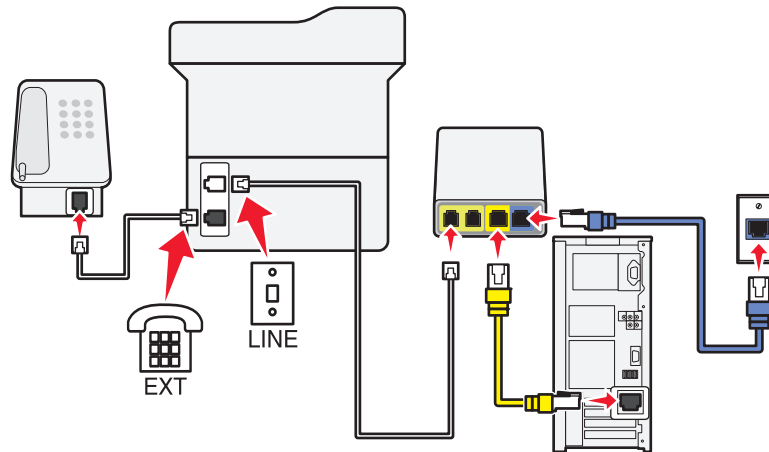
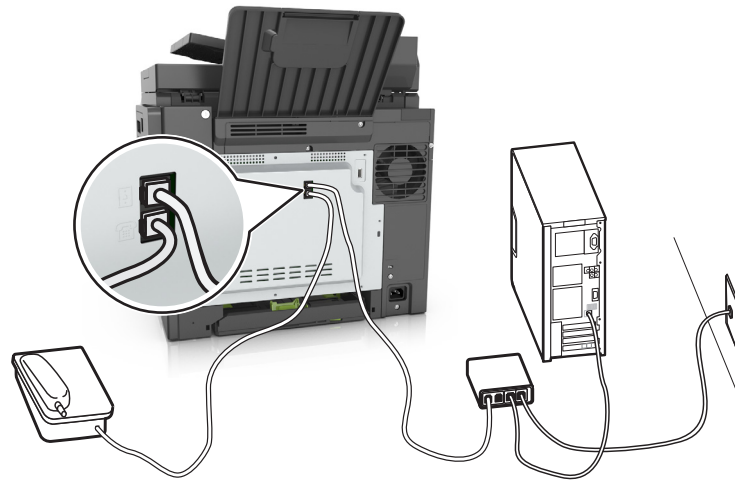
A Digital Subscriber Line splits your regular telephone line into two channels: voice and Internet. Telephone and fax signals travel through the voice channel, and Internet signals pass through the other channel. This way, you can use the same line for analog voice calls (including faxes) and digital Internet access.

To minimize interference between the two channels and ensure a quality connection, you need to install a DSL filter for the analog devices (fax machine, telephone, answering machine) in your network. Interference causes noise and static on the telephone, failed and poor quality faxes for the printer, and slow Internet connection on your computer.


To install a filter for the printer:

- 1 Connect the line port of the DSL filter to the wall jack.
- 2 Connect one end of the telephone cable that came with your printer to the  port of the printer. Connect the other end to the phone port on the DSL filter.
- 3 To continue using a computer for Internet access, connect the computer to the DSL HPN port on the DSL filter.
- 4 To connect a telephone to the printer, remove any installed adapter plug from the  port of the printer, and then connect the telephone to the port.


Scenario 3: VoIP telephone service



To connect:

- 1 Connect one end of the telephone cable that came with the printer to the  port of the printer.
- 2 Connect the other end of the cable to the port labeled **Phone Line 1** or **Phone Port** on the VoIP adapter.

Note: The port labeled **Phone Line 2** or **Fax Port** is not always active. VoIP providers may charge additional cost for activation of the second phone port.

- 3 Connect the telephone to the  port of the printer.

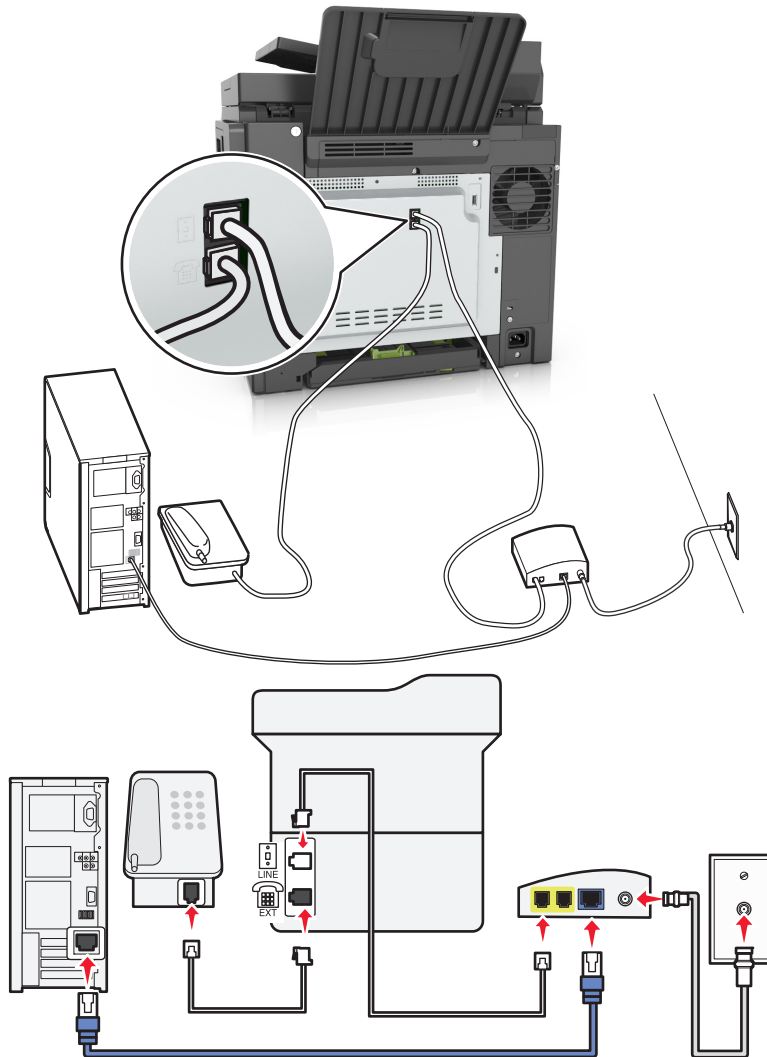
Tips for this setup:


- To make sure that the phone port on the VoIP adapter is active, plug an analog telephone into the phone port, and then listen for a dial tone. If you hear a dial tone, then the port is active.
- If you need two phone ports for your devices, but do not want to pay additional cost, then do not plug the printer into the second phone port. You can use a phone splitter. Plug the phone splitter into the port labeled **Phone Line 1** or **Phone Port**, and then plug the printer and telephone into the splitter.

Note: Make sure you use a phone splitter, *not* a line splitter. To make sure that you are using the correct splitter, plug an analog telephone into the splitter and then listen for a dial tone.


Scenario 4: Digital telephone service through a cable provider

Setup 1: Printer is connected directly to a cable modem



- 1 Connect one end of the telephone cable that came with your printer to the  port of the printer.
- 2 Connect the other end of the cable to the port labeled **Phone Line 1** or **Phone Port** on the cable modem.

Note: The port labeled **Phone Line 2** or **Fax Port** is not always active. VoIP providers may charge additional cost for activation of the second phone port.

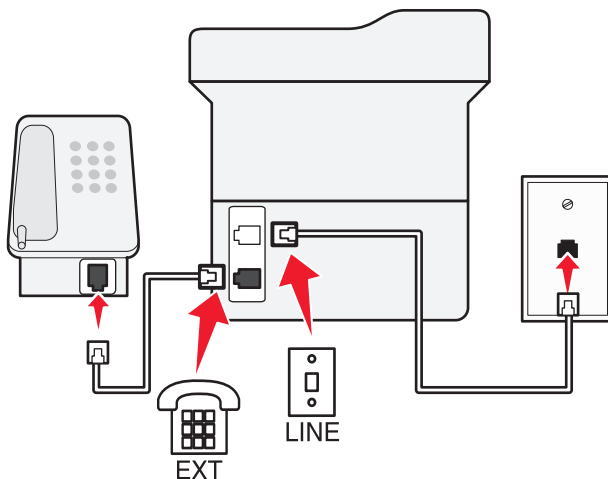
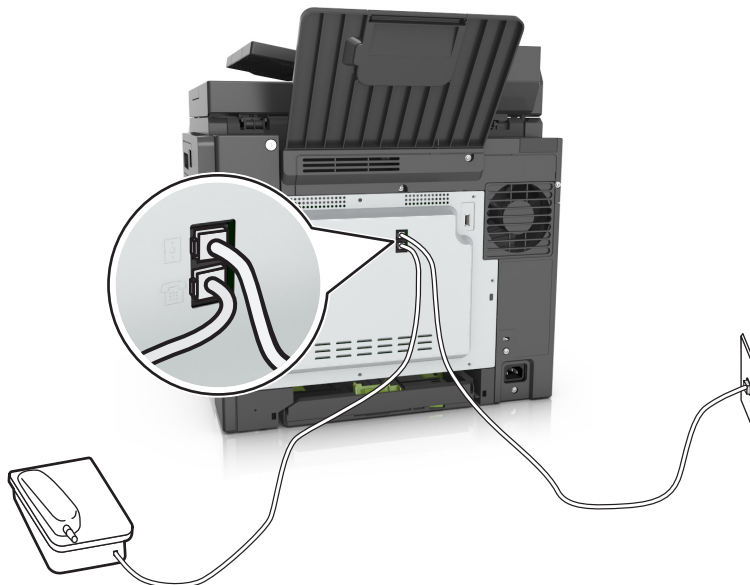
- 3 Connect your analog telephone phone to the  port of the printer.



Notes:

- To make sure that the telephone port on the cable modem is active, plug an analog telephone into the telephone port, and then listen for a dial tone. If you hear a dial tone, then the port is active.
- If you need two telephone ports for your devices, but do not want to pay additional cost, then do not plug the printer into the second telephone port. You can use a phone splitter. Plug the phone splitter into the **Phone Line 1** or **Phone Port**, and then plug the printer and telephone into the splitter.

- Make sure you use a phone splitter, *not* a line splitter. To make sure that you are using the correct splitter, plug an analog telephone into the splitter and then listen for a dial tone.

Setup 2: Printer is connected to a wall jack; cable modem is installed elsewhere in the facility

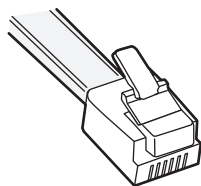




- 1 Connect one end of the telephone cable that came with your printer to the  port of the printer.
- 2 Connect the other end of the telephone cable to an active analog telephone wall jack.
- 3 Connect your analog telephone to the  port of the printer.

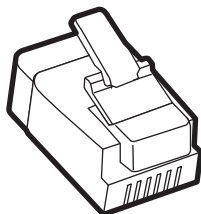
Scenario 5: Countries or regions with different telephone wall jacks and plugs

Some countries or regions may have different types of telephone wall jack connectors than those that came with the printer. The standard wall jack adopted by most countries or regions is RJ-11. Your printer comes with the RJ-11 jack and a telephone cable with the RJ-11 plug.

If the wall jack or equipment in your facility is not compatible with this type of connection, then you need to use a telephone adapter. An adapter for your country or region may not come with your printer, and you may need to purchase it separately.

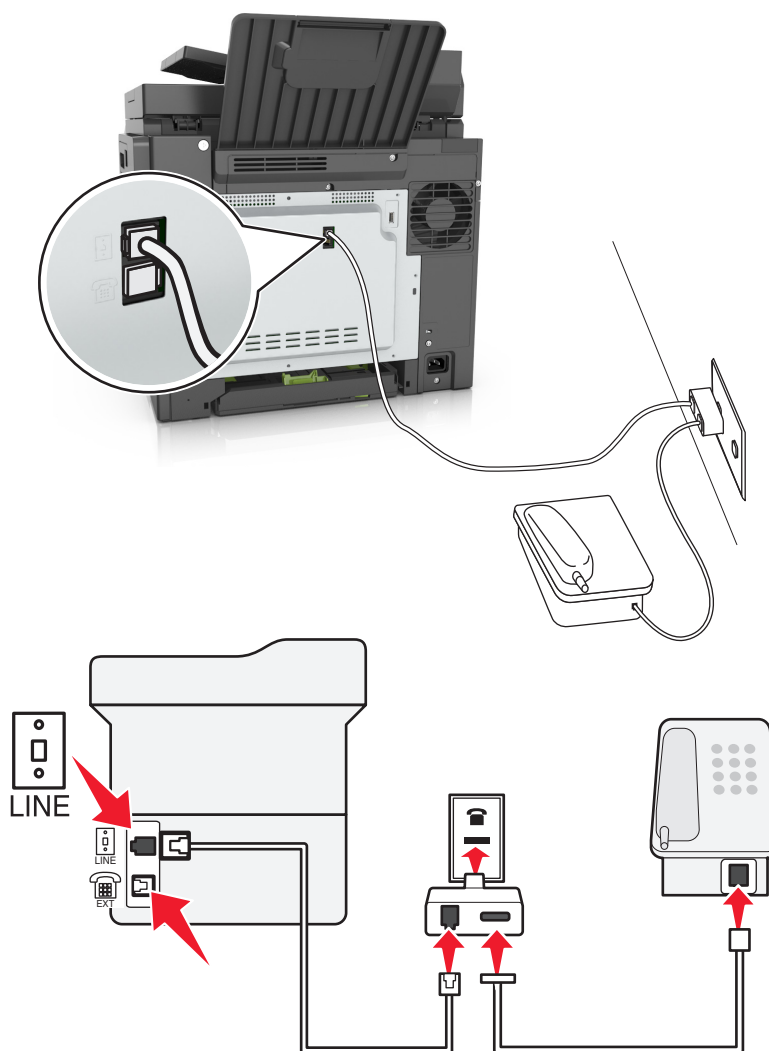



There may be an adapter plug installed in the  port of the printer. If you are using a telephone adapter or a facility that has a cascaded or serial wiring scheme, then do not remove the adapter plug from the  port of the printer.





Part name	Part number
Lexmark adapter plug	40X8519

Connecting the printer to a non-RJ-11 wall jack



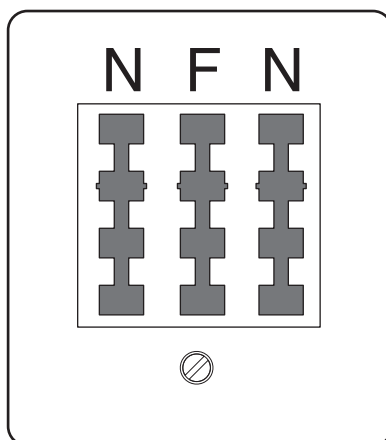
- 1 Connect one end of the telephone cable that came with printer to the  port of the printer.
- 2 Connect the other end of the cable to the RJ-11 adapter, and then connect the adapter to the wall jack.
- 3 If you want to connect another device (telephone or answering machine) to the same wall jack, and if the device has a non-RJ-11 connector, then connect it directly to the telephone adapter.

Notes:

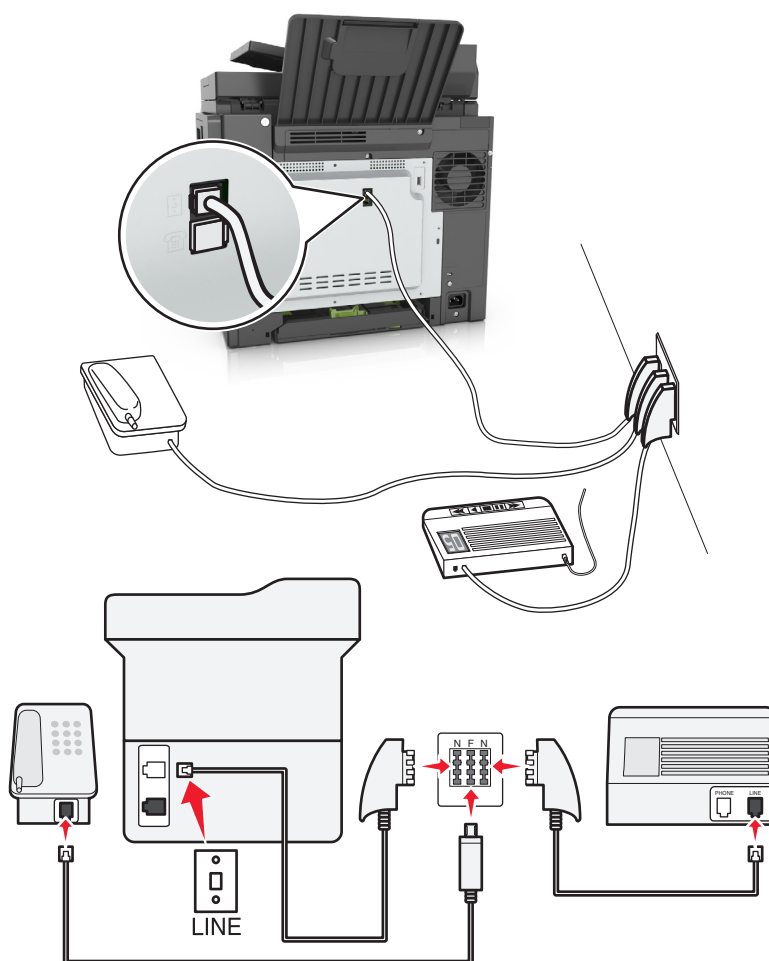
- The  port of the printer may have an adapter plug for use with the adapter. Do *not* remove the plug from the  port of the printer.
- In some countries or regions, the printer may not come with a telephone adapter or an adapter plug.


Connecting the printer to a wall jack in Germany

The German wall jack has two kinds of ports. The N ports are for fax machines, modems, and answering machines. The F port is for telephones.




Connect the printer to any of the N ports.




- 1 Connect one end of the telephone cable that came the printer to the  port of the printer.
- 2 Connect the other end of the telephone cable to the RJ-11 adapter, and then connect the adapter to an N port.

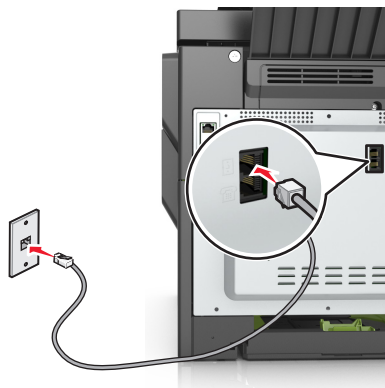
- 3 If you want to connect a telephone and answering machine to the same wall jack, then connect the devices as shown.

Note: Do *not* remove the adapter plug from the  port of the printer if you are connecting to a serial or cascaded telephone system.

Connecting to a distinctive ring service

A distinctive ring service may be available from your telephone company. This service lets you have multiple telephone numbers on one telephone line, with each telephone number having a different ring pattern. This may be useful for distinguishing between fax and voice calls. If you subscribe to a distinctive ring service, then follow these steps to connect the equipment:

- 1 Connect one end of the telephone cable that came with the printer to the printer LINE port .
- 2 Connect the other end of the telephone cable to an active analog telephone wall jack.




- 3 Change the distinctive rings setting to match the setting you want for the printer to answer.

Note: The factory default setting for distinctive rings is On. This sets the printer to answer single, double, and triple ring patterns.

- a From the home screen, navigate to:

 > **Settings** > **Fax Settings** > **Analog Fax Setup** > **Answer On**

- b Select the pattern setting you want to change, and then touch .

Setting the outgoing fax name and number

- 1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

Notes:

- View the printer IP address on the printer home screen. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

- 2 Click **Settings** > **Fax Settings** > **Analog Fax Setup**.

- 3 In the Fax Name field, type the name to be printed on all outgoing faxes.

4 In the Fax Number field, enter the printer fax number.

5 Click **Submit**.

Setting the date and time

You can set the date and time so that they are printed on every fax you send.

1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

Notes:

- View the printer IP address on the printer home screen. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

2 Click **Security > Set Date and Time**.

3 In the Manually Set Date & Time field, enter the current date and time.

4 Click **Submit**.

Note: It is recommended to use the network time.

Configuring the printer to observe daylight saving time

The printer can be set to automatically adjust for daylight saving time:

1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

Notes:

- View the printer IP address on the printer home screen. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

2 Click **Security > Set Date and Time**.

3 Select the **Automatically Observe DST** check box, and then enter the DST start and end dates in the Custom Time Zone Setup section.

4 Click **Submit**.

Sending a fax


Sending a fax using the printer control panel

1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF tray or facedown on the scanner glass.

Notes:

- Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF tray. Place these items on the scanner glass.

- The ADF indicator light comes on when the paper is loaded properly.
- 2 If you are loading a document into the ADF tray, then adjust the paper guides.
 - 3 From the home screen, touch **Fax**.
 - 4 From the printer control panel keypad, enter the fax number or the shortcut number.

Note: To add recipients, touch , and then enter the recipient's telephone number or shortcut number, or search the address book.

- 5 Touch **Fax It**.

Sending a fax using the computer

The printer driver fax option lets you send a print job to the printer, which sends the job as a fax. The fax option works as a normal fax machine, but is controlled through the printer driver instead of the printer control panel.

- 1 With a document open, click **File > Print**.
- 2 Select the printer, and then click **Properties, Preferences, Options, or Setup**.
- 3 Navigate to:
Fax tab > Enable fax
- 4 Enter the recipient fax number or numbers in the “Fax number(s)” field.
Note: Fax numbers can be entered manually or by using the Phone Book feature
- 5 If necessary, enter a prefix in the “Dialing prefix” field.
- 6 Select the appropriate paper size and page orientation.
- 7 If you want to include a cover page with the fax, then select **Include cover page with fax**, and then enter the appropriate information.
- 8 Click **OK**.

Notes:

- The Fax option is available for use only with the PostScript driver or the Universal Fax Driver. For information on installing these drivers, see the *Software and Documentation* CD.
- The Fax option must be configured and enabled in the PostScript driver under the Configuration tab before it can be used.
- If the **Always display settings prior to faxing** check box is selected, then you are prompted to verify the recipient information before the fax is sent. If this check box is cleared, then the queued document is sent automatically as a fax when you click **OK** on the Fax tab.

Sending a fax using a shortcut number

Fax shortcuts are like the speed dial numbers on a telephone or a fax machine. A shortcut number (1–999) can contain a single recipient or multiple recipients.

- 1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF tray or facedown on the scanner glass.

Notes:

- Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF tray. Place these items on the scanner glass.
- The ADF indicator light comes on when the paper is loaded properly.

2 If you are loading a document into the ADF tray, then adjust the paper guides.

3 From the printer control panel, press **#**, and then enter the shortcut number using the keypad.

4 Touch **Fax It**.

Sending a fax using the address book

The address book feature lets you search for bookmarks and network directory servers.

Note: If the address book feature is not enabled, then contact your system support person.



1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF tray or facedown on the scanner glass.

Notes:

- Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF tray. Place these items on the scanner glass.
- The ADF indicator light comes on when the paper is loaded properly.

2 If you are loading a document into the ADF tray, then adjust the paper guides.

3 From the home screen, navigate to:

Fax >  > type the name of the recipient > 

Note: You can only search for one name at a time.

4 Touch the name of the recipient, and then touch **Fax It**.

Sending a fax at a scheduled time

1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF tray or facedown on the scanner glass.

Notes:


- Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF tray. Place these items on the scanner glass.
- The ADF indicator light comes on when the paper is loaded properly.

2 If you are loading a document into the ADF tray, then adjust the paper guides.

3 From the home screen, navigate to:

Fax > enter the fax number > **Delayed Send**

Note: If Fax Mode is set to Fax Server, then the Delayed Send button will not appear. Faxes waiting for transmission are listed in the fax queue.

- 4 Specify the time the fax will be transmitted, and then touch .

The time is increased or decreased in 30-minute increments.

- 5 Touch **Fax It**.

Note: The document is scanned and then faxed at the scheduled time.

Creating shortcuts

Creating a fax destination shortcut using the Embedded Web Server

Assign a shortcut number to a single fax number or a group of fax numbers.

- 1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

Notes:

- View the printer IP address in the TCP/IP section in the Network/Ports menu. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

- 2 Click **Settings > Manage Shortcuts > Fax Shortcut Setup**.

Note: A password may be required. If you do not have an ID and password, then contact your system support person.

- 3 Type a name for the shortcut, and then enter the fax number.

Notes:

- To create a multiple-number shortcut, enter the fax numbers for the group.
- Separate each fax number in the group with a semicolon (;).

- 4 Assign a shortcut number.

Note: If you enter a number that is already in use, then you are prompted to select another number.


- 5 Click **Add**.

Creating a fax destination shortcut using the printer control panel

- 1 From the home screen, touch **Fax**, and then enter the fax number.

To create a group of fax numbers, touch , and then enter the other fax number.

- 2 Touch .

- 3 Type a unique name for the shortcut, and then touch .

- 4 Verify that the shortcut name and number are correct, and then touch **OK**.

If the name or number is incorrect, then touch **Cancel**, and then reenter the information.

Customizing fax settings

Changing the fax resolution



- 1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF tray or facedown on the scanner glass.

Notes:

- Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF tray. Place these items on the scanner glass.
- The ADF indicator light comes on when the paper is loaded properly.

- 2 If you are loading a document into the ADF tray, then adjust the paper guides.

- 3 From the home screen, touch **Fax**, and then enter the fax number.

- 4 From the Resolution area, touch  or  to change to the resolution you want.

Note: Settings range from Standard (fastest speed) to Ultra Fine (best quality at a reduced speed).

- 5 Touch **Fax It**.

Making a fax lighter or darker

- 1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF tray or facedown on the scanner glass.

Notes:

- Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF tray. Place these items on the scanner glass.
- The ADF indicator light comes on when the paper is loaded properly.

- 2 If you are loading a document into the ADF tray, then adjust the paper guides.

- 3 From the home screen, touch **Fax**, and then enter the fax number.

- 4 From the Darkness area, touch  or  to adjust the darkness setting of the fax.

- 5 Touch **Fax It**.

Viewing a fax log

- 1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

Notes:

- View the printer IP address on the printer home screen. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

- 2 Click **Settings > Reports**.

- 3 Click **Fax Job Log** or **Fax Call Log**.

Blocking junk faxes

- 1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

Notes:

- View the printer IP address on the printer home screen. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

- 2 Click **Settings > Fax Settings > Analog Fax Setup > Block No Name Fax**.

Notes:

- This option blocks all incoming faxes that have a private caller ID or have no fax name.
- In the Banned Fax List field, enter the phone numbers or type the fax names of specific fax callers you want to block.

Canceling an outgoing fax

Canceling a fax while the original documents are still scanning

- When using the ADF, touch **Cancel Job** on the printer control panel while **Scanning** appears.
- When using the scanner glass, touch **Cancel Job** on the printer control panel while **Scanning** appears or while **Scan the Next Page** and **Finish the Job** appear.

Canceling a fax after the original documents have been scanned to memory

- 1 On the home screen, touch **Cancel Jobs**.

The Cancel Jobs screen appears.

- 2 Touch the job or jobs you want to cancel.

Only three jobs appear on the screen; touch the down arrow until the job you want appears, and then touch the job you want to cancel.

- 3 Touch **Delete Selected Jobs**.

The Deleting Selected Jobs screen appears, the selected jobs are deleted, and then the home screen appears.

Holding and forwarding faxes

Holding faxes

This option lets you hold received faxes from printing until they are released. Held faxes can be released manually or at a scheduled day or time.

- 1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

Notes:

- View the printer IP address on the printer home screen. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

2 Click **Settings > Fax Settings > Analog Fax Setup > Holding Faxes**.

3 From the Held Fax Mode menu, select one of the following:

- **Off**
- **Always On**
- **Manual**
- **Scheduled**

4 If you selected Scheduled, then continue with the following steps:

- a** Click **Fax Holding Schedule**.
- b** From the Action menu, select **Hold faxes**.
- c** From the Time menu, select the time you want the held faxes released.
- d** From the Day(s) menu, select the day you want the held faxes released.

5 Click **Add**.

Forwarding a fax

This option lets you print and forward received faxes to a fax number, e-mail address, FTP site, or LDSS.

1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

Notes:

- View the printer IP address on the printer home screen. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

2 Click **Settings > Fax Settings**.

3 From the Fax Forwarding menu, select **Print**, **Print and Forward**, or **Forward**.

4 From the “Forward to” menu, select **Fax**, **E-mail**, **FTP**, **LDSS**, or **eSF**.

5 In the “Forward to Shortcut” field, enter the shortcut number where you want the fax forwarded.

Note: The shortcut number must be valid for the setting selected in the “Forward to” menu.

6 Click **Submit**.

Understanding the fax options

Darkness

This option lets you adjust how light or dark the faxes are in relation to the original document.

Resolution

This option lets you adjust the quality of the fax output. Increasing the image resolution increases the file size and the time needed to scan your original document. Decreasing the image resolution reduces the file size.

Select one of the following:

- **Standard**—Use this when faxing most documents.
- **Fine 200 dpi**—Use this when faxing documents with small prints.
- **Super fine 300 dpi**—Use this when faxing documents with fine details.
- **Ultra fine 600 dpi**—Use this when faxing documents with pictures or photos.

Color

This option lets you set the output to either color or monochrome for the scanned image.

Content

This option lets you specify the content type and source of the original document.

Select from the following content types:

- **Graphics**—The original document is mostly business-type graphics, such as pie charts, bar charts, and animations.
- **Photo**—The original document is mostly a photo or an image.
- **Text**—The content of the original document is mostly text or line art.
- **Text/Photo**—The original document is a mixture of text, graphics, and photos.

Select from the following content sources:

- **Black/White Laser**—The original document was printed using a mono laser printer.
- **Color Laser**—The original document was printed using a color laser printer.
- **Inkjet**—The original document was printed using an inkjet printer.
- **Magazine**—The original document is from a magazine.
- **Newspaper**—The original document is from a newspaper.
- **Other**—The original document was printed using an alternate or unknown printer.
- **Photo/Film**—The original document is a photo from film.
- **Press**—The original document was printed using a printing press.

Page Setup

This option lets you change the following settings:

- **Sides (Duplex)**—This specifies if the original document is printed on one side or on both sides of the page (duplex). This also identifies what needs to be scanned for inclusion in the fax.
- **Orientation**—This specifies the orientation of the original document, and then changes the Sides (Duplex) and Binding settings to match the orientation.
- **Binding**—This specifies if the original document is bound on the long-edge or short-edge side.

Transmission Log

This option lets you print the transmission log or transmission error log.

Edge Erase

This option lets you remove smudges or any mark around the edges of a document. You can remove an equal area around all four sides of the paper, or you can pick a particular edge. Edge Erase also removes whatever is within the area selected, leaving nothing on that portion of the scan.

Custom Job

This option lets you combine multiple scan jobs into a single job and appears only when a working printer hard disk is installed.

Scan Preview

This option lets you view the first page of the image before it is included in the fax. When the first page is scanned, the scanning is paused and a preview image appears.

Note: This option appears only when a working printer hard disk is installed.

Delayed Send

This option lets you send a fax at a later time or date.

Advanced Imaging

This option lets you change or adjust the Background Removal, Color Balance, Color Dropout, Contrast, Mirror Image, Negative Image, Scan Edge to Edge, Shadow Detail, and Sharpness settings before you fax the document.

Adjust ADF Skew



This option lets you straighten scanned images that are slightly skewed when received from the ADF tray.

Scanning

Using Scan to Network

Scan to Network lets you scan your documents to network destinations specified by your system support person. After the destinations (shared network folders) have been established on the network, the setup process for the application involves installing and configuring the application on the appropriate printer using its Embedded Web Server. For more information, see [“Setting up Scan to Network” on page 23](#).

Scanning to an FTP address

Automatic document feeder (ADF)	Scanner glass
	
Use the ADF for multiple-page documents including two-sided (duplex) pages.	Use the scanner glass for single-page documents, book pages, small items (such as postcards or photos), transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings).

The scanner lets you scan documents directly to a File Transfer Protocol (FTP) server. Only one FTP address may be sent to the server at a time.

When an FTP destination has been configured by your system support person, the name of the destination becomes available as a shortcut number, or it is listed as a profile under the Held Jobs icon. An FTP destination could also be another PostScript printer.

Creating shortcuts

Instead of entering the entire FTP site address on the printer control panel each time you want to send a document to an FTP server, you can create a permanent FTP destination and assign a shortcut number. There are two methods for creating shortcut numbers: using the Embedded Web Server or using the printer control panel.

Creating an FTP shortcut using the Embedded Web Server

- 1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

Notes:

- View the printer IP address on the printer home screen. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

2 Navigate to:

Settings > Other Settings area > **Manage Shortcuts** > **FTP Shortcut Setup**

3 Enter the appropriate information.

Note: A password may be required. If you do not have an ID and password, then contact your system support person.

4 Enter a shortcut number.

Note: If you enter a number that is already in use, then you are prompted to select another number.

5 Click **Add**.**Creating an FTP shortcut using the printer control panel****1** From the home screen, navigate to:

FTP > **FTP Address** > type the FTP address >  >  > type a name for the shortcut > 

2 Verify that the shortcut name and number are correct, and then touch **OK**.

If the name or number is incorrect, then touch **Cancel**, and then reenter the information. If you enter a number that is already in use, then you will be prompted to select another number.

Scanning to an FTP address**Scanning to an FTP address using the printer control panel****1** Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF tray or facedown on the scanner glass.**Notes:**

- Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF tray. Place these items on the scanner glass.
- The ADF indicator light comes on when the paper is loaded properly.

2 If you are loading a document into the ADF tray, then adjust the paper guides.**3** From the home screen, navigate to:

FTP > **FTP Address** > type the FTP address >  > **Scan It**



Scanning to an FTP address using a shortcut number**1** Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF tray or facedown on the scanner glass.

Notes:

- Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF tray. Place these items on the scanner glass.
- The ADF indicator light comes on when the paper is loaded properly.

- 2 If you are loading a document into the ADF tray, then adjust the paper guides.
- 3 From the printer control panel, press **#** on the keypad, and then enter the FTP shortcut number.
- 4 Touch **Scan It**.

Scanning to a computer or flash drive

ADF	Scanner glass
	
Use the ADF for multiple-page documents.	Use the scanner glass for single-page documents, small items (such as postcards or photos), transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings).

The scanner lets you scan documents directly to a computer or a flash drive. The computer does not have to be directly connected to the printer for you to receive images when scanning to a computer. You can scan the document back to the computer over the network by creating a scan profile on the computer and then downloading the profile to the printer.

Scanning to a computer using the Embedded Web Server

- 1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

Notes:

- View the printer IP address on the printer home screen. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

- 2 Click **Scan Profile > Create Scan Profile**.
- 3 Select your scan settings, and then click **Next**.
- 4 Select a location on your computer where you want to save the scan image.

- 5 Type a scan name, and then a user name.

Note: The scan name is the name that appears in the Scan Profile list on the display.

- 6 Click **Submit**.

Note: Clicking **Submit** automatically assigns a shortcut number. You can use this shortcut number when you are ready to scan your documents.

- 7 Review the instructions on the Scan Profile screen.

- a Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF tray or facedown on the scanner glass.

Notes:

- Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF tray. Place these items on the scanner glass.
- The ADF indicator light comes on when the paper is loaded properly.

- b If you are loading a document into the ADF tray, then adjust the paper guides.

- c Do either of the following:

- Press **#**, and then enter the shortcut number using the keypad.
- From the home screen, navigate to:
Held Jobs > Profiles > select your shortcut on the list

Note: The scanner scans and sends the document to the directory you specified.

- 8 View the file from the computer.

Note: The output file is saved in the location or launched in the program you specified.

Setting up Scan to Computer

Notes:

- This feature is supported only in Windows Vista or later.
- Make sure that your computer and printer are connected to the same network.


- 1 Open the printers folder.

In Windows 8

From the Search charm, type **run**, and then navigate to:

Apps list > **Run** > type **control printers** > **OK**

In Windows 7 or earlier

- a Click  or click **Start**, and then click **Run**.
 - b In the Start Search or Run dialog, type **control printers**.
 - c Press **Enter**, or click **OK**.

- 2 Depending on your operating system, click **Add devices and printers**, **Add a device**, or **Add a printer**.

- 3 Select your printer from the list.

Note: To identify your printer, print a network setup page, and then look for “Fully Qualified Domain Name” in the TCP/IP section.

- 4 Click **Next > Close**.
- 5 Depending on your device, do either of the following:
 - Press and hold the printer you want to configure.
 - Right-click the printer you want to configure.
- 6 From the menu that appears, select **Scan Properties** or **Properties**, and then change the settings as necessary.
- 7 From the printer control panel, touch **Scan to Computer** and then select from the following options:
 - **Scan**—Scan and save the document directly to a selected location on the computer.
 - **Scan for Print**—Scan and automatically print the document.
 - **Scan for E-mail**—Attach a scanned document to an e-mail.
 - **Scan for Fax**—Attach a scanned document to be sent through fax.
- 8 Touch **Send It**.

Remote scan in progress appears on the printer display. The scanned image opens automatically on the computer screen.

Scanning to a flash drive

- 1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF tray or facedown on the scanner glass.

Notes:

- Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF tray. Place these items on the scanner glass.
- The ADF indicator light comes on when the paper is loaded properly.

- 2 If you are loading a document into the ADF tray, then adjust the paper guides.

- 3 Insert the flash drive into the USB port on the front of the printer.

Note: The USB Drive home screen appears.

- 4 Select the destination folder, and then touch **Scan to USB drive**.

Note: The printer goes back to the home screen after 30 seconds of inactivity.

- 5 Adjust the scan settings, and then touch **Scan It**.

Understanding the scan options

FTP Address

This option lets you enter the IP address for the FTP destination.

Note: An IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.

File Name

This option lets you type a file name for the scan image.

Save As Shortcut

This option lets you save the current settings as a shortcut by assigning a shortcut name.

Note: Selecting this option automatically assigns the next available shortcut number.

Original Size

This option lets you set the paper size of the documents you are going to scan. When Original Size is set to Mixed Sizes, you can scan an original document that contains mixed paper sizes (letter- and legal-size pages).

Darkness

This option lets you adjust how light or dark the scanned documents are in relation to the original document.

Resolution

This option lets you adjust the output quality of your file. Increasing the image resolution increases the file size and the time needed to scan your original document. Decreasing the image resolution reduces the file size.

Color

This option lets you set the output to either color or monochrome for the scanned image.

Send As

This option lets you set the output type for the scan image.

Select one of the following:

- **PDF**—Use to create a single file with multiple pages.
- **Secure PDF**—Use to create an encrypted PDF file that protects the file contents from unauthorized access.
- **TIFF**—Use to create multiple files or a single file. If Multi-page TIFF is turned off in the Settings menu, then TIFF saves one page in each file. The file size is usually larger than an equivalent JPEG.
- **JPEG**—Use to create and attach a separate file for each page of the original document.
- **XPS**—Use to create a single XPS file with multiple pages.

Content

This option lets you set the original document type and source.

Select from the following content types:

- **Graphics**—The original document is mostly business-type graphics, such as pie charts, bar charts, and animations.
- **Photo**—The original document is mostly a photo or an image.
- **Text**—The content of the original document is mostly text or line art.
- **Text/Photo**—The original document is a mixture of text, graphics, and photos.

Select from the following content sources:

- **Black/White Laser**—The original document was printed using a mono laser printer.
- **Color Laser**—The original document was printed using a color laser printer.
- **Inkjet**—The original document was printed using an inkjet printer.
- **Magazine**—The original document is from a magazine.
- **Newspaper**—The original document is from a newspaper.
- **Other**—The original document was printed using an alternate or unknown printer.
- **Photo/Film**—The original document is a photo from film.
- **Press**—The original document was printed using a printing press.

Page Setup

This option lets you change the following settings:

- **Sides (Duplex)**—This specifies if the original document is printed on only one side or on both sides of the paper.
- **Orientation**—This specifies the orientation of the original document, and then changes the Sides (Duplex) and Binding settings to match the orientation.
- **Binding**—This specifies if the original document is bound on the long-edge or short-edge side.

Transmission Log

This option lets you print the transmission log or transmission error log.

Scan Preview

This option lets you view the first page of the image before it is included in the file. When the first page is scanned, the scanning is paused and a preview image appears.

Note: This option appears only when a formatted, working printer hard disk is installed.

Edge Erase

This option lets you remove smudges or any mark around the edges of a document. You can remove an equal area around all four sides of the paper, or you can pick a particular edge. Edge Erase also removes whatever is within the area selected, leaving nothing on that portion of the scan.

Advanced Imaging

This option lets you adjust the Background Removal, Color Balance, Color Dropout, Contrast, JPEG Quality, Mirror Image, Negative Image, Scan Edge to Edge, Shadow Detail, and Sharpness settings before you scan the document.

Custom Job

This option lets you combine multiple scan jobs into a single job and appears only when a working printer hard disk is installed.

Adjust ADF Skew

This option lets you straighten scanned images that are slightly skewed when received from the ADF tray.

Understanding printer menus

Menus list

Supplies Menu

Cyan Cartridge
Magenta Cartridge
Yellow Cartridge
Black Cartridge
Waste Toner Bottle
Maintenance Kit

Paper Menu

Default Source
Paper Size/Type
Substitute Size
Paper Texture
Paper Weight
Paper Loading
Custom Types
Custom Names
Custom Scan Sizes
Universal Setup

Reports

Menu Settings Page
Device Statistics
Network Setup Page
Network [x] Setup Page
Shortcut List
Fax Job Log
Fax Call Log
Copy Shortcuts
E-mail Shortcuts
Fax Shortcuts
FTP Shortcuts
Profiles List
Print Fonts
Print Directory
Print Demo
Asset Report

Network/Ports

Active NIC
Standard Network or
Network [x]
Standard USB
SMTP Setup

Security

Miscellaneous
Security Settings
Confidential Print
Erase Temporary
Data Files
Security Audit Log
Set Date and Time

Settings

General Settings
Copy Settings
Fax Settings
E-mail Settings
FTP Settings
Flash Drive Menu
Print Settings

Help

Print All Guides
Copy Guide
E-mail Guide
Fax Guide
FTP Guide
Color Quality
Print Defects Guide
Information Guide
Supplies Guide

Manage Shortcuts

Fax Shortcuts
E-mail Shortcuts
FTP Shortcuts
Copy Shortcuts
Profile Shortcuts

Option Card Menu

[index of each
installed DLE]

Supplies menu

Use	To
Cyan, Magenta, Yellow, or Black Toner Cartridge Nearly Low Low Very Low Replace Missing Defective Missing or Unresponsive Unsupported Invalid Region OK Non-genuine Lexmark Cartridge	Show the status of the cyan, magenta, yellow, or black toner cartridge.
Black or Color Imaging Kit Nearly Low Low Very Low Replace Missing Defective Missing or Unresponsive Unsupported OK Non-genuine Lexmark Imaging Kit	Show the status of the black or color imaging kit.
Waste Toner Bottle Near Full Replace Missing OK	Show the status of the waste toner bottle.
Maintenance Kit Nearly Low Low Very Low Replace OK	Show the status of the maintenance kit.

Paper menu

Default Source menu

Use	To
Default Source Tray [x] Multipurpose Feeder Manual Paper Manual Envelope	Set a default paper source for all print jobs. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The 650-sheet duo tray must be installed in order for Multipurpose Feeder to appear as a menu setting in the Paper menu. • Tray 1 (standard tray) is the factory default setting. • Only installed paper sources will appear as menu settings. • If two trays contain paper of the same size and type, and the trays have the same settings, then the trays are automatically linked. When one tray is empty, the print job continues using the linked tray.

Paper Size/Type menu

Use	To
Tray [x] Size A4 A5 JIS-B5 Letter Legal Executive Oficio (Mexico) Folio Universal	Specify the paper size loaded in each tray. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Letter is the U.S. factory default setting. A4 is the international factory default setting. • If two trays contain paper of the same size and type, and the trays have the same settings, then the trays are automatically linked. When one tray is empty, the print job continues using the linked tray.
Tray [x] Type Plain Paper Card Stock Transparency Recycled Labels Glossy Bond Letterhead Preprinted Colored Paper Light Paper Heavy Paper Rough/Cotton Custom Type [x]	Specify the type of paper loaded in each tray. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Plain Paper is the factory default setting for Tray 1. Custom Type [x] is the factory default setting for all other trays. • If available, a user-defined name appears instead of Custom Type [x]. • Use this menu to configure automatic tray linking. • Transparency is supported only in the 250-sheet tray.
Note: Only installed trays and feeders are listed in this menu.	

Use	To
MP Feeder Size A4 A5 A6 JIS B5 Letter Legal Executive Oficio (Mexico) Folio Statement Universal 7 3/4 Envelope 9 Envelope 10 Envelope DL Envelope C5 Envelope B5 Envelope Other Envelope	Specify the paper size loaded in the multipurpose feeder. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Letter is the U.S. factory default setting. A4 is the international factory default setting. • The menu item applies only when the multipurpose feeder (MP Feeder) is installed. • The multipurpose feeder does not automatically detect paper size. The paper size value must be set.
MP Feeder Type Plain Paper Card Stock Transparency Recycled Glossy Labels Bond Envelope Letterhead Preprinted Colored Paper Light Paper Heavy Paper Rough/Cotton Custom Type [x]	Specify the paper type loaded in the multipurpose feeder. Note: Custom Type [x] is the factory default setting.
Note: Only installed trays and feeders are listed in this menu.	

Use	To
Manual Paper Size A4 A5 A6 JIS B5 Letter Legal Executive Oficio (Mexico) Folio Statement Universal	Specify the size of the paper being manually loaded. Note: Letter is the U.S. factory default setting. A4 is the international factory default setting.
Manual Paper Type Plain Paper Card Stock Transparency Recycled Glossy Labels Bond Letterhead Preprinted Colored Paper Light Paper Heavy Paper Rough/Cotton Custom Type [x]	Specify the paper type being manually loaded. Note: Plain Paper is the factory default setting.
Manual Envelope Size 7 3/4 Envelope 9 Envelope 10 Envelope DL Envelope C5 Envelope B5 Envelope Other Envelope	Specify the envelope size being manually loaded. Note: 10 Envelope is the U.S. factory default setting. DL Envelope is the international factory default setting.
Manual Envelope Type Envelope Custom Type [x]	Specify the envelope type being manually loaded. Note: Envelope is the factory default setting.
Note: Only installed trays and feeders are listed in this menu.	

Substitute Size menu

Use	To
Substitute Size Off Statement/A5 Letter/A4 All Listed	Substitute a specified paper size if the requested paper size is not available. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • All Listed is the factory default setting. All available substitutions are allowed. • Off indicates that no size substitutions are allowed. • Setting a size substitution lets the print job continue without Change Paper appearing.

Paper Texture menu

Use	To
Plain Texture Smooth Normal Rough	Specify the relative texture of the plain paper loaded. Note: Normal is the factory default setting.
Card Stock Texture Smooth Normal Rough	Specify the relative texture of the card stock loaded. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Normal is the factory default setting. • The options appear only if card stock is supported.
Transparency Texture Smooth Normal Rough	Specify the relative texture of the transparencies loaded. Note: Normal is the factory default setting.
Recycled Texture Smooth Normal Rough	Specify the relative texture of the recycled paper loaded. Note: Normal is the factory default setting.
Glossy Texture Smooth Normal Rough	Specify the relative texture of the glossy paper loaded. Note: Normal is the factory default setting.
Heavy Glossy Texture Smooth Normal Rough	Specify the relative texture of the heavy glossy paper loaded. Note: Normal is the factory default setting.
Labels Texture Smooth Normal Rough	Specify the relative texture of the labels loaded. Note: Normal is the factory default setting.

Use	To
Bond Texture Smooth Normal Rough	Specify the relative texture of the bond paper loaded. Note: Rough is the factory default setting.
Envelope Texture Smooth Normal Rough	Specify the relative texture of the envelopes loaded. Note: Normal is the factory default setting.
Letterhead Texture Smooth Normal Rough	Specify the relative texture of the letterhead loaded. Note: Normal is the factory default setting.
Preprinted Texture Smooth Normal Rough	Specify the relative texture of the preprinted paper loaded. Note: Normal is the factory default setting.
Colored Texture Smooth Normal Rough	Specify the relative texture of the colored paper loaded. Note: Normal is the factory default setting.
Light Texture Smooth Normal Rough	Specify the relative texture of the light paper loaded. Note: Normal is the factory default setting.
Heavy Texture Smooth Normal Rough	Specify the relative texture of the heavy paper loaded. Note: Normal is the factory default setting.
Rough/Cotton Texture Rough	Specify the relative texture of the cotton paper loaded.
Custom [x] Texture Smooth Normal Rough	Specify the relative texture of the custom paper loaded. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Normal is the factory default setting. • The options appear only if custom type is supported.

Paper Weight menu

Use	To
Plain Weight Light Normal Heavy	Specify the relative weight of the plain paper loaded. Note: Normal is the factory default setting.
Card Stock Weight Light Normal Heavy	Specify the relative weight of the card stock loaded. Note: Normal is the factory default setting.
Transparency Weight Light Normal Heavy	Specify the relative weight of the transparencies loaded. Note: Normal is the factory default setting.
Recycled Weight Light Normal Heavy	Specify the relative weight of the recycled paper loaded. Note: Normal is the factory default setting.
Glossy Weight Light Normal Heavy	Specify the relative weight of the glossy paper loaded. Note: Normal is the factory default setting.
Heavy Glossy Weight Light Normal Heavy	Specify the relative weight of the heavy glossy paper loaded. Note: Normal is the factory default setting.
Labels Weight Light Normal Heavy	Specify the relative weight of the labels loaded. Note: Normal is the factory default setting.
Bond Weight Light Normal Heavy	Specify the relative weight of the bond paper loaded. Note: Normal is the factory default setting.
Envelope Weight Light Normal Heavy	Specify the relative weight of the envelope loaded. Note: Normal is the factory default setting.
Rough Envelope Weight Light Normal Heavy	Specify the relative weight of the rough envelope loaded. Note: Heavy is the factory default setting.

Use	To
Letterhead Weight Light Normal Heavy	Specify the relative weight of the letterhead loaded. Note: Normal is the factory default setting.
Preprinted Weight Light Normal Heavy	Specify the relative weight of the preprinted paper loaded. Note: Normal is the factory default setting.
Colored Weight Light Normal Heavy	Specify the relative weight of the colored paper loaded. Note: Normal is the factory default setting.
Light Weight Light	Specify that the relative weight of the paper loaded is light.
Heavy Weight Heavy	Specify that the relative weight of the paper loaded is heavy.
Rough/Cotton Weight Light Normal Heavy	Specify the relative weight of the rough or cotton paper loaded. Note: Normal is the factory default setting.
Custom [x] Weight Light Normal Heavy	Specify the relative weight of the custom paper loaded. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Normal is the factory default setting. • The options appear only when the custom type is supported.

Paper Loading menu

Use	To
Cardstock Loading Off	Determine and set two-sided printing for all print jobs that specify Cardstock as the paper type.
Recycled Loading Duplex Off	Determine and set two-sided printing for all print jobs that specify Recycled as the paper type.
Glossy Loading Duplex Off	Determine and set two-sided printing for all print jobs that specify Glossy as the paper type.
Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Duplex sets the printer default to two-sided printing for every print job unless one-sided printing is selected from Printing Preferences or the Print dialog. • Off is the factory default setting for all the menus. 	

Use	To
Heavy Glossy Loading Off	Determine and set two-sided printing for all print jobs that specify Heavy Glossy as the paper type.
Labels Loading Off	Determine and set two-sided printing for all print jobs that specify Labels as the paper type.
Bond Loading Duplex Off	Determine and set two-sided printing for all print jobs that specify Bond as the paper type.
Letterhead Loading Duplex Off	Determine and set two-sided printing for all print jobs that specify Letterhead as the paper type.
Preprinted Loading Duplex Off	Determine and set two-sided printing for all print jobs that specify Preprinted as the paper type.
Colored Loading Duplex Off	Determine and set two-sided printing for all print jobs that specify Colored as the paper type.
Light Loading Duplex Off	Determine and set two-sided printing for all print jobs that specify Light as the paper type.
Heavy Loading Duplex Off	Determine and set two-sided printing for all print jobs that specify Heavy as the paper type.
Rough/Cotton Loading Off	Determine and set two-sided printing for all print jobs that specify Rough/Cotton as the paper type.
Custom [x] Loading Duplex Off	Determine and set two-sided printing for all print jobs that specify Custom [x] as the paper type. Note: Custom [x] Loading is available only when the custom type is supported.
Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Duplex sets the printer default to two-sided printing for every print job unless one-sided printing is selected from Printing Preferences or the Print dialog. Off is the factory default setting for all the menus. 	

Custom Types menu

Use	To
Custom Type [x] Paper Card Stock Transparency Glossy Rough/Cotton Labels Envelope	Associate a paper or specialty media type with a factory default Custom Type [x] name or a user-defined custom name created in the Embedded Web Server or MarkVision™ Professional. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Paper is the factory default setting for Custom Type [x]. • The custom media type must be supported in the selected tray or feeder in order to print from that source.
Recycled Paper Card Stock Transparency Glossy Rough/Cotton Labels Envelope	Specify a paper type when Recycled is selected. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Paper is the factory default setting. • The Recycled paper type must be supported in the selected tray or feeder in order to print from that source.

Custom Names menu

Use	To
Custom Name [x]	Specify a custom name for a paper type. This name replaces Custom Type [x] in the printer menus.

Custom Scan Sizes menu

Use	To
Custom Scan Size [x] Scan Size Name Width 1–8.5 inches (25–215.9 mm) Height 1–14 inches (25–355.6 mm) Orientation Portrait Landscape 2 scans per side Off On	Specify a custom scan size name, scan sizes, and options. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The custom scan size name replaces Custom Scan Size [x] in the printer menus. • 8.5 inches is the U.S. factory default setting for Width. 210 millimeters is the international factory default setting. • 14 inches is the U.S. factory default setting for Height. 297 millimeters is the international factory default setting. • Portrait is the factory default setting for Orientation. • Off is the factory default setting for “2 scans per side.”

Universal Setup menu

Use	To
Units of Measure Inches Millimeters	Specify the unit of measure. Note: Inches is the U.S. factory default setting. Millimeters is the international factory default setting.
Portrait Width 3–8.5 inches 76–215.9 mm	Set the width for portrait orientation. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If the width exceeds the maximum, then the printer uses the maximum width allowed. • 8.5 inches is the U.S. factory default setting. You can increase the width in 0.01-inch increments. • 215.9 mm is the international factory default setting. You can increase the width in 1-mm increments.
Portrait Height 3–14.17 inches 76–360 mm	Set the height for portrait orientation. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If the height exceeds the maximum, then the printer uses the maximum height allowed. • 14 inches is the U.S. factory default setting. You can increase the height in 0.01-inch increments. • 356 mm is the international factory default setting. You can increase the height in 1-mm increments.

Reports menu

Reports menu

Use	To
Menu Settings Page	Print a report containing information about the paper loaded in trays, installed memory, total page count, alarms, timeouts, printer control panel language, TCP/IP address, status of supplies, status of the network connection, and other information.
Device Statistics	Print a report containing printer statistics such as supply information and details about printed pages.
Network Setup Page	Print a report containing information about the network printer settings, such as the TCP/IP address. Note: This menu item appears only in network printers or printers connected to print servers.
Network [x] Setup Page	Print a report containing information about the network printer settings, such as the TCP/IP address. Note: This menu item appears only when there is more than one network option installed and only in network printers or printers connected to print servers.

Use	To
Shortcut List	Print a report containing information about configured shortcuts.
Fax Job Log	Print a report containing information about the last 200 completed faxes. Note: This menu item is available only when Enable Job Log is set to On in the Fax Settings menu.
Fax Call Log	Print a report containing information about the last 100 attempted, received, and blocked calls. Note: This menu item is available only when Enable Job Log is set to On in the Fax Settings menu.
Copy Shortcuts	Print a report containing information about copy shortcuts.
E-mail Shortcuts	Print a report containing information about e-mail shortcuts.
Fax Shortcuts	Print a report containing information about fax shortcuts.
FTP Shortcuts	Print a report containing information about FTP shortcuts.
Profiles List	Print a list of profiles stored in the printer.
Print Fonts	Print a report of all the fonts available for the printer language currently set in the printer.
Print Directory	Print a list of all the resources stored on an optional flash memory card or in printer hard disk. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Job Buffer Size must be set to 100%. • Make sure the optional flash memory or printer hard disk is installed correctly and working.
Asset Report	Print a report containing asset information including the printer serial number and model name. The report contains text and UPC barcodes that can be scanned into an asset database.

Network/Ports

Active NIC menu

Use	To
Active NIC Auto [list of available network cards]	Allow the printer to connect to a network. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Auto is the factory default setting. • This menu item appears only if an optional network adapter is installed.

Standard Network or Network [x] menus

Note: Only active ports appear in this menu. All inactive ports are omitted.

Use	To
PCL SmartSwitch On Off	Set the printer to automatically switch to PCL emulation when a print job requires it, regardless of the default printer language. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> On is the factory default setting. When Off is used, the printer does not examine incoming data. The printer uses PostScript emulation if PS SmartSwitch is set to On. It uses the default printer language specified in the Setup menu if PS SmartSwitch is set to Off.
PS SmartSwitch On Off	Set the printer to automatically switch to PS emulation when a print job requires it, regardless of the default printer language. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> On is the factory default setting. When Off is used, the printer does not examine incoming data. The printer uses PCL emulation if PCL SmartSwitch is set to On. It uses the default printer language specified in the Setup menu if PCL SmartSwitch is set to Off.
NPA Mode Off Auto	Set the printer to perform the special processing required for bidirectional communication following the conventions defined by the NPA protocol. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Auto is the factory default setting. Changing this setting from the printer control panel and then exiting the menus causes the printer to restart. The menu selection is then updated.
Network Buffer Auto 3KB to [maximum size allowed]	Set the size of the network input buffer. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Auto is the factory default setting. The value can be changed in 1-KB increments. The maximum size allowed depends on the amount of memory in the printer, the size of the other link buffers, and whether Resource Save is set to On or Off. To increase the maximum size range for the Network Buffer, disable or reduce the size of the parallel, serial, and USB buffers. Changing this setting from the printer control panel and then exiting the menus causes the printer to restart. The menu selection is then updated.
Job Buffering Off On Auto	Temporarily store print jobs in the printer hard disk before printing. This menu only appears when a formatted disk is installed. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Off is the factory default setting. On buffers print jobs on the printer hard disk. Auto buffers print jobs only when the printer is busy processing data from another input port. Changing this setting from the printer control panel and then exiting the menus causes the printer to restart. The menu selection is then updated.

Use	To
Mac Binary PS On Off Auto	Set the printer to process Macintosh binary PostScript print jobs. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Auto is the factory default setting. • Off filters print jobs using the standard protocol. • On processes raw binary PostScript print jobs.
Standard Network Setup OR Network [x] Setup Reports Network Card TCP/IP IPv6 Wireless AppleTalk	Display and set the printer network settings. Note: The Wireless menu appears only when the printer is connected to a wireless network.

Reports menu

To access the menu, navigate to either of the following:

- **Network/Ports > Standard Network > Standard Network Setup > Reports**
- **Network/Ports > Network [x] > Network [x] Setup > Reports**

Use	To
Print Setup Page	Print a report containing information about the network printer settings, such as the TCP/IP address.

Network Card menu

To access the menu, navigate to either of the following:

- **Network/Ports > Standard Network > Standard Network Setup > Network Card**
- **Network/Ports > Network [x] > Network [x] Setup > Network Card**

Use	To
View Card Status Connected Disconnected	View the connection status of the network card.
View Card Speed	View the speed of an active network card.
Network Address UAA LAA	View the network addresses.

Use	To
Job Timeout 0, 10–225 seconds	Set the amount of time it takes for a network print job to be canceled. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 90 seconds is the factory default setting. A setting value of 0 disables the timeout. If a value between 1 and 9 is selected, then Invalid appears on the display, and the value is not saved.

TCP/IP menu

To access the menu, navigate to either of the following:

- **Network/Ports > Standard Network > Standard Network Setup > TCP/IP**
- **Network/Ports > Network [x] > Network [x] Setup > TCP/IP**

Note: This menu is available only in network printers or printers attached to print servers.

Use	To
Set Hostname	Set the current TCP/IP host name. Note: This can be changed only from the Embedded Web Server.
IP Address	View or change the current TCP/IP address. Note: Manually setting the IP address sets the Enable DHCP and Enable Auto IP settings to Off. It also sets Enable BOOTP and Enable RARP to Off on systems that support BOOTP and RARP.
Netmask	View or change the current TCP/IP netmask.
Gateway	View or change the current TCP/IP gateway.
Enable DHCP On Off	Specify the DHCP address and parameter assignment. Note: On is the factory default setting.
Enable RARP On Off	Specify the RARP address assignment setting. Note: Off is the factory default setting.
Enable BOOTP On Off	Specify the BOOTP address assignment setting. Note: On is the factory default setting.
Enable AutoIP Yes No	Specify the Zero Configuration Networking setting. Note: Yes is the factory default setting.
Enable FTP/TFTP Yes No	Enable the built-in FTP server, which lets you send files to the printer using File Transfer Protocol. Note: Yes is the factory default setting.
Enable HTTP Server Yes No	Enable the built-in Web server (Embedded Web Server). When enabled, the printer can be monitored and managed remotely using a Web browser. Note: Yes is the factory default setting.

Use	To
WINS Server Address	View or change the current WINS server address.
Enable DDNS Yes No	View or change the current DDNS setting. Note: Yes is the factory default setting.
Enable mDNS Yes No	View or change the current mDNS setting. Note: Yes is the factory default setting.
DNS Server Address	View or change the current DNS server address.
Backup DNS Server Address	View or change the backup DNS server addresses.
Backup DNS Server Address 2	
Backup DNS Server Address 3	
Enable HTTPS Yes No	View or change the current HTTPS setting. Note: Yes is the factory default setting.

IPv6 menu

To access the menu, navigate to any of the following:

- **Network/Ports menu > Standard Network > Standard Network Setup > IPv6**
- **Network/Ports menu > Network [x] > Network [x] Setup > IPv6**

Note: This menu is available only in network printers or printers that are attached to print servers.

Use	To
Enable IPv6 On Off	Enable IPv6 in the printer. Note: On is the factory default setting.
Auto Configuration On Off	Specify whether or not the network adapter accepts the automatic IPv6 address configuration entries provided by a router. Note: On is the factory default setting.
Set Hostname	Set the host name.
View Address	Note: These settings can be changed only from the Embedded Web Server.
View Router Address	
Enable DHCPv6 On Off	Enable DHCPv6 in the printer. Note: On is the factory default setting.

Wireless menu

Note: This menu is available only in printers connected to a wireless network or printer models that have a wireless network adapter.

To access the menu, navigate to:

Network/Ports > Network [x] > Network [x] Setup > Wireless

Use	To
Wi-Fi Protected Setup Start Push Button Method Start PIN Method	Establish a wireless network and enable network security. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Start Push Button Method connects the printer to a wireless network when buttons on both the printer and the access point (wireless router) are pressed within a given period of time. Start PIN Method connects the printer to a wireless network when a PIN on the printer is entered into the wireless settings of the access point.
Enable/Disable WPS Auto-detection Enable Disable	Automatically detect the connection method that an access point with WPS uses—Start Push Button Method or Start PIN Method. Note: Disable is the factory default setting.
Network Mode BSS Type Infrastructure Ad hoc	Specify the network mode. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Infrastructure is the factory default setting. This lets the printer access a network using an access point. Ad hoc configures wireless connection directly between the printer and a computer.
Compatibility 802.11b/g 802.11b/g/n	Specify the wireless standard for the wireless network. Note: 802.11b/g/n is the factory default setting.
Choose Network	Select an available network for the printer to use.
View Signal Quality	View the quality of the wireless connection.
View Security Mode	View the encryption method for the wireless network.

AppleTalk menu

Note: This menu appears only in printer models that are connected to an Ethernet network or when an optional wireless network adapter is installed.

To access the menu, navigate to either of the following:

- Network/Ports > Standard Network > Standard Network Setup > AppleTalk**
- Network/Ports > Network [x] > Network [x] Setup > AppleTalk**

Use	To
Activate Yes No	Enable or disable AppleTalk support. Note: Yes is the factory default setting.
View Name	Show the assigned AppleTalk name. Note: The AppleTalk name can be changed only from the Embedded Web Server.

Use	To
View Address	Show the assigned AppleTalk address. Note: The AppleTalk address can be changed only from the Embedded Web Server.
Set Zone [list of zones available on the network]	Provide a list of AppleTalk zones available on the network. Note: The default zone for the network is the factory default setting.

Standard USB menu

Use	To
PCL SmartSwitch On Off	Set the printer to automatically switch to PCL emulation when a print job received through a USB port requires it, regardless of the default printer language. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> On is the factory default setting. When set to Off, the printer does not examine incoming data. The printer uses PostScript emulation if the PS SmartSwitch is set to On. It uses the default printer language specified in the Setup menu if the PS SmartSwitch is set to Off.
PS SmartSwitch On Off	Set the printer to automatically switch to PS emulation when a print job received through a USB port requires it, regardless of the default printer language. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> On is the factory default setting. When set to Off, the printer does not examine incoming data. The printer uses PCL emulation if the PCL SmartSwitch is set to On. It uses the default printer language specified in the Setup menu if the PCL SmartSwitch is set to Off.
NPA Mode On Off Auto	Set the printer to perform the special processing required for bidirectional communication following the conventions defined by the NPA protocol. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Auto is the factory default setting. Auto sets the printer to examine data, determine the format, and then process it appropriately. The printer automatically restarts when changing the setting from the printer control panel. The menu selection is then updated.

Use	To
USB Buffer Disabled Auto 3K to [maximum size allowed]	Set the size of the USB input buffer. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Auto is the factory default setting. • Disabled turns off job buffering. • The USB buffer size value can be changed in 1-KB increments. • The maximum size allowed depends on the amount of memory in the printer, the size of the other link buffers, and whether Resource Save is set to On or Off. • To increase the maximum size range for USB Buffer, disable or reduce the size of the parallel, serial, and network buffers. • The printer automatically restarts when the setting is changed from the printer control panel. The menu selection is then updated.
Mac Binary PS On Off Auto	Set the printer to process Macintosh binary PostScript print jobs. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Auto is the factory default setting. • On processes raw binary PostScript print jobs. • Off filters print jobs using the standard protocol.
ENA Address YYY.YYY.YYY.YYY	Set the network address information for an external print server. Note: This menu is available only when the printer is attached to an external print server through the USB port.
ENA Netmask YYY.YYY.YYY.YYY	Set the netmask information for an external print server. Note: This menu is available only when the printer is attached to an external print server through the USB port.
ENA Gateway YYY.YYY.YYY.YYY	Set the gateway information for an external print server. Note: This menu is available only when the printer is attached to an external print server through the USB port.

SMTP Setup menu

Use	To
Primary SMTP Gateway	Specify SMTP server gateway and port information. Note: 25 is the default SMTP gateway port.
Primary SMTP Gateway Port	
Secondary SMTP Gateway	
Secondary SMTP Gateway Port	
SMTP Timeout 5–30	Specify the amount of time in seconds before the server stops trying to send an e-mail. Note: 30 is the factory default setting.
Reply Address	Specify a reply address of up to 128 characters in the e-mail sent by the printer.

Use	To
Use SSL Disabled Negotiate Required	Set the printer to use SSL for increased security when connecting to the SMTP server. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Disabled is the factory default setting. • When the Negotiate setting is used, the SMTP server determines if SSL will be used.
SMTP Server Authentication No authentication required Login/Plain CRAM-MD5 Digest-MD5 NTLM Kerberos 5	Specify the type of user authentication required for scan to e-mail privileges. Note: “No authentication required” is the factory default setting.
Device-Initiated E-mail None Use Device SMTP Credentials	Specify what credentials will be used when communicating to the SMTP server. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • None is the factory default setting for Device-Initiated E-mail and User-Initiated E-mail. • “Device Userid” and “Device password” are used to log in to the SMTP server when Use Device SMTP Credentials is selected.
User-Initiated E-mail None Use Device SMTP Credentials Use Session User ID and Password Use Session E-mail address and Password Prompt user	
Device Userid	
Device password	
Kerberos 5 Realm	
NTLM Domain	

Security menu

Miscellaneous Security Settings menu

Use	To
Login Restrictions Login failures Failure time frame Lockout time Panel Login Timeout Remote Login Timeout	Limit the number and time frames of failed login attempts from the printer control panel before <i>all</i> users are locked out. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “Login failures” specifies the number of failed login attempts before users are locked out. You can choose from 1 to 10 attempts. The factory default setting is 3. • “Failure time frame” specifies the time frame during which failed login attempts can be made before users are locked out. You can choose from 1 to 60 minutes. The factory default setting is 5 minutes. • “Lockout time” specifies how long users are locked out after exceeding the login failures limit. You can choose from 1 to 60 minutes. The factory default setting is 5 minutes. The printer does not impose a lockout time if you set to 1 minute. • Panel Login Timeout specifies how long the printer remains idle on the home screen before automatically logging the user off. You can choose from 1 to 900 seconds. The factory default setting is 30 seconds. • Remote Login Timeout specifies how long a remote interface remains idle before automatically logging the user off. You can choose from 1 to 120 minutes. The factory default setting is 10 minutes.
Minimum PIN Length 1–16	Limit the digit length of the PIN. Note: 4 is the factory default setting.

Confidential Print menu

Use	To
Max Invalid PIN Off 2–10	Limit the number of times an invalid PIN can be entered. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • This menu appears only when a formatted, non-defective printer hard disk is installed. • Once the limit is reached, the print jobs for that user name and PIN are deleted.
Confidential Job Expiration Off 1 hour 4 hours 24 hours 1 week	Limit the amount of time a confidential print job stays in the printer before it is deleted. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If the “Confidential Job Expiration” setting is changed while confidential print jobs reside in the printer RAM or printer hard disk, then the expiration time for those print jobs does not change to the new default value. • If the printer is turned off, then all confidential jobs held in the printer RAM are deleted.
Note: Off is the factory default setting.	

Use	To
Repeat Job Expiration Off 1 hour 4 hours 24 hours 1 week	Set a time limit on how long the printer stores print jobs.
Verify Job Expiration Off 1 hour 4 hours 24 hours 1 week	Set a time limit on how long the printer stores print jobs needing verification.
Reserve Job Expiration Off 1 hour 4 hours 24 hours 1 week	Set a time limit on how long the printer stores print jobs for printing at a later time.
Note: Off is the factory default setting.	

Erase Temporary Data Files menu

Erase Temporary Data Files deletes *only* print job data on the printer hard disk that *are not* currently in use by the file system. All permanent data on the printer hard disk are preserved, such as downloaded fonts, macros, and held jobs.

Note: This menu appears only when a formatted, working printer hard disk is installed.

Use	To
Wiping Mode Auto	Specify the mode for erasing temporary data files.
Automatic Method Single pass Multiple pass	Mark all disk space used by a previous print job. This method does not permit the file system to reuse this space until it has been cleared. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “Single pass” is the factory default setting. • Only automatic wiping enables users to erase temporary data files without having to turn off the printer for an extended amount of time. • Highly confidential information should be erased using <i>only</i> the Multiple pass method.

Security Audit Log menu

Use	To
Export Log	Let an authorized user export the security audit log. Note: The log can be downloaded from the Embedded Web Server and saved on a computer.
Delete Log Yes No	Specify whether audit logs are deleted. Note: Yes is the factory default setting.
Configure Log Enable Audit Yes No Enable Remote Syslog No Yes Remote Syslog Facility 0–23 Severity of events to log 0–7	Specify how audit logs are configured. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Enable Audit determines if events are recorded in the secure audit log and remote syslog. No is the factory default setting. • Enable Remote Syslog determines if logs are sent to a remote server. No is the factory default setting. • Remote Syslog Facility determines the value used to send logs to the remote syslog server. 4 is the factory default setting. • If the security audit log is activated, then the severity value of each event is recorded. 4 is the factory default setting.

Set Date and Time menu

Use	To
Current Date and Time	View the current date and time settings for the printer.
Manually Set Date and Time [input date/time]	Enter the date and time. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Manually setting the date and time sets Enable NTP to No. • The wizard lets you set the date and time in YYYY-MM-DD-HH:MM format.
Time Zone [list of time zones]	Select the time zone. Note: GMT is the factory default settings.
Automatically observe DST On Off	Set the printer to use the applicable daylight saving time (DST) start and end times associated with the printer Time Zone setting. Note: On is the factory default setting.
Enable NTP On Off	Enable Network Time Protocol, which synchronizes the clocks of devices on a network. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • On is the factory default setting. • This setting is turned off if you manually set the date and time.

Settings menu

General Settings menu

Use	To
Display Language English Francais Deutsch Italiano Espanol Dansk Norsk Nederlands Svenska Portuguese Suomi Russian Polski Greek Magyar Turkce Cesky Simplified Chinese Traditional Chinese Korean Japanese	Set the language of the text appearing on the printer display. Note: Not all languages are available for all printers, and you may need to install special hardware for those languages to appear.
Show supply estimates Show estimates Do not show estimates	Display the estimates of the supplies on the printer control panel, Embedded Web Server, menu settings, and device statistics reports. Note: "Show estimates" is the factory default setting.
Eco-Mode Off Energy Energy/Paper Paper	Minimize the use of energy, paper, or specialty media. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Off is the factory default setting. This resets the printer to its factory default settings. • Energy minimizes the power used by the printer. Performance may be affected, but print quality is not. • Energy/Paper minimizes the use of power and of paper and specialty media. • Paper minimizes the amount of paper and specialty media needed for a print job. Performance may be affected, but print quality is not.

Use	To
ADF Loaded Beep Enabled Disabled	Specify a custom beep when paper is loaded in the ADF. Note: Enabled is the factory default setting.
Quiet Mode Off On	Reduce the amount of noise produced by the printer. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Off is the factory default setting. This supports the performance specifications for your printer.• On configures the printer to produce as little noise as possible. This is best suited for printing text and line art.• For optimal printing of color-rich documents, set Quiet Mode to Off.• Selecting Photo from the printer driver may disable Quiet Mode and provide better print quality and full speed printing.
Run Initial setup Yes No	Run the setup wizard. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Yes is the factory default setting.• After completing the setup wizard by selecting Done at the “Country select” screen, the default becomes No.

Use	To
Keyboard Keyboard Type English Francais Francais Canadien Deutsch Italiano Espanol Greek Dansk Norsk Nederlands Svenska Suomi Portuguese Russian Polski Swiss German Swiss French Korean Magyar Turkce Cesky Simplified Chinese Traditional Chinese Japanese Custom Key [x]	Specify a language and custom key information for the printer keyboard.
Paper Sizes U.S. Metric	Specify the default system of measurement for paper sizes. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • U.S. is the factory default setting. • Initial setting is determined by your country or region selection in the initial setup wizard. • Changing this setting also changes the default for each input source in the Paper Size/Paper Type menu. • Changing this setting also changes the default for the Original Size setting in the following menus: Copy Settings, Fax Settings, E-mail Settings, FTP Settings, and the Scan Settings section of Flash Drive Menu Settings.
Scan to PC Port Range [port range]	Specify a valid port range for printers behind a port blocking firewall. The valid ports are specified by two sets of numbers separated by a semicolon. Note: 9751:12000 is the factory default setting.

Use	To
Displayed Information Left side Right side Custom Text [x] [text entry]	<p>Specify what is displayed on the upper left and right corners of the home screen.</p> <p>For the “Left side” and “Right side” menus, select from the following options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> None IP Address Hostname Contact Name Location Date/Time mDNS/DDNS Service Name Zero Configuration Name Cartridge Level Custom Text [x] <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • IP Address is the factory default setting for “Left side.” • Date/Time is the factory default setting for “Right side.”
Displayed Information (continued) Black Toner Cyan Toner Magenta Toner Yellow Toner Fuser Transfer Module	<p>Customize the displayed information for the Black Toner, Cyan Toner, Magenta Toner, Yellow Toner, Fuser, and Transfer Module settings.</p> <p>Select from the following options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When to display <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Do not display Display Message to display <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Default Alternate Default <ul style="list-style-type: none"> [text entry] Alternate <ul style="list-style-type: none"> [text entry] <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “Do not display” is the factory default setting for “When to display.” • Default is the factory default setting for “Message to display.”

Use	To
Displayed Information (continued) Waste Toner Bottle Paper Jam Load Paper Service Errors	Specify the displayed information for Waste Toner Bottle, Paper Jam, Load Paper, and Service Errors settings. Select from the following options: Display Yes No Message to display Default Alternate Default [text entry] Alternate [text entry] Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • No is the factory default setting for Activate. • Default is the factory default setting for “Type of Message to Display”.
Home screen customization Change Language Copy Copy Shortcuts Fax Fax Shortcuts E-mail E-mail Shortcuts FTP FTP Shortcuts Search Held Jobs Held Jobs USB Drive Profiles and Solutions Bookmarks Jobs by user Forms and Favorites Basic Card Copy Scan to Network My Shortcuts Multi-Send	Add or remove icons and buttons that appear on the home screen. For each icon or button, select from the following options: Display Do Not Display
Date Format MM-DD-YYYY DD-MM-YYYY YYYY-MM-DD	Format the printer date. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • MM-DD-YYYY is the U.S. factory default setting. • DD-MM-YYYY is the international factory default setting.

Use	To
Time Format 12 hour A.M./P.M. 24 hour clock	Format the printer time. Note: “12 hour A.M./P.M.” is the factory default setting.
Screen Brightness 20–100	Specify the brightness of the printer control panel screen. Note: 100 is the factory default setting.
One Page Copy Off On	Set copies from the scanner glass to only one page at a time. Note: Off is the factory default setting.
Audio Feedback Button Feedback On Off Volume 1–10	Set the audio volume for the buttons. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> On is the factory default setting for Button Feedback. 5 is the factory default setting for Volume.
Show Bookmarks Yes No	Specify whether bookmarks are displayed from the Held Jobs area. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Yes is the factory default setting. If you select No, then the Bookmarks container is never shown in Held Jobs.
Allow Background Removal On Off	Specify whether image background removal is allowed in copy, fax, e-mail, FTP, or scan-to-USB jobs. Note: On is the factory default setting.
Allow Custom Job Scans On Off	Determine if Custom Job and Custom Job scanning settings appear for copy, scan, and fax jobs. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> On is the factory default setting. This menu item appears only when a formatted, working printer hard disk is installed.
Scanner Jam Recovery Job level Page level	Specify how a scanned job should be reloaded if a paper jam occurs in the ADF. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> “Job level” is the factory default setting. If Job level is selected, then the entire job must be rescanned if any pages jam. If Page level is selected, then rescan from the jammed page forward.
Web Page Refresh Rate 30–300	Specify the number of seconds between Embedded Web Server refreshes. Note: 120 is the factory default setting.

Use	To
Contact Name	Specify a contact name for the printer. Note: The contact name is stored on the Embedded Web Server.
Location	Specify the location of the printer. Note: The location is stored on the Embedded Web Server.
Alarms Alarm Control Cartridge Alarm	Set an alarm when the printer requires operator intervention. When activated, Alarm Control lets you set the number of times that the alarm sounds, while Cartridge Alarm lets you stop printing when a cartridge-low condition occurs. For each alarm type, select from the following options: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Off • Single • Continuous Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Single is the factory default setting for Alarm Control and Cartridge Alarm. This sounds three quick beeps. • Off means no alarm will sound. • Continuous repeats three beeps every 10 seconds.
Timeouts Standby Mode Disabled 1–240	Specify the number of minutes of inactivity before the printer enters a lower power state. Note: 15 is the factory default setting.
Timeouts Sleep Mode Disabled 1–120	Set the amount of time in seconds the printer waits after a job is printed before it goes into a reduced power state. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 30 is the factory default setting. • Disabled appears only when Energy Conserve is set to Off. • Lower settings conserve more energy, but may require longer warm-up times. • Select a high setting if the printer is in constant use. Under most circumstances, this keeps the printer ready to print with minimum warm-up time.
Timeouts Hibernate Timeout Disabled 1–3 hours 6 hours 1–3 days 1–2 weeks 1 month	Set the printer to operate at a low power state. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Disabled is the factory default setting for Class A and Class B printers in all countries except for European Union countries and Switzerland. • “3 days” is the factory default setting for Class B printers in all European Union countries and Switzerland.

Use	To
Timeouts Hibernate Timeout on Connection Hibernate Do Not Hibernate	Set the printer to follow the setting of “Hibernate Timeout” even when an active Ethernet or fax connection exists. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Do Not Hibernate is the factory default setting. • If “Hibernate Timeout on Connection” is set to Do Not Hibernate, then the device never automatically hibernates. • If “Hibernate Timeout on Connection” is set to Hibernate, then the device follows the value of the “Hibernate Timeout” setting, except when it is set to Disabled.
Timeouts Screen Timeout 15–300	Set the amount of time in seconds the printer waits before returning the printer display to Ready state. Note: 30 is the factory default setting.
Timeouts Prolong Screen Timeout On Off	Set the printer to continue the specified job without returning to the home screen when the screen timeout timer expires. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Off is the factory default setting. This follows the normal Screen Timeout expires workflow. • On continues to show the same screen and allows the user to reset the Screen Timeout timer instead of returning to the home screen.
Timeouts Print Timeout Disabled 1–255	Set the amount of time in seconds the printer waits to receive an end-of-job message before canceling the remainder of the print job. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 90 is the factory default setting. • When the timer expires, any partially printed page still in the printer is printed, and then the printer checks to see if any new print jobs are waiting. • Print Timeout is available only when using PCL emulation. This setting has no effect on PostScript emulation print jobs.
Timeouts Wait Timeout Disabled 15–65535	Set the amount of time in seconds the printer waits for additional data before canceling a print job. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 40 is the factory default setting. • Wait Timeout is available only when the printer is using PostScript emulation. This setting has no effect on PCL emulation print jobs.

Use	To
Timeouts Job Hold Timeout 5–255	Set the amount of time in seconds the printer waits for user intervention before it holds jobs that require unavailable resources and continues to print other jobs in the print queue. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 30 is the factory default setting. • This menu item appears only when a formatted, working printer hard disk is installed.
Error Recovery Auto Reboot Reboot when idle Reboot always Reboot never	Set the printer to restart when an error is encountered. Note: “Reboot always” is the factory default setting.
Error Recovery Max Auto Reboots 1–20	Determine the number of automatic reboots the printer can perform. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 5 is the factory default setting. • If the printer performs a number of automatic reboots that is the same as the menu setting within a certain amount of time, then the printer shows the applicable error instead of restarting.
Print Recovery Auto Continue Disabled 5–255	Let the printer automatically continue printing from certain offline situations when not resolved within the specified time period. Note: Disabled is the factory default setting.
Print Recovery Jam Recovery On Off Auto	Specify whether the printer reprints jammed pages. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Auto is the factory default setting. The printer reprints jammed pages unless the memory required to hold the pages is needed for other printer tasks. • On sets the printer to always reprint jammed pages. • Off sets the printer to never reprint jammed pages.
Print Recovery Page Protect Off On	Print a page that may not have printed otherwise. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Off is the factory default setting. This prints a partial page when there is not enough memory to print the whole page. • On sets the printer to process the whole page so that the entire page prints.

Use	To
Press Sleep Button Do Nothing Sleep Hibernate	Determine how the printer, while in idle state, reacts to a short press of the Sleep button. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sleep is the factory default setting. • Do Nothing ignores any Sleep button presses regardless of duration.
Press and Hold Sleep Button Do Nothing Sleep Hibernate	Determine how the printer, while in idle state, reacts to a long press of the Sleep button. Note: Do Nothing is the factory default setting. This ignores any Sleep button presses regardless of duration.
Factory Defaults Do Not Restore Restore Now	Restore printer settings to its factory defaults. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Do Not Restore is the factory default setting. This keeps the user-defined settings. • Restore Now restores all printer settings to the factory default settings except those in Network/Ports menu. All downloads stored in the RAM are deleted. Downloads stored in the flash memory or in a printer hard disk are not affected.
Export Configuration Package Export	Export the printer configuration package to a flash drive. Note: The configuration package cannot be exported unless a flash drive is attached to the printer.

Copy Settings menu

Use	To
Content Type Text Graphics Text/Photo Photo	Specify the content of the original document. Note: Text/Photo is the factory default setting.
Content Source Black/White Laser Color Laser Inkjet Photo/Film Magazine Newspaper Press Other	Specify how the original document was produced. Note: Color Laser is the factory default setting.
Color On Off	Specify whether copies are printed in color. Note: On is the factory default setting.

Use	To
Allow color copies On Off	Enable color in copies. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> On is the factory default setting. Setting this to Off hides all color-specific menus. This setting overrides the Color setting.
Sides (Duplex) 1 sided to 1 sided 1 sided to 2 sided 2 sided to 1 sided 2 sided to 2 sided	Specify whether an original document is two-sided (duplex) or one-sided, and then specify whether the copy should be two-sided or one-sided. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1 sided to 1 sided—The original document has print on one side, and the copy will also have print on one side. 1 sided to 2 sided—The original document has print on one side, while the copy will have print on both sides. 2 sided to 1 sided—The original document has print on both sides, while the copy will have print on just one side. 2 sided to 2 sided—The original document has print on both sides, and the copy will also have print on both sides.
Paper Saver Off 2-up Portrait 2-up Landscape 4-up Portrait 4-up Landscape	Allow copying of two or four sheets of a document on one page. Note: Off is the factory default setting.
Print Page Borders On Off	Allow page borders in printed copies. Note: Off is the factory default setting.
Collate (1,1,1) (2,2,2) (1,2,3) (1,2,3)	Keep the pages of a print job stacked in sequence when printing multiple copies. Note: "(1,2,3) (1,2,3)" is the factory default setting.

Use	To
Original Size Letter Legal Executive Folio Statement Oficio (Mexico) Universal Auto Size Sense Mixed Sizes A4 A5 A6 JIS B5 Custom Scan Size [x] Book Original Business Card 3 x 5 in. 4 x 6 in. ID Card	Specify the paper size of the original document. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Letter is the U.S. factory default setting. A4 is the international factory default setting. Legal, Folio, and Oficio (Mexico) paper sizes are supported only in the ADF.
Copy To Source Tray [x] Manual Feeder Multipurpose Feeder	Specify the paper source for copy jobs. Note: Tray 1 is the factory default setting.
Transparency Separators On Off	Place a sheet of paper between transparencies. Note: On is the factory default setting.
Separator Sheets Off Between Copies Between Jobs Between Pages	Place a sheet of paper between pages, copies, or jobs. Note: Off is the factory default setting.
Separator Sheet Source Tray [x] Multipurpose Feeder	Specify the source for the separator sheet. Note: Tray 1 is the factory default setting.
Darkness 1–9	Specify the level of darkness for the copy job. Note: 5 is the factory default setting.
Number of Copies 1–999	Specify the number of copies for the copy job. Note: 1 is the factory default setting.

Use	To
Header/Footer [Location] Off Date/Time Page number Custom text Print on All pages First page only All but first page Custom text	Specify header and footer information and its location on the page. Select from the following location options: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Top left • Top middle • Top right • Bottom left • Bottom middle • Bottom right Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Off is the factory default setting for the location. • “All pages” is the factory default setting for “Print on.”
Overlay Confidential Copy Draft Urgent Custom Off	Specify the overlay text printed on each page of the copy job. Note: Off is the factory default setting.
Custom Overlay	Specify the custom overlay text. Note: A maximum of 64 characters is allowed.
Allow priority copies On Off	Allow interruption of a print job to copy a page or document. Note: On is the factory default setting.
Custom Job scanning On Off	Copy in a single copy job, a document that contains mixed paper sizes. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Off is the factory default setting. • This menu item appears only when a formatted, working printer hard disk is installed.
Allow Save as Shortcut On Off	Save custom copy settings as shortcuts. Note: On is the factory default setting.
Background Removal -4 to 4	Adjust the amount of background visible on a copy. Note: 0 is the factory default setting.
Auto Center Off On	Automatically center the content on the page. Note: Off is the factory default setting.
Color Balance Cyan - Red Magenta - Green Yellow - Blue	Enable an equal balance of colors in the output.

Use	To
Color Dropout Color Dropout None Red Green Blue Default Red Threshold 0–255 Default Green Threshold 0–255 Default Blue Threshold 0–255	Specify which color to drop during scanning and to adjust the dropout setting for each color threshold. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • None is the factory default setting for Color Dropout. • 128 is the factory default setting for each color threshold.
Contrast 0–5 Best for content	Specify the contrast used for the copy job. Note: “Best for content” is the factory default setting.
Mirror Image Off On	Create a mirror image of the original document. Note: Off is the factory default setting.
Negative Image Off On	Create a negative image of the original document. Note: Off is the factory default setting.
Shadow Detail -4 to 4	Adjust the amount of shadow detail visible on a copy. Note: 0 is the factory default setting.
Adjust ADF Skew Auto Off On	Correct the slight skew in the scanned image. Note: Auto is the factory default setting.
Scan edge to edge Off On	Allow edge-to-edge scanning of the original document. Note: Off is the factory default setting.
Sharpness 1–5	Adjust the amount of sharpness of a copy. Note: 3 is the factory default setting.
Temperature -4 to 4	Specify “warm” or “cool” outputs. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0 is the factory default setting. • “Cool” values generate a bluer output than the default while “warm” values generate a redder output than the default.
Sample Copy Off On	Create a sample copy of the original document. Note: Off is the factory default setting.

Fax Settings menu

Fax Mode (Analog Fax Setup) menu

Analog Fax Setup mode sends the fax job through a telephone line.

Use	To
Fax Name	Specify the name of the fax in the printer.
Fax Number	Specify the telephone number assigned to the fax.
Fax ID Fax Name Fax Number	Specify how the fax is identified.
Enable Manual Fax On Off	Set the printer to fax manually, which requires a line splitter and a telephone handset. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Off is the factory default setting. Use a regular telephone to answer an incoming fax job and to dial a fax number. Press # 0 on the numeric keypad to go directly to the Manual Fax function.
Memory Use All receive Mostly receive Equal Mostly send All send	Define the allocation of non-volatile memory between sending and receiving fax jobs. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> “Equal” is the factory default setting. This splits the memory for sending and receiving fax jobs into equal amounts. “Mostly send” specifies that most of the memory is set to send fax jobs. “All send” specifies that all the memory is set to send fax jobs. “All receive” specifies that all the memory is set to receive fax jobs. “Mostly receive” specifies that most of the memory is set to receive fax jobs.
Cancel Faxes Allow Don't Allow	Specify whether the printer cancels fax jobs. Note: Allow is the factory default setting.
Caller ID Off Primary Alternate	Specify the type of caller ID being used.
Fax number masking Off From left From right	Specify the direction from where digits are masked in an outgoing fax number. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Off is the factory default setting. The number of characters masked is determined by the “Digits to Mask” setting.
Digits to Mask 0–58	Specify the number of digits to mask in an outgoing fax number. Note: 0 is the factory default setting.

Use	To
Fax Cover Page Fax Cover Page Off by default On by default Never use Always use Include to Field On Off Include from Field On Off From Include Message Field On Off Message Include Logo On Off Include Footer [x] On Off Footer [x]	Configure the fax cover page. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “Off by default” is the factory default setting for Fax Cover Page. • Off is the factory default setting for all other menu items.
Use	To
Resolution Standard Fine 200 dpi Super Fine 300 dpi	Specify quality in dots per inch (dpi). A higher resolution gives better print quality, but increases the fax transmission time for outgoing faxes. Note: Standard is the factory default setting.

Use	To
Original Size Letter Legal Executive Folio Statement Oficio (Mexico) Universal Auto Size Sense Mixed Sizes A4 A5 A6 JIS B5 Custom Scan Size [x] Book Original Business Card 3 x 5 in. 4 x 6 in.	Specify the paper size of the original document. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Mixed Sizes is the U.S. factory default setting. A4 is the international factory default setting. • Legal, Folio, and Oficio (Mexico) paper sizes are supported only in the ADF.
Sides (Duplex) Off Long edge Short edge	Specify how text and graphics are oriented on a page. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Off is the factory default setting. • “Long edge” assumes binding along the long edge of the page (left edge for portrait and top edge for landscape). • “Short edge” assumes binding along the short edge of the page (top edge for portrait and left edge for landscape).
Content Type Text Graphics Text/Photo Photo	Specify the content of the original document. Note: Text is the factory default setting.
Content Source Black/White Laser Color Laser Inkjet Photo/Film Magazine Newspaper Press Other	Specify how the original document was produced. Note: Color Laser is the factory default setting.
Darkness 1–9	Adjust the darkness of the output. Note: 5 is the factory default setting.
Dial Prefix	Enter a dialing prefix, such as 99. A numeric entry field is provided.

Use	To
Dialing Prefix Rules Prefix Rule [x]	Establish a dialing prefix rule.
Automatic Redial 0–9	Specify the number of times the printer tries to send the fax to a specified number. Note: 5 is the factory default setting.
Redial frequency 1–200	Specify the number of minutes between redials. Note: 3 is the factory default setting.
Behind a PABX Yes No	Enable or disable switchboard blind dialing without a dial tone. Note: No is the factory default setting.
Enable ECM Yes No	Enable or disable Error Correction Mode for fax jobs. Note: Yes is the factory default setting.
Enable Fax Scans On Off	Fax files that are scanned at the printer. Note: On is the factory default setting.
Driver to fax Yes No	Allow the printer driver to send fax jobs. Note: Yes is the factory default setting.
Allow Save as Shortcut On Off	Save fax numbers as shortcuts in the printer. Note: On is the factory default setting.
Dial Mode Tone Pulse	Specify the dialing sound, either as a tone or a pulse. Note: Tone is the factory default setting.
Max Speed 2400 4800 9600 14400 33600	Specify the maximum speed in baud at which faxes are sent. Note: 33600 is the factory default setting.
Custom Job scanning On Off	Scan a document that contains mixed paper sizes into a single file. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Off is the factory default setting. This menu item appears only when a formatted, working printer hard disk is installed.
Scan Preview On Off	Show a preview on the display for scan jobs. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Off is the factory default setting. This menu item appears only when a formatted, working printer hard disk is installed.

Use	To
Background Removal -4 to 4	Adjust the amount of background visible on a scanned image. Note: 0 is the factory default setting.
Color Balance Cyan - Red Magenta - Green Yellow - Blue	Enable an equal balance of colors in the scanned image.
Color Dropout Color Dropout None Red Green Blue Default Red Threshold 0–255 Default Green Threshold 0–255 Default Blue Threshold 0–255	Specify which color to drop during scanning and to adjust the dropout setting for each color threshold. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • None is the factory default setting for Color Dropout. • 128 is the factory default setting for each color threshold.
Contrast 0–5 Best for content	Specify the contrast in the scanned image. Note: “Best for content” is the factory default setting.
Mirror Image Off On	Create a mirror image of the original document. Note: Off is the factory default setting.
Negative Image Off On	Create a negative image of the original document. Note: Off is the factory default setting.
Shadow Detail -4 to 4	Adjust the amount of shadow detail visible. Note: 0 is the factory default setting.
Adjust ADF Skew Auto Off On	Correct the slight skew in the scanned image. Note: Auto is the factory default setting.
Scan edge to edge Off On	Allow edge-to-edge scanning of the original document prior to faxing. Note: Off is the factory default setting.
Sharpness 1–5	Adjust the sharpness of a fax. Note: 3 is the factory default setting.

Use	To
Temperature -4 to 4	Specify “warm” or “cool” outputs. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0 is the factory default setting. • “Cool” values generate a bluer output than the default while “warm” values generate a redder output than the default.
Enable Color Fax Scans Off by default On by default Never use Always use	Enable color faxing. Note: “Off by default” is the factory default setting.
Auto Convert Color Faxes to Mono Faxes On Off	Convert all outgoing faxes to black and white. Note: On is the factory default setting.
Use	To
Enable Fax Receive On Off	Allow the printer to receive fax jobs. Note: On is the factory default setting.
Fax Job Waiting None Toner Toner and Supplies	Remove fax jobs from the print queue when the job requires specific unavailable resources. Note: None is the factory default setting.
Rings to Answer 1–25	Specify the number of rings before answering an incoming fax job. Note: 3 is the factory default setting.
Auto Answer Yes No	Allow the printer to answer an incoming fax job. Note: Yes is the factory default setting.
Manual Answer Code 0–9	Enter a code on the telephone number pad to begin receiving a fax. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 9 is the factory default setting. • This menu item is used when the printer shares a line with a telephone.
Auto Reduction On Off	Scale an incoming fax job so that it fits the size of the paper loaded in the designated fax source. Note: On is the factory default setting.
Paper Source Auto Tray [x] Multipurpose Feeder Manual Feeder	Specify the paper source for printing incoming fax jobs. Note: Auto is the factory default setting.

Use	To
Sides (Duplex) Off On	Enable two-sided (duplex) printing for incoming fax jobs. Note: Off is the factory default setting.
Separator Sheets Off Before Job After Job	Enable the printer to include separator sheets for incoming fax jobs. Note: Off is the factory default setting.
Separator Sheet Source Tray [x] Multipurpose Feeder	Specify the paper source for the separator sheet. Note: Tray 1 is the factory default setting.
Fax Footer On Off	Print the transmission information at the bottom of each page from a received fax. Note: Off is the factory default setting.
Max Speed 2400 4800 9600 14400 33600	Specify the maximum speed in baud at which faxes are received. Note: 33600 is the factory default setting.
Fax Forwarding Print Print and Forward Forward	Enable forwarding of received faxes to another recipient. Note: Print is the factory default setting.
Forward to Fax E-mail FTP LDSS eSF	Specify the type of recipient to which faxes are forwarded. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Fax is the factory default setting. This menu item is available only from the printer Embedded Web Server.
Forward to Shortcut	Enter the shortcut number which matches the recipient type (Fax, E-mail, FTP, LDSS, or eSF).
Block No Name Fax Off On	Enable blocking of incoming faxes sent from devices with no station ID or fax ID specified. Note: Off is the factory default setting.
Banned Fax List	Enable the list of blocked fax numbers stored in the printer.
Holding Faxes Held Fax Mode Off Always On Manual Scheduled Fax Holding Schedule	Enable fax holding all of the time or according to set schedule. Note: Off is the factory default setting.

Use	To
Enable Color Fax Receive On Off	Enable the printer to receive fax in color and print it in grayscale. Note: On is the factory default setting.
Use	To
Transmission Log Print log Do not print log Print only for error	Enable printing of a transmission log after each fax job. Note: "Print log" is the factory default setting.
Receive Error Log Print Never Print on Error	Enable printing of a receive error log following a receive error. Note: Print Never is the factory default setting.
Auto Print Logs On Off	Enable automatic printing of fax logs. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> On is the factory default setting. Logs print after every 200 fax jobs.
Log Paper Source Tray [x] Multipurpose Feeder	Specify the source of the paper used for printing logs. Note: Tray 1 is the factory default setting.
Logs Display Remote Station Name Dialed Number	Specify whether printed logs display the dialed number or the station name or fax name returned. Note: Remote Station Name is the factory default setting.
Enable Job Log On Off	Enable access to the Fax Job log. Note: On is the factory default setting.
Enable Call Log On Off	Enable access to the Fax Call log. Note: On is the factory default setting.
Use	To
Speaker Mode Always Off On until Connected Always On	Specify the mode of the speaker. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> "On until Connected" is the factory default setting. A sound is issued until the fax connection is made. Always On turns the speaker on. Always Off turns the speaker off.
Speaker Volume High Low	Control the volume setting. Note: High is the factory default setting.

Use	To
Ringer Volume Off On	Control the fax speaker ringer volume. Note: On is the factory default setting.

Use	To
All Rings Single Ring Only Double Ring Only Triple Ring Only Single or Double Rings Only Single or Triple Rings Only Double or Triple Rings Only	Specify ring patterns when the printer is answering calls. Note: All Rings is the factory default setting.

Fax Mode (Fax Server Setup) menu

Fax Mode sends the fax job to a fax server for transmission.

Use	To
To Format	Enter specific fax information using the virtual keyboard on the printer control panel.
Reply Address	
Subject	
Message	
SMTP Setup	Specify SMTP setup information.
Primary SMTP Gateway	Specify SMTP server port information.
Secondary SMTP Gateway	
Image Format PDF (.pdf) XPS (.xps) TIFF (.tif)	Specify the image type for scanning to fax. Note: "PDF (.pdf)" is the factory default setting.
Content Type Text Graphics Text/Photo Photo	Specify the content of the original document. Note: Text/Photo is the factory default setting.

Use	To
Content Source Black/White Laser Color Laser Inkjet Photo/Film Magazine Newspaper Press Other	Specify how the content was originally produced. Note: Color Laser is the factory default setting.
Fax Resolution Standard Fine 200 dpi Super Fine 300 dpi	Specify the resolution level for scanning to fax.
Darkness 1–9	Adjust the darkness of the output. Note: 5 is the factory default setting.
Orientation Portrait Landscape	Specify the orientation of the scanned image.
Original Size Letter Legal Executive Folio Statement Oficio (Mexico) Universal Auto Size Sense Mixed Sizes A4 A5 A6 JIS B5 Custom Scan Size [x] Book Original Business Card 4 x 6 in. 3 x 5 in.	Specify the paper size of the document being scanned. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Mixed Sizes is the U.S. factory default setting. A4 is the international factory default setting. Legal, Folio, and Oficio (Mexico) paper sizes are supported only in the ADF.
Use Multi-Page TIFF On Off	Provide a choice between single-page TIFF files and multiple-page TIFF files. For a multiple-page scan-to-fax job, either one TIFF file is created containing all the pages, or multiple TIFF files are created with one file for each page of the scan job. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> On is the factory default setting. This menu item applies to all scan functions.

Use	To
Enable Analog Receive Off On	Enable receiving of analog faxes. Note: Off is the factory default setting.

E-mail Settings menu

Use	To
E-mail Server Setup Subject Message File Name	Specify e-mail server information. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> You can enter up to 255 characters in the Subject field. You can enter up to 512 characters in the Message field. You can enter up to 53 characters in the File Name field.
E-mail Server Setup Send me a copy Never appears On by default Off by default Always On	Send a copy of the e-mail to the sender. Note: "Never appears" is the factory default setting.
E-mail Server Setup Max E-mail size 0–65535 KB	Specify the maximum e-mail size in kilobytes (KB). Note: E-mails greater than the specified maximum size are not sent.
E-mail Server Setup Size Error Message	Send a message when an e-mail is greater than the configured size limit. Note: You can enter up to 1024 characters.
E-mail Server Setup Limit destinations	Specify a domain name, such as a company domain name, and then limit e-mail destinations only to that domain name. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> E-mail can be sent only to the specified domain. You can specify only one domain.
E-mail Server Setup Web Link Setup Server Login Password Path File Name Web Link	Define the e-mail server path name; for example: /directory/path . Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The characters * : ? < > are invalid entries for a path name. You can enter up to 128 characters for Server, Login, Password, Path, and Web Link. You can enter up to 53 characters for File Name.

Use	To
Format PDF (.pdf) Secure PDF TIFF (.tif) JPEG (.jpg) XPS (.xps)	Specify the format of the scanned file. Note: "PDF (.pdf)" is the factory default setting.
PDF Version 1.2–1.7 A–1a	Set the version of the PDF file that will be scanned for e-mailing. Note: 1.5 is the factory default setting.
Content Type Text Graphics Text/Photo Photo	Specify the content of the original document. Note: Text/Photo is the factory default setting.
Content Source Black/White Laser Color Laser Inkjet Photo/Film Magazine Newspaper Press Other	Specify how the original document was produced. Note: Color Laser is the factory default setting.
Color Off On	Specify whether the printer captures and transmits content in color or in black and white. Note: On is the factory default setting.
Resolution 75 dpi 150 dpi 200 dpi 300 dpi 400 dpi 600 dpi	Specify the resolution of the scan in dots per inch. Note: "150 dpi" is the factory default setting.
Darkness 1–9	Adjust the darkness of the output. Note: 5 is the factory default setting.
Orientation Portrait Landscape	Specify the orientation of the scanned image. Note: Portrait is the factory default setting.

Use	To
Original Size Letter Legal Executive Folio Statement Oficio (Mexico) Universal Auto Size Sense Mixed Sizes A4 A5 A6 JIS B5 Custom Scan Size [x] Book Original Business Card 3 x 5 in. 4 x 6 in.	Specify the paper size of the document being scanned. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Letter is the U.S. factory default setting. A4 is the international factory default setting. • Legal, Folio, and Oficio (Mexico) paper sizes are supported only in the ADF. • When set, a defined custom name appears instead of Custom Scan Size [x].
Sides (Duplex) Off Long edge Short edge	Specify how the text and graphics are oriented on the page. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Off is the factory default setting. • “Long edge” assumes binding along the long edge of the page (left edge for portrait and top edge for landscape). • “Short edge” assumes binding along the short edge of the page (top edge for portrait and left edge for landscape).
JPEG Quality Best for content 5–90	Set the quality of a JPEG photo image in relation to file size and quality of the image. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “Best for content” is the factory default setting. • 5 reduces the file size and quality of the image. • 90 provides the best image quality, but the file size is very large. • This menu item applies to all scan functions.
Text Default 5–90	Set the quality of a text image in relation to file size and quality of the image. Note: 75 is the factory default setting.
Text/Photo Default 5–90	Set the quality of a text or photo image in relation to file size and quality of the image. Note: 75 is the factory default setting.
Photo Default 5–90	Set the quality of a photo image in relation to file size and quality of the image. Note: 50 is the factory default setting.
E-mail images sent as Attachment Web Link	Specify how the images are sent. Note: Attachment is the factory default setting.

Use	To
Use Multi-Page TIFF On Off	Choose between single-page TIFF files and multiple-page TIFF files. For a multiple-page scan-to-e-mail job, either one TIFF file is created containing all the pages, or multiple TIFF files are created with one file for each page of the job. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> On is the factory default setting. This menu item applies to all scan functions.
Transmission Log Print log Do not print log Print only for error	Specify whether or not the transmission log prints. Note: "Print log" is the factory default setting.
Log Paper Source Tray [x] Multipurpose Feeder	Specify the paper source for printing e-mail logs. Note: Tray 1 is the factory default setting.
E-mail Bit Depth 1 bit 8 bit	Enable the Text/Photo mode to produce smaller file sizes by using 1-bit images when Color is set to Off. Note: "8 bit" is the factory default setting.
Custom Job scanning On Off	Copy a document that contains mixed paper sizes. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Off is the factory default setting. This menu item appears only when a formatted, working printer hard disk is installed.
Scan Preview On Off	Show a preview on the display for scan jobs. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Off is the factory default setting. This menu item appears only when a formatted, working printer hard disk is installed.
Allow Save as Shortcut On Off	Save e-mail addresses as shortcuts. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> On is the factory default setting. When set to Off, the "Save as Shortcut" button does not appear on the e-mail destination screen.
Background Removal -4 to 4	Adjust the amount of background visible on a scanned image. Note: 0 is the factory default setting.
Color Balance Cyan - Red Magenta - Green Yellow - Blue	Enable an equal balance of colors in the output.

Use	To
Color Dropout Color Dropout None Red Green Blue Default Red Threshold 0–255 Default Green Threshold 0–255 Default Blue Threshold 0–255	Specify which color to drop during scanning and to adjust the dropout setting for each color threshold. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • None is the factory default setting for Color Dropout. • 128 is the factory default setting for each color threshold.
Contrast 0–5 Best for content	Specify the contrast of the output. Note: “Best for content” is the factory default setting.
Mirror Image Off On	Create a mirror image of the original document. Note: Off is the factory default setting.
Negative Image Off On	Create a negative image of the original document. Note: Off is the factory default setting.
Shadow Detail -4 to 4	Adjust the amount of shadow detail visible on a scanned image. Note: 0 is the factory default setting.
Adjust ADF Skew Auto Off On	Correct the slight skew in the scanned image. Note: Auto is the factory default setting.
Scan edge to edge Off On	Allow edge-to-edge scanning of the original document. Note: Off is the factory default setting.
Sharpness 1–5	Adjust the amount of sharpness on a scanned image. Note: 3 is the factory default setting.
Temperature -4 to 4	Specify “warm” or “cool” outputs. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0 is the factory default setting. • “Cool” values generate a bluer output than the default while “warm” values generate a redder output than the default.
Use cc:/bcc: Off On	Enable the use of the “cc” and “bcc” fields. Note: Off is the factory default setting.

FTP Settings menu

Use	To
Format PDF (.pdf) Secure PDF (.pdf) TIFF (.tif) JPEG (.jpg) XPS (.xps)	Specify the format of the file for FTP sending. Note: "PDF (.pdf)" is the factory default setting.
PDF Version 1.2–1.7 A–1a	Set the version level of the PDF file for FTP sending. Note: 1.5 is the factory default setting.
Content Type Text Graphics Text/Photo Photo	Specify the content of the original document. Note: Text/Photo is the factory default setting.
Content Source Black/White Laser Color Laser Inkjet Photo/Film Magazine Newspaper Press Other	Specify how the original document was produced. Note: Color Laser is the factory default setting.
Color Off On	Specify whether the printer captures and transmits content in color or in black and white. Note: On is the factory default setting.
Resolution 75 dpi 150 dpi 200 dpi 300 dpi 400 dpi 600 dpi	Specify the quality of the scan in dots per inch. Note: "150 dpi" is the factory default setting.
Darkness 1–9	Adjust the darkness of the output. Note: 5 is the factory default setting.
Orientation Portrait Landscape	Specify the orientation of the scanned image. Note: Portrait is the factory default setting.

Use	To
Original Size Letter Legal Executive Folio Statement Oficio (Mexico) Universal Auto Size Sense Mixed Sizes A4 A5 A6 JIS B5 Custom Scan Size [x] Book Original Business Card 3 x 5 in. 4 x 6 in.	Specify the paper size of the original document. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Letter is the U.S. factory default setting. A4 is the international factory default setting. • Legal, Folio, and Oficio (Mexico) paper sizes are supported only in the ADF. • When set, a defined custom name appears instead of Custom Scan Size [x].
Sides (Duplex) Off Long edge Short edge	Specify how the text and graphics are oriented on the page. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Off is the factory default setting. • “Long edge” assumes binding along the long edge of the page (left edge for portrait and top edge for landscape). • “Short edge” assumes binding along the short edge of the page (top edge for portrait and left edge for landscape).
JPEG Quality Best for content 5–90	Set the quality of a JPEG photo image in relation to file size and the quality of the image. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “Best for content” is the factory default setting. • 5 reduces the file size, but the quality of the image is lessened. • 90 provides the best image quality, but the file size is very large. • This menu item applies to all scan functions.
Text Default 5–90	Set the quality of the text in relation to file size and the quality of the image. Note: 75 is the factory default setting.
Text/Photo Default 5–90	Set the quality of a text or a photo image in relation to file size and the quality of the image. Note: 75 is the factory default setting.
Photo Default 5–90	Set the quality of a photo image in relation to file size and the quality of the image. Note: 50 is the factory default setting.

Use	To
Use Multi-Page TIFF On Off	Provide a choice between single-page TIFF files and multiple-page TIFF files. For a multiple-page scan-to-FTP job, either one TIFF file is created containing all the pages, or multiple TIFF files are created with one file for each page of the job. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> On is the factory default setting. This menu item applies to all scan functions.
Transmission Log Print log Do not print log Print only for error	Specify whether the transmission log prints. Note: "Print log" is the factory default setting.
Log Paper Source Tray [x] Multipurpose Feeder	Specify a paper source when printing FTP logs. Note: Tray 1 is the factory default setting.
FTP bit Depth 1 bit 8 bit	Enable the Text/Photo mode to have smaller file sizes by using 1-bit images when Color is set to Off. Note: "8 bit" is the factory default setting.
File Name	Specify a base file name. Note: You can type up to 53 characters.
Custom Job Scanning On Off	Copy a document that contains mixed paper sizes into a single scan job. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Off is the factory default setting. This menu item appears only when a formatted, working printer hard disk is installed.
Scan Preview On Off	Show a preview on the display for scan jobs. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Off is the factory default setting. This menu item appears only when a formatted, working printer hard disk is installed.
Allow Save as Shortcut On Off	Enable shortcut creation for FTP addresses. Note: On is the factory default setting.
Background Removal -4 to 4	Adjust the amount of background visible on a copy. Note: 0 is the factory default setting.
Color Balance Cyan - Red Magenta - Green Yellow - Blue	Enable an equal balance of colors in the output.

Use	To
Color Dropout Color Dropout None Red Green Blue Default Red Threshold 0–255 Default Green Threshold 0–255 Default Blue Threshold 0–255	Specify which color to drop during scanning and to adjust the dropout setting for each color threshold. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • None is the factory default setting for Color Dropout. • 128 is the factory default setting for each color threshold.
Contrast 0–5 Best for content	Specify the contrast of the output. Note: “Best for content” is the factory default setting.
Mirror Image Off On	Create a mirror image of the original document. Note: Off is the factory default setting.
Negative Image Off On	Create a negative image of the original document. Note: Off is the factory default setting.
Shadow Detail -4 to 4	Adjust the amount of shadow detail visible on a scanned image. Note: 0 is the factory default setting.
Adjust ADF Skew Auto Off On	Correct the slight skew in the scanned image. Note: Auto is the factory default setting.
Scan edge to edge Off On	Allow edge-to-edge scanning of the original document. Note: Off is the factory default setting.
Sharpness 1–5	Adjust the amount of sharpness of a scanned image. Note: 3 is the factory default setting.
Temperature -4 to 4	Specify “warm” or “cool” outputs. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0 is the factory default setting. • “Cool” values generate a bluer output than the default while “warm” values generate a redder output than the default.

Flash Drive menu

Scan Settings menu

Use	To
Format PDF (.pdf) Secure PDF TIFF (.tif) JPEG (.jpg) XPS (.xps)	Specify the format of the file to be sent through FTP. Note: "PDF (.pdf)" is the factory default setting.
PDF Version 1.2–1.7 A1–a	Set the version of the PDF file to be sent through FTP. Note: 1.5 is the factory default setting.
Content Type Text Graphics Text/Photo Photo	Specify the content of the original document. Note: Text/Photo is the factory default setting.
Content Source Black/White Laser Color Laser Inkjet Photo/Film Magazine Newspaper Press Other	Specify how the original document was produced. Note: Color Laser is the factory default setting.
Color On Off	Specify whether the device captures and transmits content in color or in black and white. Note: On is the factory default setting.
Resolution 75 dpi 150 dpi 200 dpi 300 dpi 400 dpi 600 dpi	Specify the resolution of the scan in dots per inch (dpi). Note: "150 dpi" is the factory default setting.
Darkness 1–9	Adjust the darkness of the output. Note: 5 is the factory default setting.
Orientation Portrait Landscape	Specify the orientation of the scanned image. Note: Portrait is the factory default setting.

Use	To
Original Size Letter Legal Executive Folio Statement Oficio (Mexico) Universal Auto Size Sense Mixed Sizes A4 A5 A6 JIS B5 Custom Scan Size [x] Book Original Business Card 3 x 5 in. 4 x 6 in.	Specify the paper size of the original document. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Letter is the U.S. factory default setting. A4 is the international factory default setting. • Legal, Folio, and Oficio (Mexico) paper sizes are supported only in the ADF. • When set, a defined custom name appears instead of Custom Scan Size [x].
Sides (Duplex) Off Long edge Short edge	Specify how the text and graphics are oriented on a page. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Off is the factory default setting. • “Long edge” assumes binding along the long edge of the page (left edge for portrait and top edge for landscape). • “Short edge” assumes binding along the short edge of the page (top edge for portrait and left edge for landscape).
JPEG Quality Best for content 5–90	Set the quality of a JPEG photo image in relation to file size and quality. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “Best for content” is the factory default setting. • 5 reduces the file size, but the quality of the image is reduced. • 90 provides the best image quality, but the file size is very large. • This menu item applies to all scan functions.
Text Default 5–90	Set the quality of the text in relation to file size and quality of the image. Note: 75 is the factory default setting.
Text/Photo Default 5–90	Set the quality of a text/photo image in relation to file size and quality. Note: 75 is the factory default setting.
Photo Default 5–90	Set the quality of a photo image in relation to file size and quality. Note: 50 is the factory default setting.

Use	To
Use Multi-Page TIFF On Off	Provide a choice between single-page TIFF files and multiple-page TIFF files. For a multiple-page scan-to-FTP job, either one TIFF file is created containing all the pages, or multiple TIFF files are created with one file for each page. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> On is the factory default setting. This menu item applies to all scan functions.
Scan Bit Depth 1 bit 8 bit	Enable the Text/Photo mode to have smaller file sizes by using 1-bit images when Color is set to Off. Note: "8 bit" is the factory default setting.
File Name	Type a base file name. Note: You can enter a maximum of 53 characters.
Custom Job scanning On Off	Copy a document containing mixed paper sizes in a single copy job. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Off is the factory default setting. This menu item appears only when a formatted, working printer hard disk is installed.
Scan Preview On Off	Show a preview on the display for scan jobs. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Off is the factory default setting. This menu item appears only when a formatted, working printer hard disk is installed.
Background Removal -4 to 4	Adjust the amount of background visible in a scanned image. Note: 0 is the factory default setting.
Color Balance Cyan - Red Magenta - Green Yellow - Blue	Enable an equal balance of colors in the output.
Color Dropout Color Dropout None Red Green Blue Default Red Threshold 0–255 Default Green Threshold 0–255 Default Blue Threshold 0–255	Specify which color to drop during scanning and to adjust the dropout setting for each color threshold. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> None is the factory default setting for Color Dropout. 128 is the factory default setting for each color threshold.

Use	To
Contrast 0–5 Best for content	Specify the contrast of the output. Note: “Best for content” is the factory default setting.
Mirror Image Off On	Create a mirror image of the original document. Note: Off is the factory default setting.
Negative Image Off On	Create a negative image of the original document. Note: Off is the factory default setting.
Shadow Detail -4 to 4	Adjust the amount of shadow detail visible on a scanned image. Note: 0 is the factory default setting.
Adjust ADF Skew Auto Off On	Correct the slight skew in the scanned image. Note: Auto is the factory default setting.
Scan edge to edge Off On	Allow edge-to-edge scanning of the original document. Note: Off is the factory default setting.
Sharpness 1–5	Adjust the amount of sharpness on a scanned image. Note: 3 is the factory default setting.
Temperature -4 to 4	Specify “warm” or “cool” outputs. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0 is the factory default setting. • “Cool” values generate a bluer output than the default while “warm” values generate a redder output than the default.

Print Settings menu

Use	To
Copies 1–999	Specify a default number of copies for each print job. Note: 1 is the factory default setting.
Paper Source Tray [x] Multipurpose Feeder Manual Paper Manual Envelope	Set a default paper source for all print jobs. Note: Tray 1 is the factory default setting.
Color Color Black Only	Specify whether the printer captures and transmits content in color or in black and white. Note: Color is the factory default setting.

Use	To
Collate (1,1,1) (2,2,2) (1,2,3) (1,2,3)	Stack the pages of a print job in sequence when printing multiple copies. Note: “(1,2,3) (1,2,3)” is the factory default setting.
Sides (Duplex) 1 sided 2 sided	Specify whether prints are on one side or on both sides of the page. Note: “1 sided” is the factory default setting.
Duplex Binding Long Edge Short Edge	Define binding for duplexed pages in relation to page orientation. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Long Edge is the factory default setting. This assumes binding along the long edge of the page (left edge for portrait and top edge for landscape). Short Edge assumes binding along the short edge of the page (top edge for portrait and left edge for landscape).
Paper Saver Orientation Auto Landscape Portrait	Specify the orientation of a multiple-page document. Note: Auto is the factory default setting.
Paper Saver Off 2-Up 3-Up 4-Up 6-Up 9-Up 12-Up 16-Up	Print multiple pages on one sheet of paper. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Off is the factory default setting. When the number of pages per sheet is selected, each page is scaled so that the number of pages you want can be displayed on the sheet.
Paper Saver Border None Solid	Print a border on each page. Note: None is the factory default setting.
Paper Saver Ordering Horizontal Reverse Horizontal Reverse Vertical Vertical	Specify the order in which pages are printed on a single sheet when using Paper Saver. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Horizontal is the factory default setting. Positioning depends on the number of pages and their orientation.
Separator Sheets Off Between Copies Between Jobs Between Pages	Specify whether blank separator sheets are inserted. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Off is the factory default setting. Between Copies inserts a blank sheet between each copy of a print job if Collate is set to “(1,2,3) (1,2,3).” If Collate is set to “(1,1,1) (2,2,2),” then a blank page is inserted between each set of printed pages, such as after all page 1's and after all page 2's. Between Jobs inserts a blank sheet between print jobs. Between Pages inserts a blank sheet between each page of the print job. This setting is useful when printing transparencies or when inserting blank pages in a document .

Use	To
Separator Sheet Source Tray [x] Multipurpose Feeder	Specify the paper source for separator sheets. Note: Tray 1 is the factory default setting.
Blank Pages Do Not Print Print	Specify whether blank pages are inserted in a print job. Note: Do Not Print is the factory default setting.

Print Settings

Setup menu

Use	To
Printer Language PCL Emulation PS Emulation	Set the default printer language. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • PS Emulation is the factory default printer language. • Setting a printer language as the default does not prevent a software program from sending print jobs that use another printer language.
Job Waiting On Off	Specify that print jobs be removed from the print queue if they require unavailable printer options or custom settings. They are stored in a separate print queue, so other jobs print normally. When the missing information or options are obtained, the stored jobs print. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Off is the factory default setting. • This menu item appears only when a formatted, working printer hard disk is installed. This requirement ensures that stored jobs are not deleted if the printer loses power.
Print Area Normal Fit to Page Whole Page	Set the logical and physical printable area. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Normal is the factory default setting. When attempting to print data in the non-printable area defined by the Normal setting, the printer clips the image at the boundary. • Whole Page allows the image to be moved into the non-printable area defined by the Normal setting. Whole Page only affects pages printed using a PCL 5e interpreter. This setting has no effect on pages printed using the PCL XL or PostScript interpreter.
Printer Usage Max Yield Max Speed	Set the printer for a faster print speed or for a higher toner yield. Note: Max Yield is the factory default setting.
Black Only Mode On Off	Set the printer to print text and graphics using only the black toner cartridge. Note: Off is the factory default setting.

Use	To
Download Target RAM Flash Disk	Set the storage location for downloads. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • RAM is the factory default setting. Storing downloads in the RAM is temporary. • Storing downloads in flash memory or on a printer hard disk places them in permanent storage. Downloads remain in flash memory or on the printer hard disk even when the printer is turned off. • This menu item appears only when a flash drive or a formatted, working printer hard disk is installed.
Resource Save On Off	Specify how the printer handles temporary downloads, such as fonts and macros stored in the RAM, when the printer receives a job that requires more memory than is available. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Off is the factory default setting. This sets the printer to retain the downloads only until memory is needed. Downloads are deleted in order to process print jobs. • On retains the downloads during language changes and printer resets. If the printer runs out of memory, then Memory Full [38] appears, and downloads are not deleted.
Print All Order Alphabetical Oldest First Newest First	Specify the order in which held and confidential jobs are printed when Print All is selected. Note: Alphabetical is the factory default setting. Print jobs always appear in alphabetical order on the printer control panel.

Finishing menu

Use	To
Sides (Duplex) 1 sided 2 sided	Specify whether two-sided (duplex) printing is set as the default for all print jobs. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “1 sided” is the factory default setting. • You can set two-sided printing from the printer software. For Windows users: Click File > Print, and then click Properties, Preferences, Options, or Setup. For Macintosh users: Choose File > Print, and then adjust the settings from the Print dialog and pop-up menus.
Duplex Binding Long Edge Short Edge	Define binding for duplexed pages in relation to page orientation. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Long Edge is the factory default setting. This assumes binding along the long edge of the page (left edge for portrait and top edge for landscape). • Short Edge assumes binding along the short edge of the page (top edge for portrait and left edge for landscape).

Use	To
Copies 1–999	Specify the default number of copies for each print job. Note: 1 is the factory default setting.
Blank Pages Do Not Print Print	Specify whether blank pages are inserted in a print job. Note: Do Not Print is the factory default setting.
Collate (1,1,1) (2,2,2) (1,2,3) (1,2,3)	Stack the pages of a print job in sequence when printing multiple copies. Note: “(1,2,3) (1,2,3)” is the factory default setting.
Separator Sheets Off Between Copies Between Jobs Between Pages	Specify whether blank separator sheets are inserted. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Off is the factory default setting. Between Copies inserts a blank sheet between each copy of a print job if Collate is set to “(1,2,3) (1,2,3).” If Collate is set to “(1,1,1) (2,2,2),” then a blank page is inserted between each set of printed pages, such as after all page 1's and after all page 2's. Between Jobs inserts a blank sheet between print jobs. Between Pages inserts a blank sheet between each page of a print job. This setting is useful when printing transparencies or when inserting blank pages in a document.
Separator Source Tray [x] Multipurpose Feeder	Specify the paper source for the separator sheet. Note: Tray 1 (standard tray) is the factory default setting.
Paper Saver Off 2-Up 3-Up 4-Up 6-Up 9-Up 12-Up 16-Up	Print multiple pages on a single sheet of paper. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Off is the factory default setting. When the number of pages per sheet is selected, each page is scaled so that the number of pages you want can be displayed on the sheet.
Paper Saver Ordering Horizontal Reverse Horizontal Reverse Vertical Vertical	Specify the order in which pages are printed on a single sheet when using Paper Saver. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Horizontal is the factory default setting. Positioning depends on the number of page images and whether they are in portrait or in landscape orientation.
Paper Saver Orientation Auto Landscape Portrait	Specify the orientation in which pages are printed on a single sheet. Note: Auto is the factory default setting. The printer chooses between portrait and landscape.

Use	To
Paper Saver Border None Solid	Print a border when using Paper Saver. Note: None is the factory default setting.

Quality menu

Use	To
Print Mode Color Black Only	Specify whether images are printed in black and white or in color. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Color is the factory default setting. The printer driver is capable of overriding this setting.
Color Correction Auto Off Manual	Adjust the color output on the printed page. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Auto is the factory default setting. This applies different color conversion tables to each object on the printed page. Off turns off color correction. Manual allows customization of the color tables using the settings available from the Manual Color menu. Due to the differences in additive and subtractive colors, certain colors that appear on computer monitors are impossible to duplicate on the printed page.
Print Resolution 1200 dpi 4800 CQ	Specify the printed output resolution in dots per inch or in color quality (CQ). Note: 4800 CQ is the factory default setting.
Toner Darkness 1–5	Lighten or darken the printed output. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 4 is the factory default setting. Selecting a smaller number can help conserve toner.
Enhance Fine Lines On Off	Enable a print mode preferable for files such as architectural drawings, maps, electrical circuit diagrams, and flow charts. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Off is the factory default setting. To set this option using the Embedded Web Server, type the network printer IP address in the Web browser address field. You can set this option from the software program. For Windows users: Click File > Print, and then click Properties, Preferences, Options, or Setup. For Macintosh users: Choose File > Print, and then adjust the settings from the Print dialog and pop-up menus.

Use	To
Color Saver On Off	Reduce the amount of toner used for graphics and images. The amount of toner used for text is not reduced. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Off is the factory default setting. On overrides Toner Darkness settings.
RGB Brightness -6 to 6	Adjust the printed output either by lightening or darkening it. You can conserve toner by lightening the output. Note: 0 is the factory default setting.
RGB Contrast 0–5	Adjust the contrast of printed objects. Note: 0 is the factory default setting.
RGB Saturation 0–5	Adjust saturation in color outputs. Note: 0 is the factory default setting.
Color Balance Cyan -5 to 5 Magenta -5 to 5 Yellow -5 to 5 Black -5 to 5 Reset Defaults	Adjust color in printed output by increasing or decreasing the amount of toner being used for each color. Note: 0 is the factory default setting.
Color Samples sRGB Display sRGB Vivid Display—True Black Vivid Off—RGB US CMYK Euro CMYK Vivid CMYK Off—CMYK	Print sample pages for each of the RGB and CMYK color conversion tables used in the printer. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Selecting any setting prints the sample. Color samples consist of a series of colored boxes along with the RGB or CMYK combination that creates the color observed. These pages can be used to help decide which combinations to use to get the printed output you want. To access a complete list of color sample pages using the Embedded Web Server, type the network printer IP address in the Web browser address field.

Use	To
Manual Color RGB Image RGB Text RGB Graphics	<p>Customize the RGB color conversions.</p> <p>Select from the following options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Vivid sRGB Display Display—True Black sRGB Vivid Off <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> sRGB Display is the factory default setting for RGB Image. This applies a color conversion table to an output that matches the colors displayed on a computer monitor. sRGB Vivid is the factory default setting for RGB Text and RGB Graphics. This applies a color table that increases saturation. This is preferred for business graphics and text. Vivid applies a color conversion table that produces brighter, more saturated colors. “Display—True Black” applies a color conversion table that uses only black toner for neutral gray colors. Off turns off color conversion.
Manual Color (continued) CMYK Image CMYK Text CMYK Graphics	<p>Customize the CMYK color conversions.</p> <p>Select from the following options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> US CMYK Euro CMYK Vivid CMYK Off <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> US CMYK is the factory default setting. This applies a color conversion table that tries to produce output that matches SWOP color output. Euro CMYK is the international factory default setting. This applies a color conversion table that tries to produce output that matches Euroscale color output. Vivid CMYK increases color saturation for the US conversion table. Off turns off color conversion.
Spot Color Replacement	<p>Assign specific CMYK values to named spot colors.</p> <p>Note: This menu is available only in the Embedded Web Server.</p>
Color Adjust	<p>Initiate a recalibration of color conversion tables and allow the printer to make adjustments for color variations in output.</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Adjusting color starts when the menu is selected. Adjusting color appears on the display until the process is finished. Color variations in output sometimes result from changeable conditions such as room temperature and humidity. Color adjustments are made on printer algorithms. Color alignment is also recalibrated in this process.

Job Accounting menu

Note: This menu appears only when a formatted, non-defective printer hard disk is installed. Make sure the printer hard disk is not read/write- or write-protected.

Use	To
Job Accounting Log Off On	Determine and set if the printer creates a log of the print jobs it receives. Note: Off is the factory default setting.
Job Accounting Utilities	Print and delete log files or export them to a flash drive.
Accounting Log Frequency Weekly Monthly	Determine and set how often a log file is created. Note: Monthly is the factory default setting.
Log Action at End of Frequency None E-mail Current Log E-mail & Delete Current Log Post Current Log Post & Delete Current Log	Determine and set how the printer responds when the frequency threshold expires. Note: None is the factory default setting.
Disk Near Full Level Off 1–99	Specify the maximum size of the log file. Note: 5 is the factory default setting.
Disk Near Full Action None E-mail Current Log E-mail & Delete Current Log E-mail & Delete Oldest Log Post Current Log Post & Delete Current Log Post & Delete Oldest Log Delete Current Log Delete Oldest Log Delete All Logs Delete All But Current	Determine and set how the printer responds when the printer hard disk is nearly full. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • None is the factory default setting. • The value defined in Disk Near Full Level determines when this action is triggered.
Disk Full Action None E-mail & Delete Current Log E-mail & Delete Oldest Log Post & Delete Current Log Post & Delete Oldest Log Delete Current Log Delete Oldest Log Delete All Logs Delete All But Current	Determine and set how the printer responds when disk usage reaches the maximum limit (100MB). Note: None is the factory default setting.
URL to Post Logs	Determine and set where the printer posts job accounting logs.

Use	To
E-mail to Send Logs	Specify the e-mail address to which the device sends job accounting logs.
Log File Prefix	Specify the prefix you want for the log file name. Note: The current host name defined in the TCP/IP menu is used as the default log file prefix.

Utilities menu

Use	To
Remove Held Jobs Confidential Held Not Restored All	Delete confidential and held jobs from the printer hard disk. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Selecting a setting affects only print jobs that are resident in the printer. Bookmarks, print jobs on flash drives, and other types of held jobs are not affected. • Not Restored removes all Print and Hold jobs that are <i>not</i> restored from the printer hard disk or memory.
Format Flash Yes No	Format the flash memory. Warning—Potential Damage: Do not turn off the printer while the flash memory is being formatted. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Yes deletes all data stored in flash memory. • No cancels the format request. • Flash memory refers to the memory added by installing a flash memory card in the printer. • The flash memory option card must not be read/write- or write-protected. • This menu item appears only when a non-defective flash memory card is installed.
Delete Downloads on Disk Delete Now Do Not Delete	Delete downloads from the printer hard disk, including all held jobs, buffered jobs, and parked jobs. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Delete Now sets the printer to delete the downloads and allows the display to return to the originating screen after the deletion. • Do Not Delete sets the printer display to return to the main Utilities menu for touch-screen printer models. When selected in non-touch-screen printer models, Do Not Delete sets the printer to return to the originating screen after the deletion.
Activate Hex Trace	Assist in isolating the source of a print job problem. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When activated, all data sent to the printer is printed in hexadecimal and character representation, and control codes are not executed. • To exit or deactivate Hex Trace, turn off or reset the printer.

Use	To
Coverage Estimator Off On	Provide an estimate of the percentage coverage of toner on a page. The estimate is printed on a separate page at the end of each print job. Note: Off is the factory default setting.

XPS menu

Use	To
Print Error Pages Off On	Print a page containing information on errors, including XML markup errors. Note: Off is the factory default setting.

PDF menu

Use	To
Scale to Fit Yes No	Scale page content to fit the selected paper size. Note: No is the factory default setting.
Annotations Do Not Print Print	Print annotations in a PDF. Note: Do Not Print is the factory default setting.

PostScript menu

Use	To
Print PS Error On Off	Print a page containing the PostScript error. Note: Off is the factory default setting.
Lock PS Startup Mode On Off	Enable users to disable the SysStart file. Note: Off is the factory default setting.
Font Priority Resident Flash/Disk	Establish the font search order. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Resident is the factory default setting. • This menu item appears only when a formatted, non-defective flash memory option card or printer hard disk is installed. • Make sure the flash memory option or printer hard disk is not read/write-, write-, or password-protected. • Job Buffer Size must not be set to 100%.

Use	To
Image Smoothing On Off	Enhance the contrast and sharpness of low-resolution images and smoothen their color transitions. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Off is the factory default setting. Image Smoothing has no effect on images that are 300 dpi or higher in resolution.

PCL Emul menu

Use	To
Font Source Resident Disk Download Flash All	Specify the set of fonts used by the Font Name menu. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> “Resident” is the factory default setting. Resident shows the factory default set of fonts downloaded in the RAM. “Flash” and “Disk” settings show all fonts resident in that option. The flash option must be properly formatted and cannot be read/write-, write-, or password-protected. “Download” shows all the fonts downloaded in the RAM. “All” shows all fonts available to any option.
Font Name Courier 10	Identify a specific font and the option where it is stored. Note: Courier 10 is the factory default setting. Courier 10 shows the font name, font ID, and the storage location in the printer. The font source abbreviation is R for Resident, F for Flash, K for Disk, and D for Download.
Symbol Set 10U PC-8 12U PC-850	Specify the symbol set for each font name. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 10U PC-8 is the US factory default setting. 12U PC-850 is the international factory default setting. A symbol set is a set of alphabetic and numeric characters, punctuation, and special symbols. Symbol sets support the different languages or specific programs such as math symbols for scientific text. Only the supported symbol sets are shown.
PCL Emulation Settings Point Size 1.00–1008.00	Change the point size for scalable typographic fonts. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 12 is the factory default setting. Point size refers to the height of the characters in the font. One point equals approximately 0.014 inch. Point sizes can be increased or decreased in 0.25-point increments.

Use	To
PCL Emulation Settings Pitch 0.08–100	Specify the font pitch for scalable monospaced fonts. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 10 is the factory default setting. • Pitch refers to the number of fixed-space characters per inch (cpi). • Pitch can be increased or decreased in 0.01-cpi increments. • For nonscalable monospaced fonts, the pitch appears on the display but it cannot be changed.
PCL Emulation Settings Orientation Portrait Landscape	Specify the orientation of text and graphics on the page. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Portrait is the factory default setting. Portrait prints text and graphics parallel to the short edge of the page. • Landscape prints text and graphics parallel to the long edge of the page.
PCL Emulation Settings Lines per Page 1–255	Specify the number of lines that print on each page. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 60 is the US factory default setting. 64 is the international default setting. • The printer sets the amount of space between each line based on the Lines per Page, Paper Size, and Orientation settings. Select the Paper Size and Orientation you want before setting Lines per Page.
PCL Emulation Settings A4 Width 198 mm 203 mm	Set the printer to print on A4-size paper. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “198 mm” is the factory default setting. • The 203-mm setting sets the width of the page to allow printing of eighty 10-pitch characters.
PCL Emulation Settings Auto CR after LF On Off	Specify whether the printer automatically performs a carriage return (CR) after a line feed (LF) control command. Note: Off is the factory default setting.
PCL Emulation Settings Auto LF after CR On Off	Specify whether the printer automatically performs a line feed (LF) after a carriage return (CR) control command. Note: Off is the factory default setting.

Use	To
Tray Renumber Assign MP Feeder Off None 0–199 Assign Tray [x] Off None 0–199 Assign Manual Paper Off None 0–199 Assign Manual Env Off None 0–199	Configure the printer to work with printer software or programs that use different source assignments for trays and feeders. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “Off” is the factory default setting. • “None” ignores the Select Paper Feed command. This option appears only when it is selected by the PCL 5 interpreter. • “0–199” allows a custom setting to be assigned.
Tray Renumber View Factory Defaults MPF Default = 8 T1 Default = 1 T1 Default = 4 T1 Default = 5 T1 Default = 20 T1 Default = 21 Env Default = 6 MPaper Default = 2 MEnv Default = 3	Display the factory default setting assigned to each tray or feeder.
Tray Renumber Restore Defaults Yes No	Restore all tray and feeder assignments to the factory default settings.

HTML menu

Use		To
Font Name Albertus MT Antique Olive Apple Chancery Arial MT Avant Garde Bodoni Bookman Chicago Clarendon Cooper Black Copperplate Coronet Courier Eurostile Garamond Geneva Gill Sans Goudy Helvetica Hoefler Text Intl CG Times Intl Courier Intl Univers	Joanna MT Letter Gothic Lubalin Graph Marigold MonaLisa Recut Monaco New CenturySbk New York Optima Oxford Palatino StempelGaramond Taffy Times TimesNewRoman Univers Zapf Chancery NewSansMTCS NewSansMTCT New SansMTJA NewSansMTKO	Set the default font for HTML documents. Note: The Times font is used in HTML documents that do not specify a font.

Use	To
Font Size 1–255 pt	Set the default font size for HTML documents. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 12 pt is the factory default setting. • Font size can be increased in 1-point increments.
Scale 1–400%	Scale the default font for HTML documents. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 100% is the factory default setting. • Scaling can be increased in 1% increments.
Orientation Portrait Landscape	Set the page orientation for HTML documents. Note: Portrait is the factory default setting.

Use	To
Margin Size 8–255 mm	Set the page margin for HTML documents. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 19 mm is the factory default setting. • Margin size can be increased in 1-mm increments.
Backgrounds Do Not Print Print	Specify whether to print backgrounds on HTML documents. Note: Print is the factory default setting.

Image menu

Use	To
Auto Fit On Off	Select the optimal paper size, scaling, and orientation. Note: On is the factory default setting. It overrides scaling and orientation settings for some images.
Invert On Off	Invert bitonal monochrome images. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Off is the factory default setting. • This setting does not apply to GIF or JPEG images.
Scaling Anchor Top Left Best Fit Anchor Center Fit Height/Width Fit Height Fit Width	Scale the image to fit the selected paper size. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Best Fit is the factory default setting. • When Auto Fit is set to On, Scaling is automatically set to Best Fit.
Orientation Portrait Landscape Reverse Portrait Reverse Landscape	Set the image orientation. Note: Portrait is the factory default setting.

Help menu

The Help menu consists of a series of Help pages that are stored in the multifunction printer (MFP) as PDF files. They contain information about using the printer and performing various tasks, including copying, scanning, e-mailing, and faxing.

English, French, German, and Spanish translations are stored in the printer. Other translations are available at <http://support.lexmark.com>.

Menu item	Description
Print All Guides	Prints all the guides
Copy Guide	Provides information about making copies and changing settings
E-mail Guide	Provides information about sending e-mails using addresses, shortcut numbers, or the address book, and about changing settings
Fax Guide	Provides information about sending faxes using fax numbers, shortcut numbers, or the address book, and about changing settings
FTP Guide	Provides information about scanning documents directly to an FTP server using an FTP address, shortcut numbers, or the address book, and about changing settings
Color Quality	Provides information about solving color quality issues
Print Defects Guide	Provides help in resolving repeating defects in copies or prints
Information Guide	Provides help in locating additional information
Supplies Guide	Provides part numbers for ordering supplies

Saving money and the environment

Lexmark is committed to environmental sustainability and is continually improving its printers to reduce their impact on the environment. We design with the environment in mind, engineer our packaging to reduce materials, and provide collection and recycling programs. For more information, see:

- The Notices chapter
- The Environmental Sustainability section of the Lexmark Web site at www.lexmark.com/environment
- The Lexmark recycling program at www.lexmark.com/recycle

By selecting certain printer settings or tasks, you may be able to reduce your printer's impact even further. This chapter outlines the settings and tasks that may yield a greater environmental benefit.

Saving paper and toner

Studies show that as much as 80% of the carbon footprint of a printer is related to paper usage. You can significantly reduce your carbon footprint by using recycled paper and the following printing suggestions, such as printing on both sides of the paper and printing multiple pages on one side of a single sheet of paper.

For information on how you can quickly save paper and energy using one printer setting, see [“Using Eco-Mode” on page 201](#).

Using recycled paper

As an environmentally conscious company, Lexmark supports the use of recycled office paper produced specifically for use in laser printers. For more information on recycled papers that work well with your printer, see [“Using recycled paper and other office papers” on page 59](#).

Conserving supplies

There are a number of ways you can reduce the amount of paper and toner you use when printing. You can:

Use both sides of the paper

If your printer model supports duplex printing, then you can control whether print appears on one or two sides of the paper by selecting **2-sided printing** from the Print dialog or the Lexmark Toolbar.

Place multiple pages on one sheet of paper

You can print up to 16 consecutive pages of a multiple-page document onto one side of a single sheet of paper by selecting a setting from the Multipage printing (N-Up) section of the Print dialog screen.

Check your first draft for accuracy

Before printing or making multiple copies of a document:

- Use the preview feature, which you can select from the Print dialog or the Lexmark Toolbar, to see what the document will look like before you print it.
- Print one copy of the document to check its content and format for accuracy.

Avoid paper jams

Carefully select and load paper to avoid paper jams. For more information, see [“Avoiding jams” on page 241](#).

Saving energy

Using Eco-Mode

- 1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

Notes:

- View the printer IP address on the printer home screen. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

- 2 Click **Settings > General Settings > Eco-Mode** > select a setting

Use	To
Off	Use the factory default settings for all settings associated with Eco-Mode. Off supports the performance specifications of the printer.
Energy	Reduce energy use, especially when the printer is idle. <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Printer engine motors do not start until it is ready to print. You may notice a short delay before the first page is printed.• The printer enters Sleep mode after one minute of inactivity.
Energy/Paper	Use all the settings associated with Energy and Paper modes.
Plain Paper	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Enable the automatic two-sided (duplex) feature.• Turn off print log features.

- 3 Click **Submit**.

Reducing printer noise

Enable Quiet Mode to reduce printer noise.

- 1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

Notes:

- View the printer IP address on the printer home screen. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

- 2 Click **Settings > General Settings > Quiet Mode** > select a setting

Use	To
On	<p>Reduce printer noise.</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Print jobs are processed at a reduced speed. • Printer engine motors do not start until a document is ready to print. There will be a short delay before the first page is printed.
Off	<p>Use factory default settings.</p> <p>Note: This setting supports the performance specifications of the printer.</p>

3 Click **Submit**.

Adjusting Sleep mode

To save energy, decrease the number of minutes the printer waits before it enters Sleep mode. Select from 1 to 120. The factory default setting is 30 minutes.

Note: The printer still accepts print jobs when in Sleep mode.

Using the Embedded Web Server

1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

Notes:

- View the printer IP address on the printer home screen. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

2 Click **Settings** > **General Settings** > **Timeouts**.

3 In the Sleep Mode field, enter the number of minutes you want for the printer to wait before it enters Sleep mode.

4 Click **Submit**.

Using the printer control panel

1 From the home screen, navigate to:



> **Settings** > **General Settings** > **Timeouts** > **Sleep Mode**

2 In the Sleep Mode field, select the number of minutes you want for the printer to wait before it enters Sleep mode.

3 Touch .

Using Hibernate Mode

Hibernate is an ultra-low power operating mode. When operating in Hibernate mode, the printer is essentially off, and all other systems and devices are powered down safely.

Note: The Hibernate and Sleep modes can be scheduled.

Using the Embedded Web Server

- 1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

Notes:

- View the printer IP address on the printer home screen. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

- 2 Click **Settings > General Settings > Sleep Button Settings**.
- 3 From the Press Sleep Button or Press and Hold Sleep Button drop-down menu, select **Hibernate**.
- 4 Click **Submit**.

Using the printer control panel

- 1 From the home screen, navigate to:



> **Settings > General Settings**

- 2 Touch **Press Sleep Button** or **Press and Hold Sleep Button**.

- 3 Touch **Hibernate** > .

Setting Hibernate Timeout

Hibernate Timeout lets you set the amount of time the printer waits after a print job is processed before it goes into a reduced power state.

Using the Embedded Web Server

- 1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

Notes:

- View the printer IP address on the printer home screen. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.


- 2 Click **Settings > General Settings > Timeouts**.
- 3 From the Hibernate Timeout menu, select the number of hours, days, weeks, or months you want for the printer to wait before it goes into a reduced power state.
- 4 Click **Submit**.

Using the printer control panel

- 1 From the printer control panel, navigate to:



> **Settings** > **General Settings** > **Timeouts** > **Hibernate Timeout**

- 2 Select the amount of time the printer waits after a print job is processed before it enters Hibernate mode.
- 3 Touch .

Using Schedule Power Modes

Schedule Power Modes lets you schedule when the printer goes into a reduced power state or into Ready state.

Note: This feature is available only in network printers or printers connected to print servers.

Using the Embedded Web Server

- 1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

Notes:

- View the printer IP address on the printer home screen. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

- 2 Click **Settings** > **General Settings** > **Schedule Power Modes**.
- 3 From the Action menu, select the power mode.
- 4 From the Time menu, select the time.
- 5 From the Day(s) menu, select the day or days.
- 6 Click **Add**.

Adjusting the brightness of the display

To save energy, or if you are have trouble reading your display, adjust the brightness of the display.

Available settings range from 20–100. The factory default setting is 100.

Using the Embedded Web Server

- 1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

Notes:

- View the printer IP address on the home screen. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

- 2 Click **Settings** > **General Settings**.
- 3 In the Screen Brightness field, enter the brightness percentage you want for the display.
- 4 Click **Submit**.

Using the printer control panel

- 1 From the home screen, navigate to:



> **Settings** > **General Settings** > **Screen Brightness**

- 2 In the Screen Brightness field, enter the brightness percentage you want for the display.

- 3 Touch .

Recycling

Lexmark provides collection programs and environmentally progressive approaches to recycling. For more information, see:

- The Notices chapter
- The Environmental Sustainability section of the Lexmark Web site at www.lexmark.com/environment
- The Lexmark recycling program at www.lexmark.com/recycle

Recycling Lexmark products

To return Lexmark products for recycling:

- 1 Go to www.lexmark.com/recycle.
- 2 Find the product type you want to recycle, and then select your country or region from the list.
- 3 Follow the instructions on the computer screen.

Note: Printer supplies and hardware not listed in the Lexmark collection program may be recycled through your local recycling center. Contact your local recycling center to determine the items they accept.

Recycling Lexmark packaging

Lexmark continually strives to minimize packaging. Less packaging helps to ensure that Lexmark printers are transported in the most efficient and environmentally sensitive manner and that there is less packaging to dispose of. These efficiencies result in fewer greenhouse emissions, energy savings, and natural resource savings.

Lexmark cartons are 100% recyclable where corrugated recycling facilities exist. Facilities may not exist in your area.

The foam used in Lexmark packaging is recyclable where foam recycling facilities exist. Facilities may not exist in your area.

When you return a cartridge to Lexmark, you can reuse the box that the cartridge came in. Lexmark will recycle the box.

Returning Lexmark cartridges for reuse or recycling

Lexmark Cartridge Collection Program diverts millions of Lexmark cartridges from landfills annually by making it both easy and free for Lexmark customers to return used cartridges to Lexmark for reuse or recycling. One hundred percent of the empty cartridges returned to Lexmark are either reused or demanufactured for recycling. Boxes used to return the cartridges are also recycled.

To return Lexmark cartridges for reuse or recycling, follow the instructions that came with your printer or cartridge and use the prepaid shipping label. You can also do the following:

- 1** Go to www.lexmark.com/recycle.
- 2** From the Toner Cartridges section, select your country or region.
- 3** Follow the instructions on the computer screen.

Securing the printer

Using the security lock feature

The printer is equipped with a security lock feature. Attach a security lock compatible with most laptop computers in the location shown to secure the printer in place.



Statement of Volatility

Your printer contains various types of memory that can store device and network settings, and user data.

Type of memory	Description
Volatile memory	Your printer uses standard <i>random access memory</i> (RAM) to temporarily buffer user data during simple print jobs.
Non-volatile memory	Your printer may use two forms of non-volatile memory: EEPROM and NAND (flash memory). Both types are used to store the operating system, device settings, network information and bookmark settings, and embedded solutions.
Hard disk memory	Some printers have a hard disk drive installed. The printer hard disk is designed for printer-specific functionality. This lets the printer retain buffered user data from complex print jobs, as well as form data, and font data.

Erase the content of any installed printer memory in the following circumstances:

- The printer is being decommissioned.
- The printer hard disk is being replaced.

- The printer is being moved to a different department or location.
- The printer is being serviced by someone from outside your organization.
- The printer is being removed from your premises for service.
- The printer is being sold to another organization.

Disposing of a printer hard disk

Note: Some printer models may not have a printer hard disk installed.

In high-security environments, it may be necessary to take additional steps to make sure that confidential data stored in the printer hard disk cannot be accessed when the printer—or its hard disk—is removed from your premises.

- **Degaussing**—Flushes the hard disk with a magnetic field that erases stored data
- **Crushing**—Physically compresses the hard disk to break component parts and render them unreadable
- **Milling**—Physically shreds the hard disk into small metal bits

Note: Most data can be erased electronically, but the only way to guarantee that all data are completely erased is to physically destroy each hard disk where data is stored.

Erasing volatile memory

The volatile memory (RAM) installed in your printer requires a power source to retain information. To erase the buffered data, simply turn off the printer.

Erasing non-volatile memory

Erase individual settings, device and network settings, security settings, and embedded solutions by following these steps:

- 1 Turn off the printer.
- 2 Hold down **2** and **6** on the keypad while turning the printer on. Release the buttons only when the screen with the progress bar appears.

The printer performs a power-on sequence, and then the Configuration menu appears. When the printer is fully turned on, a list of functions appears on the printer display instead of the standard home screen icons.

- 3 Touch **Wipe All Settings**.

The printer will restart several times during this process.

Note: Wipe All Settings securely removes device settings, solutions, jobs, and passwords from the printer memory.

- 4 Touch **Back > Exit Config Menu**.

The printer will perform a power-on reset, and then return to normal operating mode.

Erasing printer hard disk memory

Notes:

- Some printer models may not have a printer hard disk installed.
- Configuring Erase Temporary Data Files in the printer menus lets you remove residual confidential material left by print jobs by securely overwriting files that have been marked for deletion.

Using the printer control panel

- 1 Turn off the printer.
- 2 Hold down **2** and **6** while turning the printer on. Release the buttons only when the screen with the progress bar appears.

The printer performs a power-on sequence, and then the Configuration menu appears. When the printer is fully turned on, the touch screen displays a list of functions.

- 3 Touch **Wipe Disk**, and then touch one of the following:
 - **Wipe disk (fast)**—This lets you overwrite the disk with all zeroes in a single pass.
 - **Wipe disk (secure)**—This lets you overwrite the disk with random bit patterns several times, followed by a verification pass. A secure overwrite is compliant with the DoD 5220.22-M standard for securely erasing data from a hard disk. Highly confidential information should be wiped using this method.
- 4 Touch **Yes** to proceed with disk wiping.

Notes:

- A status bar will indicate the progress of the disk wiping task.
- Disk wiping can take from several minutes to more than an hour, during which the printer will be unavailable for other user tasks.

- 5 Touch **Back > Exit Config Menu**.

The printer will perform a power-on reset, and then return to normal operating mode.

Configuring printer hard disk encryption

Enable hard disk encryption to prevent loss of sensitive data in the event the printer or its hard disk is stolen.

Note: Some printer models may not have a printer hard disk installed.

Using the Embedded Web Server

- 1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

Notes:

- View the printer IP address on the printer home screen. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

- 2 Click **Settings > Security > Disk Encryption**.

Note: Disk Encryption appears in the Security Menu only when a formatted, non-defective printer hard disk is installed.

3 From the Disk encryption menu, select **Enable**.

Notes:

- Enabling disk encryption will erase the contents of the printer hard disk.
- Disk encryption can take from several minutes to more than an hour, during which the printer will be unavailable for other user tasks.

4 Click **Submit**.

Using the printer control panel

1 Turn off the printer.

2 Hold down **2** and **6** while turning the printer on. Release the buttons only when the screen with the progress bar appears.

The printer performs a power-on sequence, and then the Configuration menu appears. When the printer is fully turned on, a list of functions appears on the printer display.

3 Touch **Disk Encryption > Enable**.

Note: Enabling disk encryption will erase the contents of the printer hard disk.

4 Touch **Yes** to proceed with disk wiping.

Notes:

- Do not turn off the printer during the encryption process. Doing so may result in loss of data.
- Disk encryption can take from several minutes to more than an hour, during which the printer will be unavailable for other user tasks.
- A status bar will indicate the progress of the disk wiping task. After the disk has been encrypted, the printer will return to the Enable/Disable screen.

5 Touch **Back > Exit Config Menu**.

The printer will perform a power-on reset, and then return to normal operating mode.

Finding printer security information

In high-security environments, it may be necessary to take additional steps to make sure that confidential data stored in the printer cannot be accessed by unauthorized persons. For more information, visit the [Lexmark security Web page](#).

You can also see the *Embedded Web Server — Security: Administrator's Guide* for additional information:

- 1** Go to www.lexmark.com, and then navigate to **Support & Downloads** > select your printer.
- 2** Click the **Manuals** tab, and then select *Embedded Web Server — Security: Administrator's Guide*.

Maintaining the printer

Periodically, certain tasks are required to maintain optimum print quality.

Storing supplies

Choose a cool, clean storage area for the printer supplies. Store supplies right side up in their original packing until you are ready to use them.

Do not expose supplies to:

- Direct sunlight
- Temperatures above 35°C (95°F)
- High humidity above 80%
- Salty air
- Corrosive gases
- Heavy dust

Cleaning printer parts

Cleaning the printer

Note: You may need to perform this task after every few months.

Warning—Potential Damage: Damage to the printer caused by improper handling is not covered by the printer warranty.

- 1 Make sure that the printer is turned off and unplugged from the electrical outlet.



CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD: To avoid the risk of electrical shock when cleaning the exterior of the printer, unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet and disconnect all cables from the printer before proceeding.

- 2 Remove paper from the standard bin, multipurpose feeder, and manual feeder.
- 3 Remove any dust, lint, and pieces of paper around the printer using a soft brush or vacuum.
- 4 Dampen a clean, lint-free cloth with water, and use it to wipe the outside of the printer.

Warning—Potential Damage: Do not use household cleaners or detergents, as they may damage the finish of the printer.

- 5 Make sure all areas of the printer are dry before sending a new print job.

Cleaning the scanner glass

Clean the scanner glass if you encounter print quality problems, such as streaks on copied or scanned images.

- 1 Slightly dampen a soft, lint-free cloth or paper towel with water.
- 2 Open the scanner cover.



- 3 Clean all the areas shown, and then let them dry.



1	White underside of the ADF cover
2	White underside of the scanner cover
3	Scanner glass
4	ADF glass

- 4 Close the scanner cover.

Checking the status of parts and supplies

Checking the status of parts and supplies on the printer control panel

From the home screen, navigate to:

Status/Supplies > View Supplies

Checking the status of parts and supplies from the Embedded Web Server

Note: Make sure the computer and the printer are connected to the same network.

- 1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

Notes:

- View the printer IP address on the home screen. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

- 2 Click **Device Status > More Details**.

Estimated number of remaining pages

The estimated number of remaining pages is based on the recent printing history of the printer. Its accuracy may vary significantly and is dependent on many factors, such as actual document content, print quality settings, and other printer settings.

The accuracy of the estimated number of remaining pages may decrease when the actual printing consumption is different from the historical printing consumption. Consider the variable level of accuracy before purchasing or replacing supplies based on the estimate. Until an adequate print history is obtained on the printer, initial estimates assume future supplies consumption based on the International Organization for Standardization* test methods and page content.

* Average continuous black or composite CMY declared cartridge yield in accordance with ISO/IEC 19798.

Ordering supplies

To order supplies in the U.S., contact Lexmark at 1-800-539-6275 for information about Lexmark authorized supplies dealers in your area. In other countries or regions, visit the Lexmark Web site at www.lexmark.com or contact the place where you purchased the printer.

Note: All life estimates for printer supplies assume printing on letter- or A4-size plain paper.

Using genuine Lexmark parts and supplies

Your Lexmark printer is designed to function best with genuine Lexmark supplies and parts. Use of third-party supplies or parts may affect the performance, reliability, or life of the printer and its imaging components. Use of third-party supplies or parts can affect warranty coverage. Damage caused by the use of third-party supplies or parts is not covered by the warranty. All life indicators are designed to function with Lexmark supplies and parts, and may deliver unpredictable results if third-party supplies or parts are used. Imaging component usage beyond the intended life may damage your Lexmark printer or its associated components.

Ordering toner cartridges

Notes:

- The estimated cartridge yield is based on the ISO/IEC 19798 standard.
- Extremely low print coverage for extended periods of time may negatively affect actual yield and may cause cartridge parts to fail prior to exhaustion of toner.

Return Program cartridges

Item	United States and Canada	European Union (EU), European Economic Area (EEA), and Switzerland	Rest of the world
Return Program toner cartridges			
Black	801K	802K	808K
Cyan	801C	802C	808C
Magenta	801M	802M	808M
Yellow	801Y	802Y	808Y
Standard Yield Return Program toner cartridges			
Black	801SK	802SK	808SK
Cyan	801SC	802SC	808SC
Magenta	801SM	802SM	808SM
Yellow	801SY	802SY	808SY
High Yield Return Program toner cartridges			
Black	801HK	802HK	808HK
Cyan	801HC	802HC	808HC
For more information on countries located in each region, visit www.lexmark.com/regions .			

Item	United States and Canada	European Union (EU), European Economic Area (EEA), and Switzerland	Rest of the world
Magenta	801HM	802HM	808HM
Yellow	801HY	802HY	808HY
For more information on countries located in each region, visit www.lexmark.com/regions .			

Item	Worldwide
Standard Yield regular toner cartridges	
Black	800S1
Cyan	800S2
Magenta	800S3
Yellow	800S4
High Yield regular toner cartridges	
Black	800H1
Cyan	800H2
Magenta	800H3
Yellow	800H4
For more information on countries located in each region, visit www.lexmark.com/regions .	

Ordering imaging kits

Item	All countries and regions
Black imaging kit	700Z1
Color imaging kit	700Z5

Ordering a maintenance kit

Notes:

- Using certain types of paper may require more frequent replacement of the maintenance kit.
- The fuser and transfer module are included in the maintenance kit and can also be individually ordered and replaced, if necessary.
- To replace the maintenance kit, contact customer support at <http://support.lexmark.com> or your service representative.

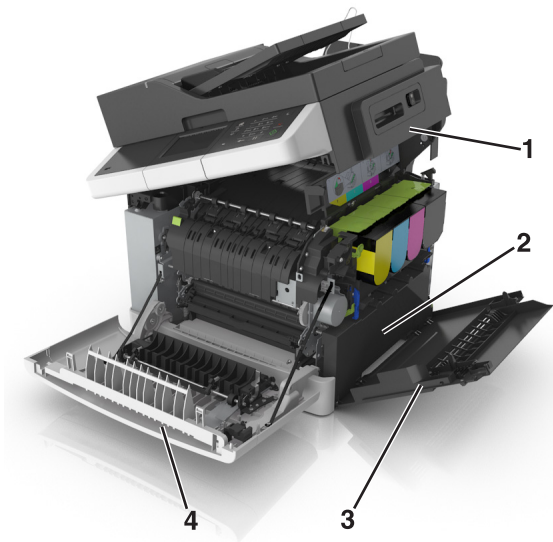
Part name	Type	Supply number
Maintenance kit	115 V	40X7615
	220 V	40X7616
	100 V	40X7617

Ordering a waste toner bottle

Item	All countries and regions
Waste toner bottle	C540X75G


Replacing supplies

Replacing the waste toner bottle



1	Top door
2	Waste toner bottle
3	Right side cover
4	Front door

- 1 Unpack the replacement waste toner bottle.
- 2 Open the front door.

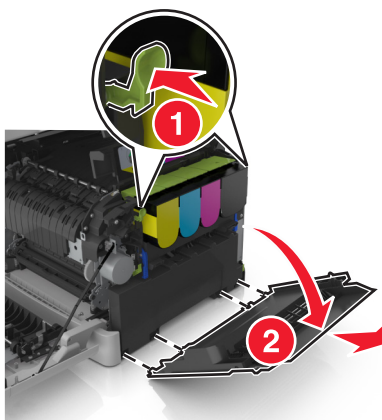
 **CAUTION—HOT SURFACE:** The inside of the printer might be hot. To reduce the risk of injury from a hot component, allow the surface to cool before touching.



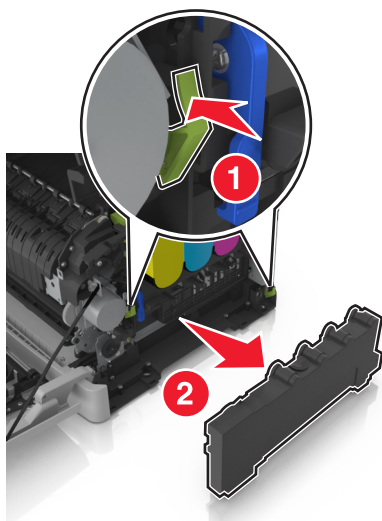
3 Open the top door.



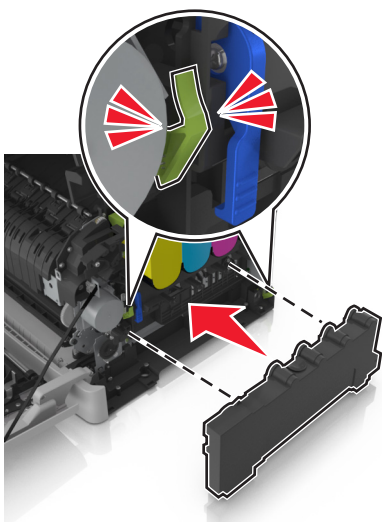
4 Remove the right side cover.



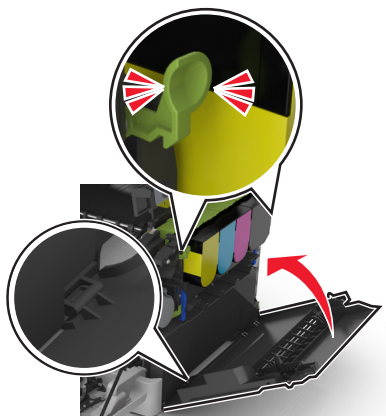
- 5 Press the green levers on each side of the waste toner bottle, and then remove the waste toner bottle.



- 6 Seal the used waste toner bottle in the enclosed packaging.
For more information, see [“Recycling Lexmark products” on page 205.](#)
- 7 Insert the replacement waste toner bottle.



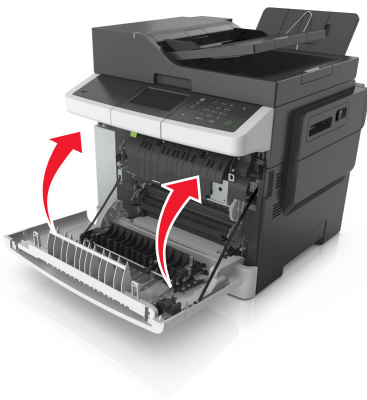
8 Insert the right side cover.



9 Slide and hold the release latch on the right side of the printer, and then slowly close the top door.



10 Close the front door.

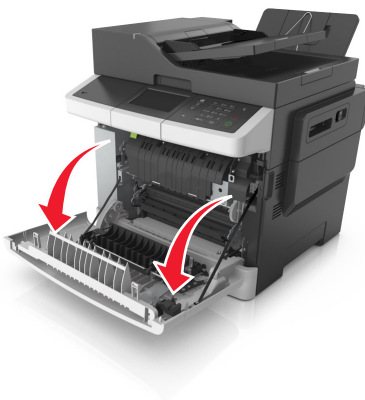


Replacing a black and color imaging kit

- 1 Open the front door.



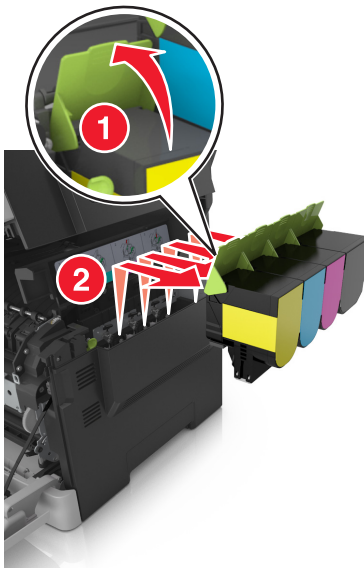
CAUTION—HOT SURFACE: The inside of the printer might be hot. To reduce the risk of injury from a hot component, allow the surface to cool before touching.



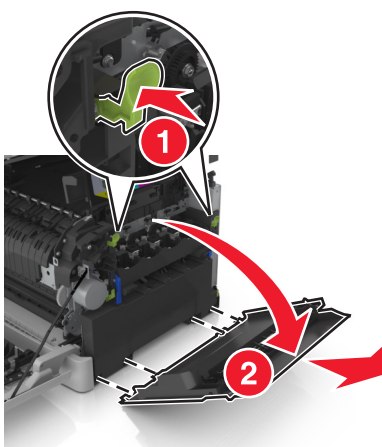
- 2 Open the top door.



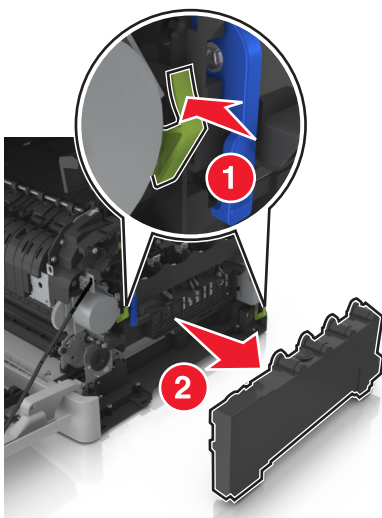
- 3** Remove the toner cartridges by lifting the handles, and then gently pulling them away from the imaging kit.



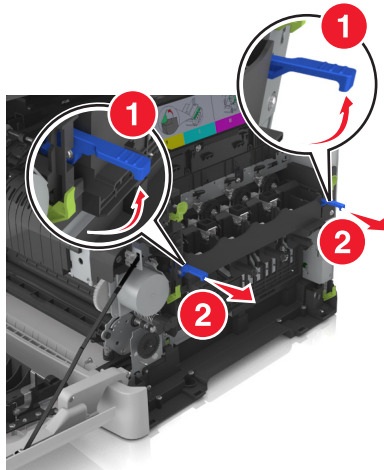
- 4** Remove the right side cover.



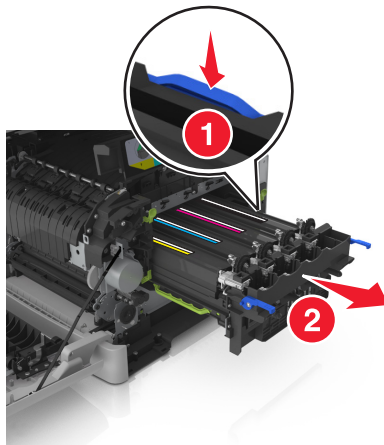
- 5** Press the green levers on each side of the waste toner bottle, and then remove the waste toner bottle.



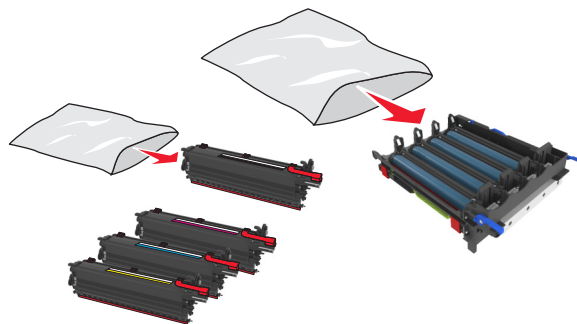
6 Lift the blue levers on the imaging kit, and then pull the imaging kit until it stops.



7 Press down the blue lever, and then grasp the green handles on the sides to pull out the imaging kit.



8 Unpack the replacement black and color imaging kit.

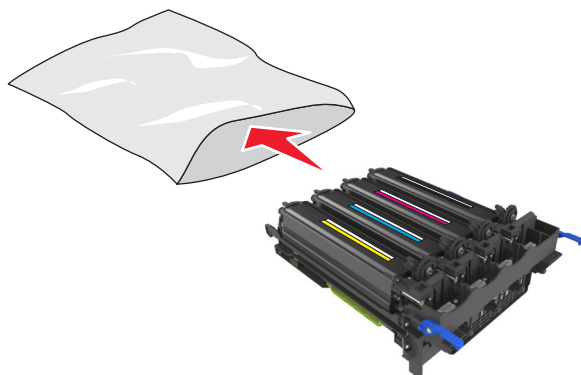


Notes:

- The color imaging kit includes the imaging kit and the cyan, magenta, yellow, and black developer units.
- The black imaging kit includes the imaging kit and the black developer unit.

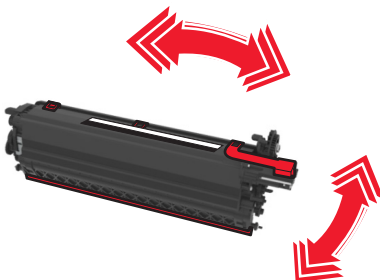
9 Seal the used imaging kit in the bag that the replacement imaging kit came in.

For more information, see [“Recycling Lexmark products” on page 205](#).

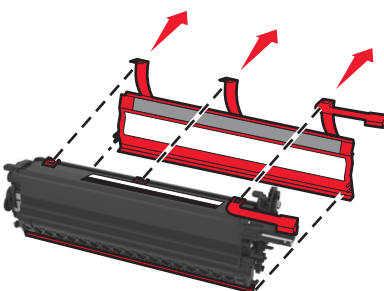


Note: When replacing the black imaging kit, save the cyan, magenta, and yellow developer units. Dispose only the black developer unit.

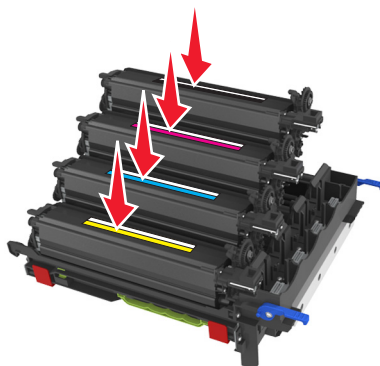
- 10** Gently shake the yellow, cyan, magenta, and black developer units side-to-side.



- 11** Remove the red packing strip and the attached fabric from the developer units.

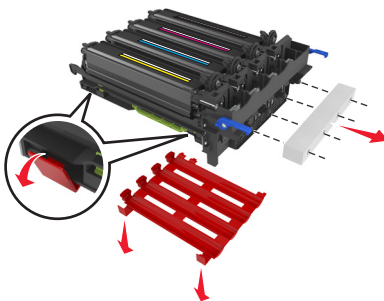


- 12** Gently insert the yellow, cyan, magenta, and black developer units.

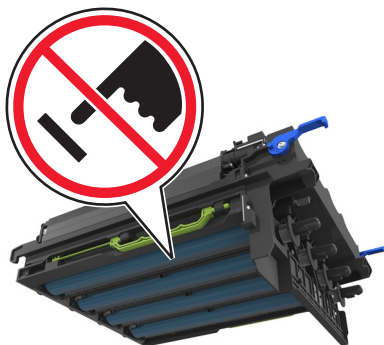


Note: Make sure each developer unit is inserted into the matching color slot.

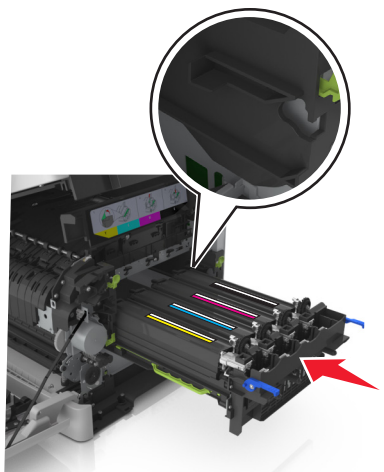
- 13** Remove the red packing strip from the imaging kit.



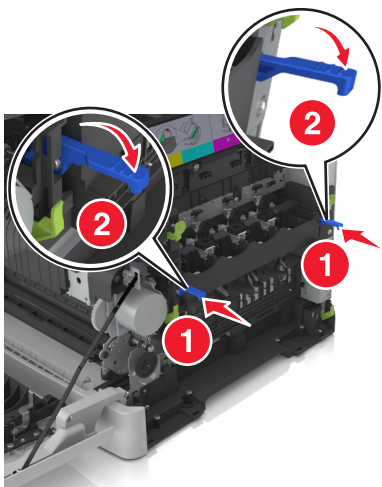
Warning—Potential Damage: Do not touch the shiny photoconductor drum under the imaging kit. Doing so may affect the quality of future print jobs.



- 14** Align and then insert the imaging kit.

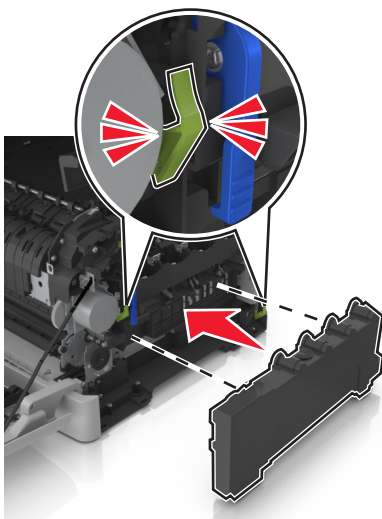


- 15** Gently but firmly push the blue levers down until the imaging kit fits into place.

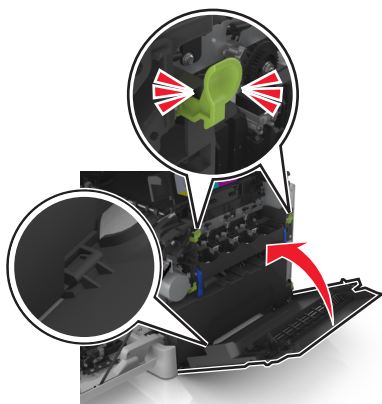


Note: Make sure that the imaging kit is fully seated.

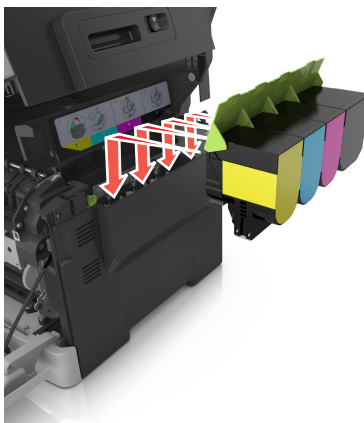
- 16** Insert the waste toner bottle.



- 17** Insert the right side cover.



18 Insert the toner cartridges.



19 Slide and hold the release latch on the right side of the printer, and then slowly close the top door.



20 Close the front door.

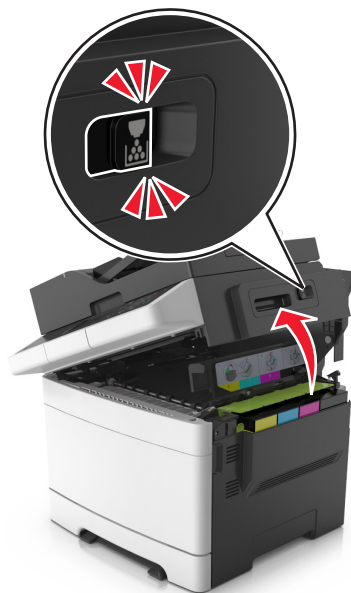


Replacing toner cartridges

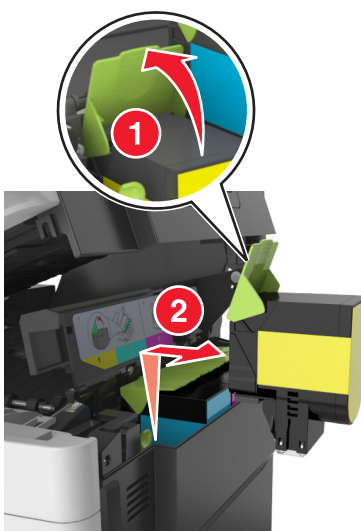
Warning—Potential Damage: Damage caused by use of a non-Lexmark toner cartridge is not covered under warranty.

Note: A reduced print quality may result from using non-Lexmark toner cartridges.

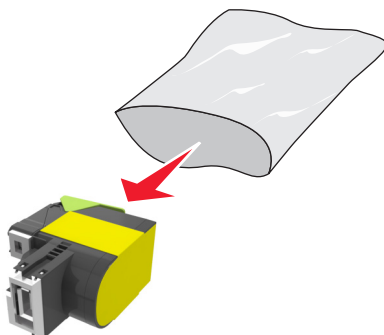
- 1 Open the top door.



- 2 Remove the toner cartridge by lifting the handle, and then gently pulling it away from the imaging kit.



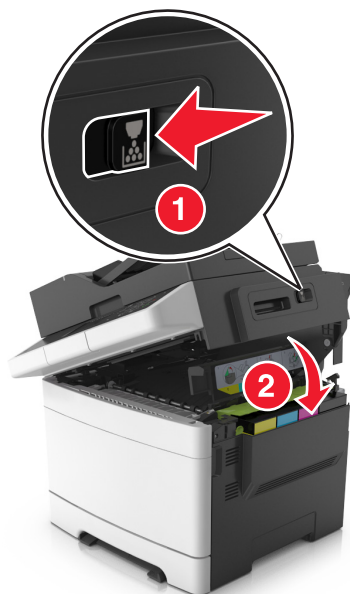
- 3** Unpack the new toner cartridge, and then remove its packaging.



- 4** Align the new toner cartridge, and then press the cartridge down until it fits into place.



- 5** Slide and hold the release latch on the right side of the printer, and then slowly close the top door.




- 6** Seal the used toner cartridge in the bag that the replacement toner cartridge came in.
For more information, see [“Recycling Lexmark products” on page 205](#).

Replacing a developer unit

Replace the developer unit when a print quality defect occurs or when damage occurs to the printer.

- 1 Open the front door.

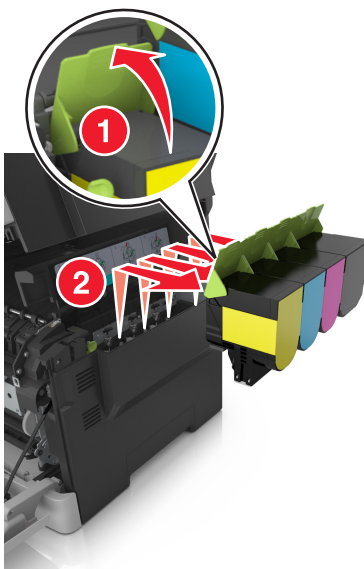
 **CAUTION—HOT SURFACE:** The inside of the printer might be hot. To reduce the risk of injury from a hot component, allow the surface to cool before touching.



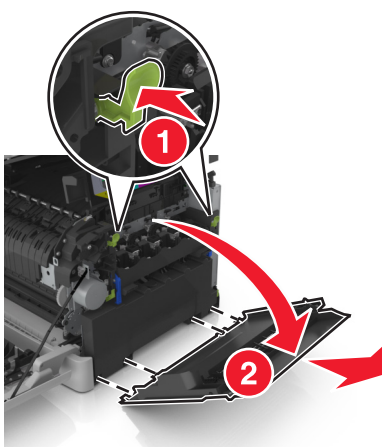
- 2 Open the top door.



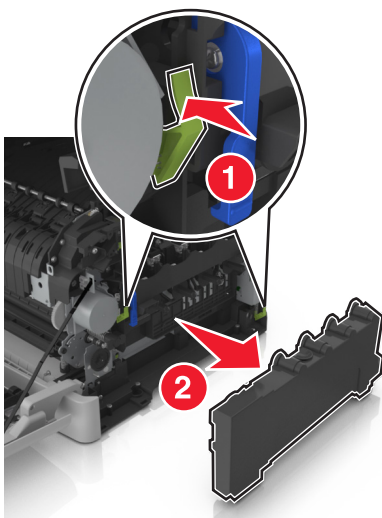
- 3** Lift the toner cartridge handle, and then gently pull it from the imaging kit.



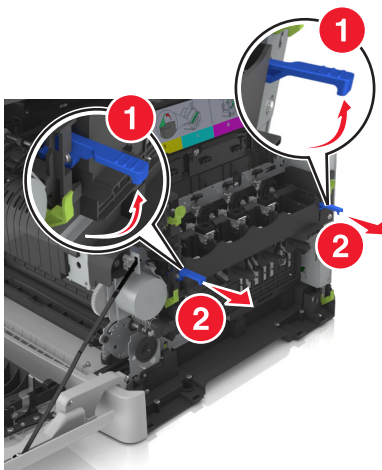
- 4** Remove the right side cover.



- 5** Press the green levers on each side of the waste toner bottle, and then remove the waste toner bottle.

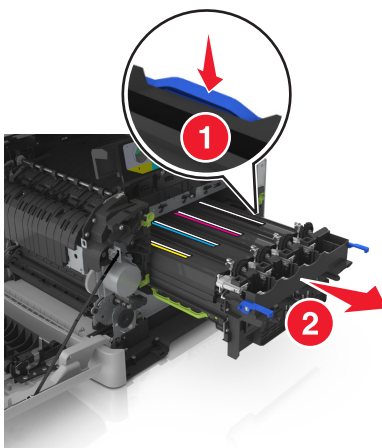


- 6 Lift the blue levers on the imaging kit, and then pull the imaging kit until it stops.

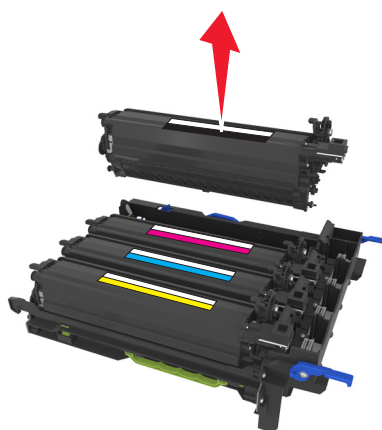


- 7 Press down the blue lever, and then grasp the green handles on the sides to pull out the imaging kit.

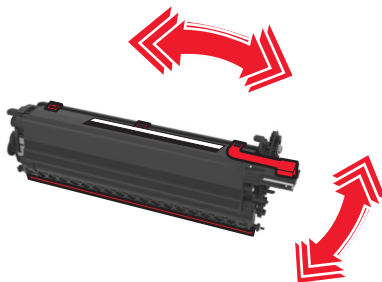
Warning—Potential Damage: Do not touch the underside of the imaging kit. Doing so could damage the imaging kit.



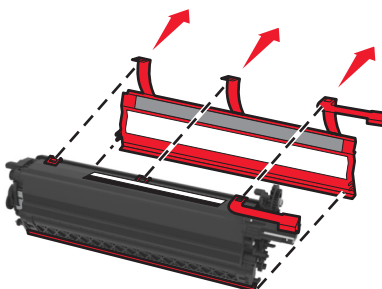
- 8 Remove the used developer unit.



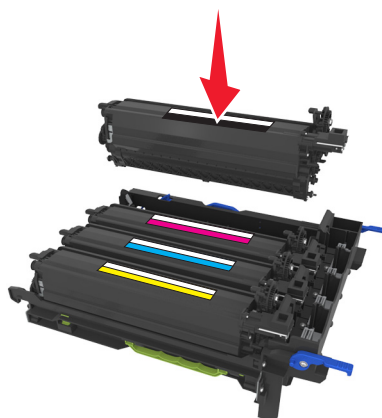
- 9** Gently shake the replacement developer unit side-to-side before removing it from its packaging.



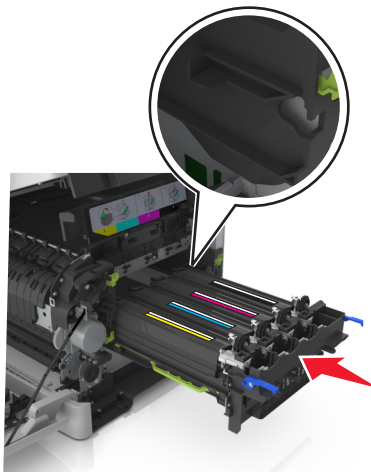
- 10** Remove the red shipping cover from the developer unit.



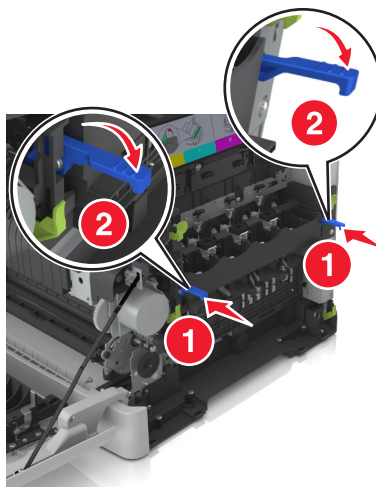
- 11** Insert the developer unit.



12 Align and then insert the imaging kit.

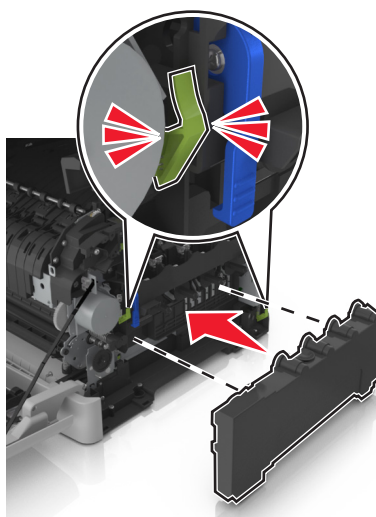


13 Gently but firmly push the blue levers down until the imaging kit fits into place.

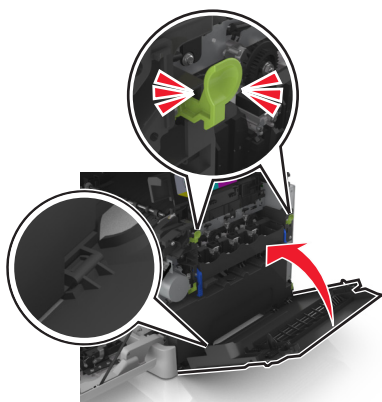


Note: Make sure that the imaging kit is fully seated.

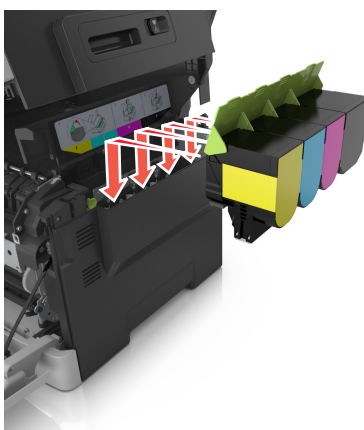
14 Replace the waste toner bottle.



15 Insert the right side cover.



16 Insert the toner cartridges.



17 Slide and hold the release latch on the right side of the printer, and then slowly close the top door.



18 Close the front door.



19 Seal the used developer unit in the bag that the replacement developer unit came in.

For more information, see [“Recycling Lexmark products” on page 205](#).

Moving the printer

Before moving the printer

CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY: The printer weight is greater than 18 kg (40 lb) and requires two or more trained personnel to lift it safely.

CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY: Before moving the printer, follow these guidelines to avoid personal injury or printer damage:

- Turn the printer off using the power switch, and then unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet.
- Disconnect all cords and cables from the printer before moving it.
- Lift the printer off the optional tray, and then set it aside instead of trying to lift the tray and printer at the same time.

Note: Use the handholds located on both sides of the printer to lift it.

Warning—Potential Damage: Damage to the printer caused by improper moving is not covered by the printer warranty.

Moving the printer to another location

The printer and its hardware options can be safely moved to another location by following these precautions:

- Any cart used to move the printer must have a surface able to support the full footprint of the printer.
- Any cart used to move the hardware options must have a surface able to support the dimensions of the hardware options.
- Keep the printer in an upright position.
- Avoid severe jarring movements.

Shipping the printer

When shipping the printer, use the original packaging.

Managing the printer

Finding advanced networking and administrator information

This chapter covers basic administrative support tasks using the Embedded Web Server. For more advanced system support tasks, see the *Networking Guide* on the *Software and Documentation* CD or the *Embedded Web Server — Security: Administrator's Guide* on the Lexmark support Web site at <http://support.lexmark.com>.

Checking the virtual display

- 1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

Notes:

- View the printer IP address in the TCP/IP section in the Network/Ports menu. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

- 2 Check the virtual display that appears at the top left corner of the screen.

The virtual display works as an actual display would work on a printer control panel.

Setting up e-mail alerts

Configure the printer to send you e-mail alerts when the supplies are getting low or when the paper needs to be changed or added, or when there is a paper jam.

- 1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

Notes:

- View the printer IP address on the printer home screen. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

- 2 Click **Settings**.

- 3 From the Other Settings menu, click **E-mail Alert Setup**.

- 4 Select the items you want to be notified on, and then type the e-mail addresses.

- 5 Click **Submit**.

Note: For information on setting up the e-mail server, contact your system support person.

Viewing reports

You can view some reports from the Embedded Web Server. These reports are useful for assessing the status of the printer, network, and supplies.

- 1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

Notes:

- View the printer IP address on the printer home screen. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

2 Click **Reports**, and then click the type of report you want to view.

Configuring supply notifications from the Embedded Web Server

You can determine how you would like to be notified when supplies run nearly low, low, very low, or reach their end-of-life by setting the selectable alerts.

Notes:

- You can select alerts for toner cartridges, imaging kit, maintenance kit, and waste toner bottle.
- All alerts can be set for nearly low, low, and very low supply conditions. Not all alerts can be set for the end-of-life supply condition. E-mail alert is available for all supply conditions.
- The percentage of estimated remaining supply that prompts the alert can be set on some supplies for some supply conditions.

1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

Notes:

- View the printer IP address in the TCP/IP section in the Network/Ports menu. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

2 Click **Settings > Print Settings > Supply Notifications**.

3 From the drop-down menu for each supply, select one of the following notification options:

Notification	Description
Off	The normal printer behavior for all supplies occurs.
E-mail Only	The printer generates an e-mail when the supply condition is reached. The status of the supply appears on the menus page and status page.
Warning	The printer shows the warning message and generates an email about the status of the supply. The printer does not stop when the supply condition is reached.
Continuable Stop ¹	The printer stops processing jobs when the supply condition is reached. The user needs to press a button to continue printing.
Non Continuable Stop ^{1,2}	The printer stops when the supply condition is reached. The supply must be replaced to continue printing.
¹ The printer generates an e-mail about the status of the supply when supply notification is enabled.	
² The printer stops when some supplies become empty to prevent damage.	

4 Click **Submit**.

Modifying confidential print settings

Note: This feature is available only in network printers or printers connected to print servers.

- 1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

Notes:

- View the printer IP address in the TCP/IP section in the Network/Ports menu. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

- 2 Click **Settings** tab > **Security** > **Confidential Print Setup**.

- 3 Modify the settings:

- Set a maximum number of PIN entry attempts. When a user exceeds a specific number of PIN entry attempts, all of the jobs for that user are deleted.
- Set an expiration time for confidential print jobs. When a user has not printed the jobs within the specified time, all of the jobs for that user are deleted.

- 4 Save the modified settings.

Copying printer settings to other printers

Note: This feature is available only in network printers.

- 1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

Notes:

- View the printer IP address in the TCP/IP section in the Network/Ports menu. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

- 2 Click the **Copy Printer Settings**.

- 3 To change the language, select a language from the drop-down menu, and then click **Click here to submit language**.

- 4 Click **Printer Settings**.

- 5 Type the IP addresses of the source and target printers in their appropriate fields.

Note: If you want to add or remove a target printer, then click **Add Target IP** or **Remove Target IP**.

- 6 Click **Copy Printer Settings**.

Restoring factory default settings

If you want to keep a list of the current menu settings for reference, then print a menu settings page before restoring the factory default settings. For more information, see [“Printing a menu settings page” on page 43](#).

If you want a more comprehensive method of restoring the printer factory default settings, then perform the Wipe All Settings option. For more information, see [“Erasing non-volatile memory” on page 208](#).

Warning—Potential Damage: Restoring factory defaults returns most printer settings to the original factory default settings. Exceptions include the display language, custom sizes and messages, and network/port menu settings. All downloads stored in the RAM are deleted. Downloads stored in the flash memory or in a printer hard disk are not affected.

From the home screen, navigate to:



> **Settings** > **General Settings** > **Factory Defaults** > **Restore Now** >



Clearing jams

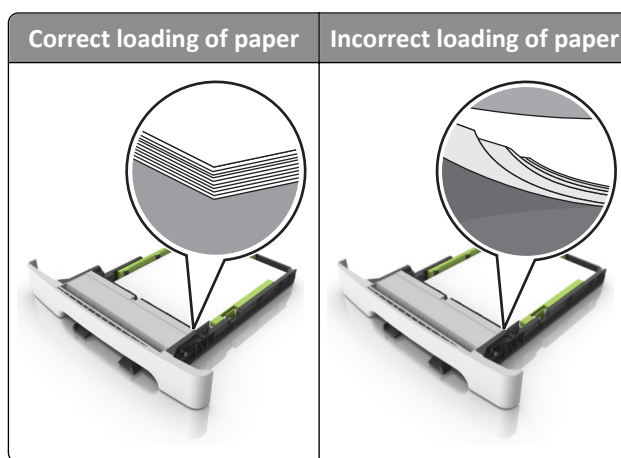
By carefully selecting paper and specialty media and loading it properly, you should be able to avoid most jams. If jams occur, then follow the steps outlined in this chapter.

Warning—Potential Damage: Never use any tool to remove a jam. Doing so could permanently damage the fuser.

Avoiding jams

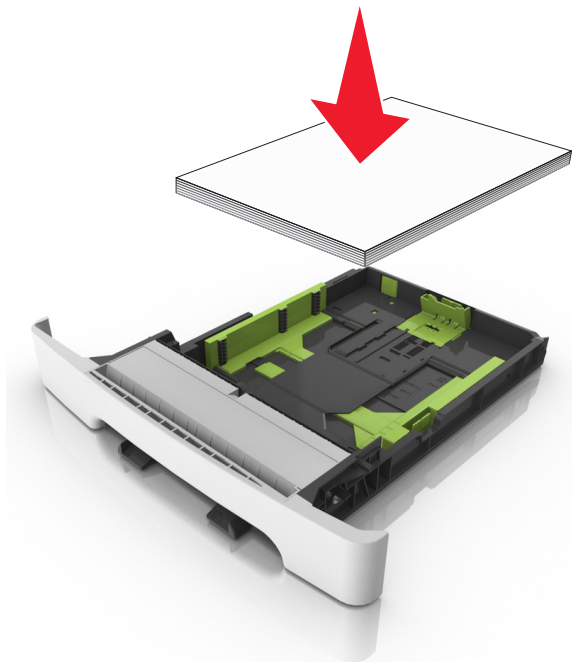
Load paper properly

- Make sure paper lies flat in the tray.



- Do not remove a tray while the printer is printing.
- Do not load a tray while the printer is printing. Load it before printing, or wait for a prompt to load it.
- Do not load too much paper. Make sure the stack height is below the maximum paper fill indicator.

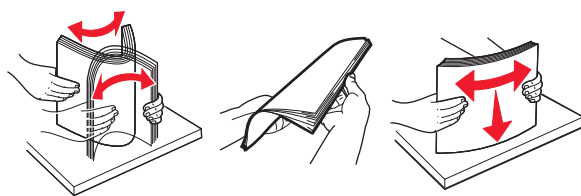
- Do not slide the paper into the tray. Load paper as shown in the illustration.



- Make sure the guides in the tray or the multipurpose feeder are properly positioned and are not pressing tightly against the paper or envelopes.
- Push the tray firmly into the printer after loading paper.

Use recommended paper

- Use only recommended paper or specialty media.
- Do not load wrinkled, creased, damp, bent, or curled paper.
- Flex, fan, and straighten paper before loading it.

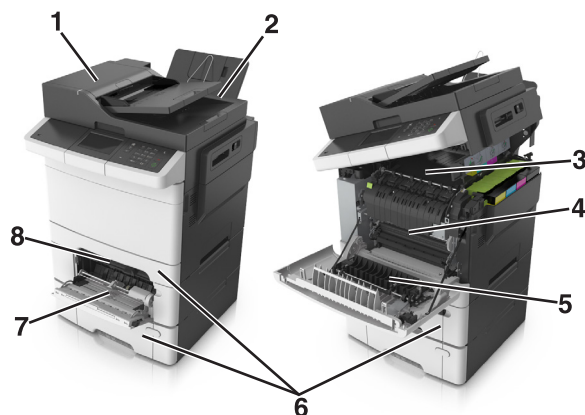


- Do not use paper that has been cut or trimmed by hand.
- Do not mix paper sizes, weights, or types in the same tray.
- Make sure the paper size and type are set correctly on the computer or printer control panel.
- Store paper according to manufacturer recommendations.

Understanding jam messages and locations

When a jam occurs, a message indicating the jam location and information to clear the jam appears on the printer display. Open the doors, covers, and trays indicated on the display to remove the jam.

Note: When Jam Recovery is set to On or Auto, the printer reprints jammed pages. However, Auto does not guarantee that the page will print.



	Jam location	Message on the display	What to do
1	Automatic document feeder (ADF)	[x]-page jam, open automatic feeder top cover [28y.xx]	Remove all paper from the ADF tray, and then remove the jammed paper.
2	Standard bin	[x]-page jam, clear standard bin [203.xx]	Remove the jammed paper.
3	Fuser	[x]-page jam, open front door to clear fuser [202.xx]	Open the front door, then pull the tab and hold the fuser cover down, and then remove the jammed paper.
4	Front door	[x]-page jam, open front door [20y.xx]	Open the front door, and then remove the jammed paper.
5	Duplex area	[x]-page jam, open front door to clear duplex [23y.xx]	Open the front door, and then remove the jammed paper.
6	Tray [x]	[x]-page jam, open tray [x] [24y.xx]	Pull out the indicated tray, and then remove the jammed paper.
7	Multipurpose feeder	[x]-page jam, clear multipurpose feeder [250.xx]	Push the paper release lever to lift the paper rollers, and then remove the jammed paper.
8	Manual feeder	[x]-page jam, clear manual feeder [251.xx]	Remove the jammed paper.

[x]-page jam, clear standard bin [203.xx]

- 1 Open the top door.



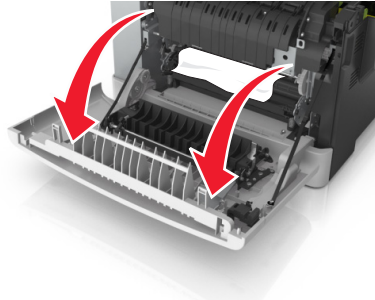
- 2 Firmly grasp the jammed paper on each side, and then gently pull it out.

Note: Make sure all paper fragments are removed.



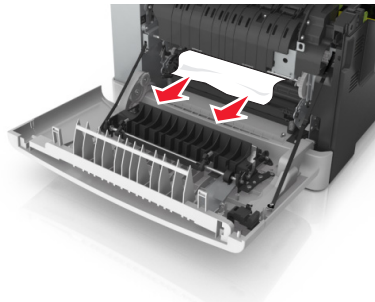
3 Open the front door.

CAUTION—HOT SURFACE: The inside of the printer might be hot. To reduce the risk of injury from a hot component, allow the surface to cool before touching.

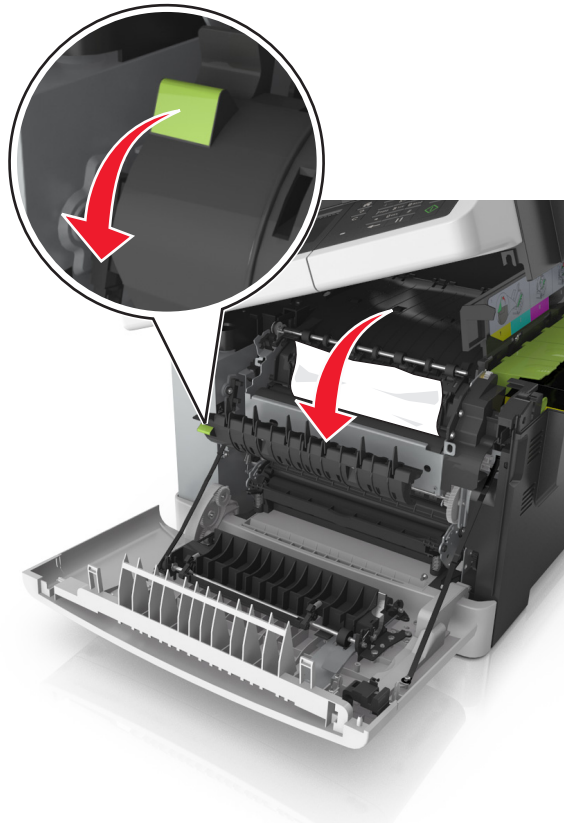


- a** If there is a jammed paper under the fuser, then firmly grasp the paper on each side, and then gently pull it out.

Note: Make sure all paper fragments are removed.

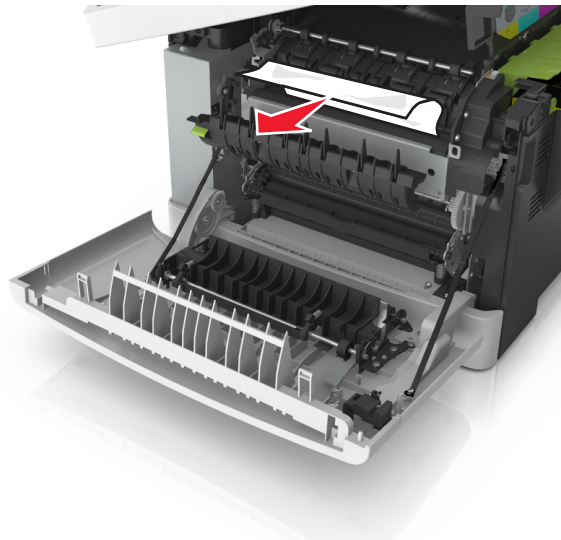


- b** Pull the green lever to open the fuser cover.



- c** If there is a jammed paper in the fuser, then hold down the fuser cover, and then remove the paper.

Note: Make sure all paper fragments are removed.





- 4 Slide and hold the release latch on the right side of the printer, and then slowly close the top door.



- 5 Close the front door.



- 6 From the printer control panel, touch  to clear the message and continue printing. For non-touch-screen printer models, select **Next > Clear the jam, press OK**, and then press  to confirm.

[x]-page jam, open front door to clear fuser [202.xx]

- 1 Open the front door.



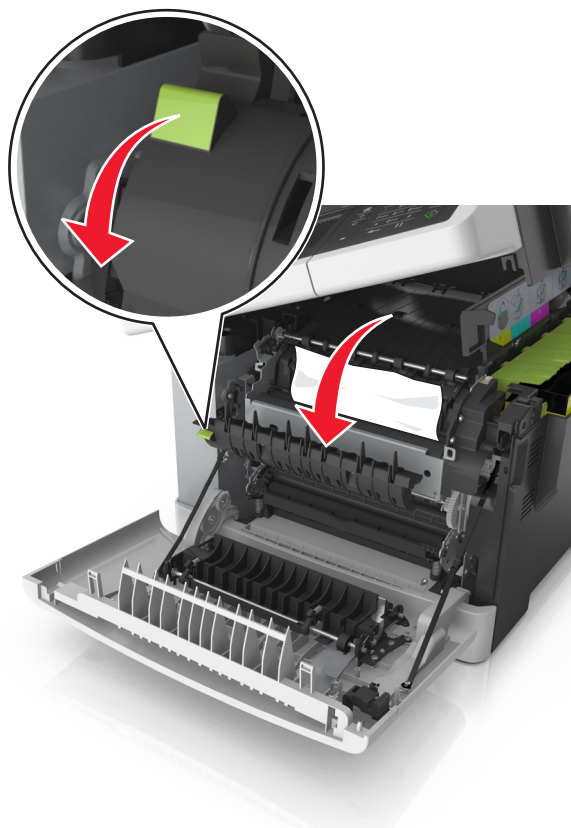
CAUTION—HOT SURFACE: The inside of the printer might be hot. To reduce the risk of injury from a hot component, allow the surface to cool before touching.



2 Open the top door.

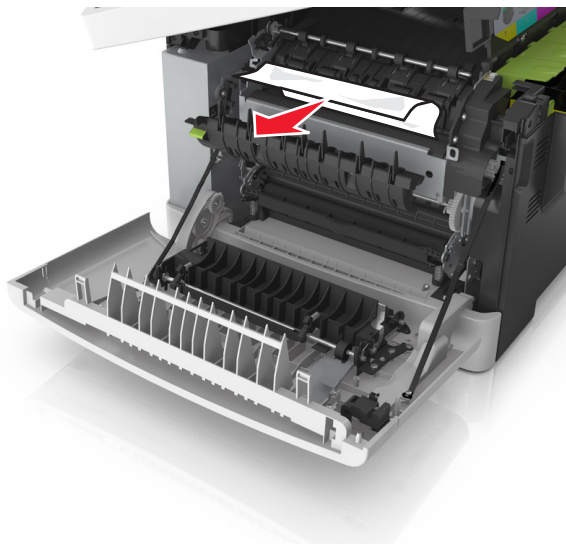


- 3 Pull the green lever to open the fuser cover.



- 4 Hold down the fuser cover, and then remove the jammed paper.

Note: Make sure all paper fragments are removed.





- 5 Slide and hold the release latch on the right side of the printer, and then slowly close the top door.



- 6 Close the front door.



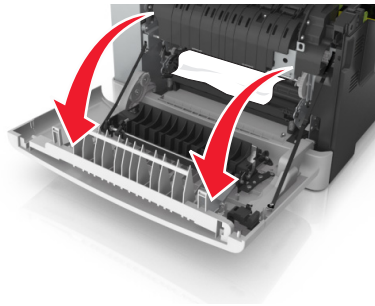
- 7 From the printer control panel, touch  to clear the message and continue printing. For non-touch-screen printer models, select **Next > Clear the jam, press OK**, and then press  to confirm.

[x]-page jam, open front door [20y.xx]

- 1 Open the front door.

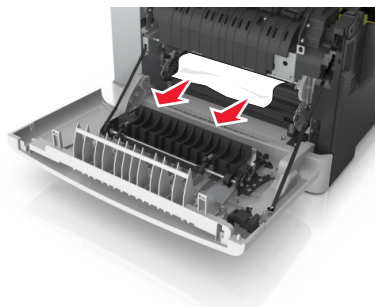


CAUTION—HOT SURFACE: The inside of the printer might be hot. To reduce the risk of injury from a hot component, allow the surface to cool before touching.

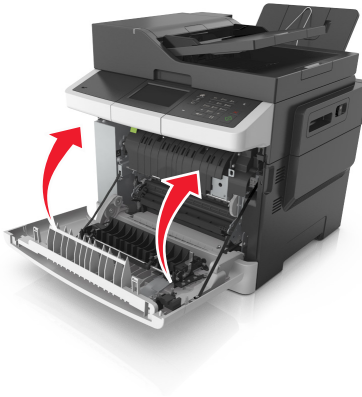




- 2 Firmly grasp the jammed paper on each side, and then gently pull it out.

Note: Make sure all paper fragments are removed.



- 3 Close the front door.



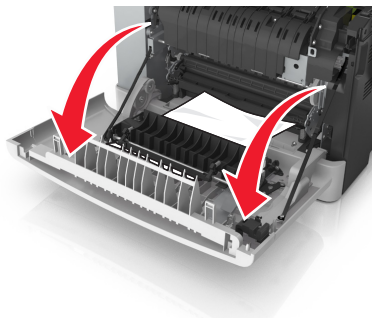
- 4 From the printer control panel, touch  to clear the message and continue printing. For non-touch-screen printer models, select **Next > Clear the jam, press OK**, and then press  to confirm.

[x]-page jam, open front door to clear duplex [23y.xx]

- 1 Open the front door.

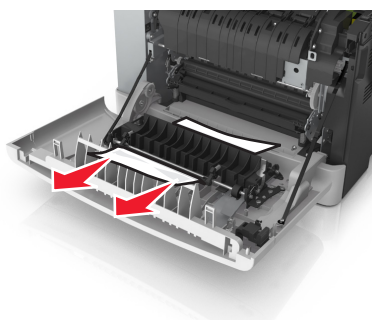


CAUTION—HOT SURFACE: The inside of the printer might be hot. To reduce the risk of injury from a hot component, allow the surface to cool before touching.





- 2 Firmly grasp the jammed paper on each side, and then gently pull it out.

Note: Make sure all paper fragments are removed.



- 3 Close the front door.

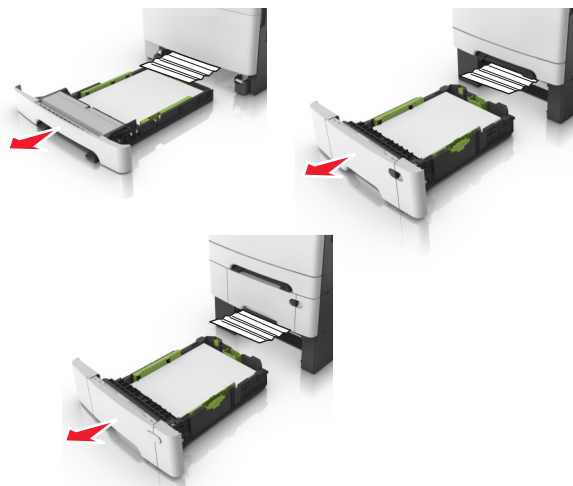


- 4 From the printer control panel, touch  to clear the message and continue printing. For non-touch-screen printer models, select **Next** > **Clear the jam**, press **OK**, and then press  to confirm.

[x]-page jam, open tray [x] [24y.xx]

- 1 Pull out the tray completely.

Note: The message on the printer display indicates the tray where the jammed paper is located.





- 2** Firmly grasp the jammed paper on each side, and then gently pull it out.

Note: Make sure all paper fragments are removed.

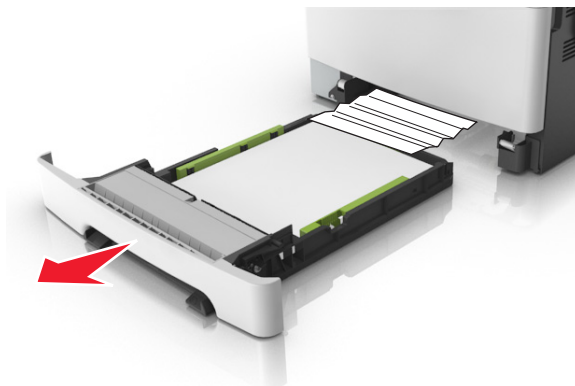


- 3** Insert the tray.

- 4** From the printer control panel, touch  to clear the message and continue printing. For non-touch-screen printer models, select **Next > Clear the jam, press OK**, and then press  to confirm.

[x]-page jam, clear manual feeder [251.xx]

- 1 Pull out the standard 250-sheet tray (Tray 1) and manual feeder.





- 2 Firmly grasp the jammed paper on each side, and then gently pull it out.

Note: Make sure all paper fragments are removed.



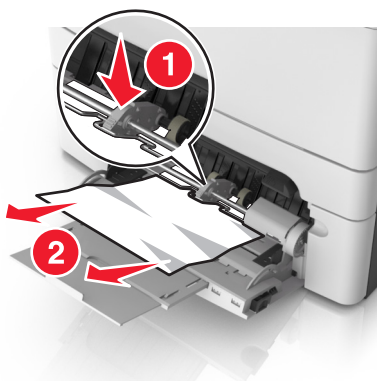
- 3 Insert the tray.

- 4 From the printer control panel, touch  to clear the message and continue printing. For non-touch-screen printer models, select **Next > Clear the jam, press OK**, and then press  to confirm.

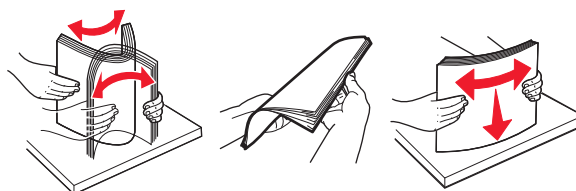
[x]-page jam, clear multipurpose feeder [250.xx]

- 1 Push the paper release lever in the multipurpose feeder to access the jammed paper, and then gently pull out the paper.

Note: Make sure all paper fragments are removed.



- 2** Flex the sheets back and forth to loosen them, and then fan them. Do not fold or crease the paper. Straighten the edges on a level surface.




- 3** Reload paper into the multipurpose feeder.



- 4 Slide the paper guide until it rests lightly against the edge of the paper stack.



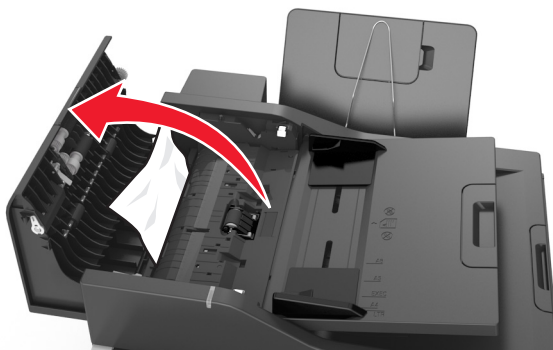
- 5 From the printer control panel, touch  to clear the message and continue printing. For non-touch-screen printer models, select **Next** > **OK** > **Clear the jam**, press **OK** > **OK**.

[x]-page jam, open automatic feeder top cover. [28y.xx]

- 1 Remove all original documents from the ADF tray.

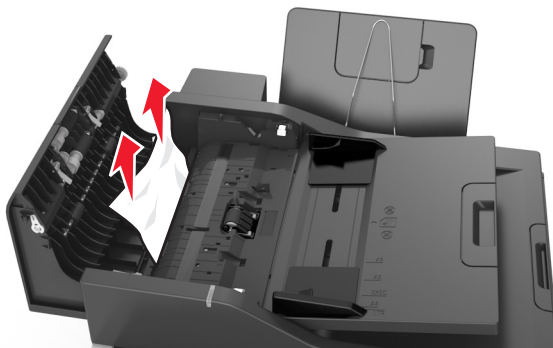
Note: The message is cleared when the pages are removed from the ADF tray.


- 2 Open the ADF cover.



- 3 Firmly grasp the jammed paper on each side, and then gently pull it out.

Note: Make sure all paper fragments are removed.



- 4 Close the ADF cover.
- 5 Straighten the edges of the original documents, then load the documents into the ADF, and then adjust the paper guide.
- 6 From the printer control panel, touch  to clear the message and continue printing. For non-touch-screen printer models, select **Next** > **OK** > **Clear the jam, press OK** > **OK**.

Troubleshooting


Understanding the printer messages

Adjusting color

Wait for the process to complete.


Change [paper source] to [custom type name]

Try one or more of the following:

- Load the correct size and type of paper in the tray, and then select **Finished changing paper** on the printer control panel to clear the message and continue printing. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.
Note: Make sure the paper size and type are specified in the Paper menu on the printer control panel.
- Cancel the print job.


Change [paper source] to [custom string]

Try one or more of the following:

- Load the correct size and type of paper in the tray, and then select **Finished changing paper** on the printer control panel to clear the message and continue printing. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.
Note: Make sure the paper size and type are specified in the Paper menu on the printer control panel.
- Cancel the print job.

Change [paper source] to [paper type] [paper size]

Try one or more of the following:




- Load the correct size and type of paper in the tray, and then select **Finished changing paper** on the printer control panel to clear the message and continue printing. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.
Note: Make sure the paper size and type are specified in the Paper menu on the printer control panel.
- Cancel the print job.

Close door



Make sure the right side cover is installed, and then close the front and top doors to clear the message.

Close flatbed cover and load originals if restarting job [2yy.xx]


From the printer control panel, try one or more of the following:

- Select **Scan from automatic feeder**, and then press  to continue scanning from the ADF immediately after the last successful scan job.
- Select **Scan from flatbed**, and then press  to continue scanning from the scanner glass immediately after the last successful scan job.
- Select **Finish job without further scanning**, and then press  to end the last successful scan job.


Note: This does not cancel the scan job. All successfully scanned pages will be processed further for copying or e-mailing.

- Select **Restart Job**, and then press  to restart the scan job with the same settings from the previous scan job.
- Select **Cancel Job**, and then press  to clear the message and cancel the scan job.

[Color] cartridge low [88.xy]


You may need to order a toner cartridge. If necessary, select **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.

[Color] cartridge nearly low [88.xy]

If necessary, select **Continue** on the printer control panel to clear the message and continue printing. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.



[Color] cartridge very low, [x] estimated pages remain [88.xy]

You may need to replace the toner cartridge very soon. For more information, see the “Replacing supplies” section of the *User’s Guide*.

If necessary, select **Continue** on the printer control panel to clear the message and continue printing. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.

Complex page, some data may not have printed [39]

Try one or more of the following:


- From the printer control panel, select **Continue** to ignore the message and continue printing. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.
- Cancel the current print job. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.
- Install additional printer memory.

Configuration change, some held jobs were not restored [57]

Held jobs are invalidated because of any of the following possible changes in the printer:


- The printer firmware has been updated.
- The tray for the print job is removed.
- The print job is sent from a flash drive that is no longer attached to the USB port.
- The printer hard disk contains print jobs that were stored when the hard disk was installed in a different printer model.

Note: The printer hard disk and the flash drive are supported only in select printer models.

From the printer control panel, select **Continue** to clear the message. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.

Defective flash detected [51]

Try one or more of the following:

- Replace the defective flash memory card.
- From the printer control panel, select **Continue** to ignore the message and continue printing. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.
- Cancel the current print job.

Disk full [62]

Try one or more of the following:

- From the printer control panel, touch **Continue** to clear the message and continue processing.
- Delete fonts, macros, and other data stored in the printer hard disk.
- Install a printer hard disk with larger capacity.

Disk must be formatted for use in this device

From the printer control panel, touch **Format disk** to format the printer hard disk and clear the message.

Note: Formatting deletes all the files stored in the printer hard disk.

Error reading USB drive. Remove USB.

An unsupported USB device is inserted. Remove the USB device, and then insert a supported one.

Error reading USB hub. Remove hub.

An unsupported USB hub has been inserted. Remove the USB hub, and then install a supported one.


Incompatible tray [x] [59]

Remove, and then reinstall the indicated tray to clear the message.

Incorrect paper size, open [paper source] [34]

Note: The paper source can be a tray or a feeder.

Try one or more of the following:


- Load the correct size of paper in the paper source.
- From the printer control panel, select **Continue** to clear the message and print using a different paper source. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.
- Check the length and width guides of the paper source and make sure the paper is loaded properly.
- Make sure the correct paper size and type are specified in the Printing Preferences or in the Print dialog.
- Make sure the paper size and type are specified in the Paper menu on the printer control panel.
- Make sure that the paper size is correctly set. For example, if Multipurpose Feeder Size is set to Universal, then make sure the paper is large enough for the data being printed.
- Cancel the print job.

Insert Tray [x]

Insert the indicated tray into the printer.


Insufficient memory for Flash Memory Defragment operation [37]

Try one or more of the following:

- From the printer control panel, select **Continue** to stop the defragmentation and continue printing. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.
- Delete fonts, macros, and other data from the printer memory.
- Install additional printer memory.


Insufficient memory, some Held Jobs were deleted [37]

The printer deleted some held jobs in order to process current jobs.


Select **Continue** to clear the message. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.

Insufficient memory to collate job [37]

Try one or more of the following:


- From the printer control panel, select **Continue** to print the part of the job already stored and begin collating the rest of the print job. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.
- Cancel the current print job.

Insufficient memory to support Resource Save feature [35]

Install additional printer memory or select **Continue** on the printer control panel to disable Resource Save, clear the message, and continue printing. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.


Insufficient memory, some held jobs will not be restored [37]

Try one or more of the following:

- From the printer control panel, select **Continue** to clear the message. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.
- Delete other held jobs to free up additional printer memory.

Load [paper source] with [custom type name]

Try one or more of the following:


- Load the tray or feeder with the correct size and type of paper.
- To use the tray with the correct paper size or type, select **Finished loading paper** on the printer control panel. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.

Note: If the printer detects a tray that has the correct paper type and size, then it feeds from that tray. If the printer cannot detect a tray that has the correct paper type and size, then it prints from the default paper source.

- Cancel the current job.

Load [paper source] with [custom string]

Try one or more of the following:


- Load the indicated tray or feeder with the correct size and type of paper.
- To use the tray with the correct paper size or type, select **Finished loading paper** on the printer control panel. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.

Note: If the printer finds a tray that has the correct paper type and size, then it feeds from that tray. If the printer cannot find a tray with the correct paper type and size, then it prints from the default paper source.

- Cancel the current job.

Load [paper source] with [paper size]

Try one or more of the following:


- Load the tray or feeder with the correct size of paper.
- To use the tray or feeder with the correct paper size, select **Finished loading paper** on the printer control panel. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.

Note: If the printer detects a tray that has the correct paper size, then it feeds from that tray. If the printer cannot detect a tray that has the correct paper size, then it prints from the default paper source.

- Cancel the current job.

Load [paper source] with [paper type] [paper size]

Try one or more of the following:


- Load the tray or feeder with the correct size and type of paper.
- To use the tray or feeder with the correct paper size and type, select **Finished loading paper** on the printer control panel. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.

Note: If the printer detects a tray that has the correct paper size and type, then it feeds from that tray. If the printer cannot detect a tray that has the correct paper size and type, then it prints from the default paper source.

- Cancel the current job.


Load Manual Feeder with [custom string]

Try one or more of the following:

- Load the feeder with the correct size and type of paper.
- Depending on your printer model, touch **Prompt each page, paper loaded** or press  on the printer control panel to clear the message and continue printing.
- Cancel the current job.


Load Manual Feeder with [custom type name]

Try one or more of the following:

- Load the feeder with the correct size and type of paper.
- Depending on your printer model, touch **Prompt each page, paper loaded** or press  on the printer control panel to clear the message and continue printing.
- Cancel the current job.


Load Manual Feeder with [paper size]

Try one or more of the following:

- Load the feeder with the correct size of paper.
- Depending on your printer model, touch **Prompt each page, paper loaded** or press  on the printer control panel to clear the message and continue printing.
- Cancel the current job.


Load Manual Feeder with [paper type] [paper size]

Try one or more of the following:

- Load the feeder with the correct size and type of paper.
- Depending on your printer model, touch **Prompt each page, paper loaded** or press  on the printer control panel to clear the message and continue printing.
- Cancel the current job.


Maintenance kit low [80.xy]

You may need to order a maintenance kit. For more information, visit the Lexmark support Web site at <http://support.lexmark.com> or contact customer support, and then report the message.

If necessary, select **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.


Maintenance kit nearly low [80.xy]

For more information, visit the Lexmark support Web site at <http://support.lexmark.com> or contact customer support, and then report the message.

If necessary, select **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.


Maintenance kit very low, [x] estimated pages remain [80.xy]

You may need to replace the maintenance kit very soon. For more information, visit the Lexmark support Web site at <http://support.lexmark.com> or contact customer support, and then report the message.

If necessary, select **Continue** on the printer control panel to clear the message and continue printing. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.


Memory full [38]

Try one or more of the following:

- From the printer control panel, select **Cancel job** to clear the message. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.
- Install additional printer memory.


Network [x] software error [54]

Try one or more of the following:

- From the printer control panel, select **Continue** to continue printing. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.
- Turn off the printer, wait for about 10 seconds, and then turn the printer back on.
- Update the network firmware in the printer or print server. For more information, visit the Lexmark support Web site at <http://support.lexmark.com>.

Not enough free space in flash memory for resources [52]

Try one or more of the following:

- From the printer control panel, select **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.
- Delete fonts, macros, and other data stored in the flash memory.
- Upgrade to a larger capacity flash memory card.

Note: Downloaded fonts and macros that are not previously stored in the flash memory are deleted.

Non-Lexmark [color] [supply type], see User's Guide [33.xy]


Note: The supply type can be a toner cartridge or the imaging kit.

The printer has detected a non-Lexmark supply or part installed in the printer.

Your Lexmark printer is designed to function best with genuine Lexmark supplies and parts. Use of third-party supplies or parts may affect the performance, reliability, or life of the printer and its imaging components.

All life indicators are designed to function with Lexmark supplies and parts, and may deliver unpredictable results if third-party supplies or parts are used. Imaging component usage beyond the intended life may damage your Lexmark printer or its associated components.

Warning—Potential Damage: Use of third-party supplies or parts can affect warranty coverage. Damage caused by the use of third-party supplies or parts may not be covered by the warranty.

To accept any and all of these risks, and to proceed with the use of non-genuine supplies or parts in your printer, press and hold  and the # button on the printer control panel simultaneously for 15 seconds.

If you do not wish to accept these risks, then remove the third-party supply or part from your printer, and then install a genuine Lexmark supply or part.

Note: For the list of supported supplies, see the “Ordering supplies” section of the *User's Guide* or visit www.lexmark.com.

Reinstall missing or unresponsive [color] cartridge [31.xy]

Try one or more of the following:

- Install the missing toner cartridge. For more information, see the “Replacing supplies” section of the *User's Guide*.
- Remove the unresponsive cartridge, and then reinstall it.

Note: If the message appears after reinstalling the supply, then the cartridge may be defective. Replace the cartridge.

Reinstall missing or unresponsive [type] imaging kit [31.xy]

Note: The type can be a black imaging kit, or a black and color imaging kit.


Try one or more of the following:

- Install the missing imaging kit. For more information, see the “Replacing supplies” section of the *User’s Guide*.
- Remove the unresponsive imaging kit, and then reinstall it.


Note: If the message appears after reinstalling the supply, then the imaging kit may be defective. Replace the imaging kit.

Reload printed pages in Tray [x]

Try any of the following:

- From the printer control panel, select **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing the second side of the sheet. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.
- Cancel the print job.

Remove packaging material, [area name]

- 1 Remove any remaining packing material from the indicated location.
- 2 From the printer control panel, touch **Continue** to clear the message. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.

Remove paper from standard output bin

Remove the paper stack from the standard bin.

Replace [color] cartridge, 0 estimated pages remain [88.xy]

Replace the indicated toner cartridge to clear the message and continue printing. For more information, see the instruction sheet that came with the supply.

Note: If you do not have a replacement cartridge, then see the “Ordering supplies” section of the *User’s Guide* or visit www.lexmark.com.

Replace [color] cartridge, printer region mismatch [42.xy]

Install a toner cartridge that matches the region number of the printer. x indicates the value of the printer region. y indicates the value of the cartridge region. x and y can have the following values:

Region number	Region
0	Global
1	United States, Canada
2	European Union (EU), European Economic Area (EEA), Switzerland
8	Rest of the world
9	Invalid

Notes:

- The x and y values represent **.xy** in the error code that appears on the printer control panel.
- The x and y values must match for printing to continue.

Replace [type] imaging kit, 0 estimated pages remain [84.xy]




Note: The type can be a black imaging kit, or a black and color imaging kit.

Replace the indicated imaging kit to clear the message and continue printing. For more information, see the instruction sheet that came with the supply.



Note: If you do not have a replacement imaging kit, then see the “Ordering supplies” section of the *User’s Guide* or visit www.lexmark.com.

Replace all originals if restarting job.

From the printer control panel, try one or more of the following:

- Select **Scan from automatic feeder**, and then press  to continue scanning from the ADF immediately after the last successful scan job.
- Select **Scan from flatbed**, and then press  to continue scanning from the scanner glass immediately after the last successful scan job.
- Select **Finish job without further scanning**, and then press  to end the last successful scan job.

Note: This does not cancel the scan job. All successfully scanned pages will be processed further for copying or e-mailing.

- Select **Restart Job**, and then press  to restart the scan job with the same settings from the previous scan job.
- Select **Cancel Job**, and then press  to clear the message and cancel the scan job.

Remove defective disk [61]

Remove and replace the defective printer hard disk.

Replace defective [color] cartridge [31.xy]

Replace the defective toner cartridge to clear the message. For more information, see the instruction sheet that came with the supply.

Note: If you do not have a replacement toner cartridge, then see the “Ordering supplies” section of the *User’s Guide* or visit www.lexmark.com.

Replace defective [type] imaging kit [31.xy]




Note: The type can be a black imaging kit, or a black and color imaging kit.

Replace the defective imaging kit to clear the message and continue printing. For more information, see the instruction sheet that came with the supply.



Note: If you do not have a replacement imaging kit, then see the “Ordering supplies” section of the *User’s Guide* or visit www.lexmark.com.

Replace jammed originals if restarting job.

From the printer control panel, try one or more of the following:

- Select **Scan from automatic feeder**, and then press  to continue scanning from the ADF immediately after the last successful scan job.
- Select **Scan from flatbed**, and then press  to continue scanning from the scanner glass immediately after the last successful scan job.
- Select **Finish job without further scanning**, and then press  to end the last successful scan job.

Note: This does not cancel the scan job. All successfully scanned pages will be processed further for copying or e-mailing.

- Select **Restart Job**, and then press  to restart the scan job with the same settings from the previous scan job.
- Select **Cancel Job**, and then press  to clear the message and cancel the scan job.

Replace maintenance kit, 0 estimated pages remain [80.xy]

The printer is scheduled for maintenance. For more information, visit the Lexmark support Web site at <http://support.lexmark.com> or contact your service representative, and then report the message.

Replace missing [color] cartridge [31.xy]

Install the indicated toner cartridge to clear the message. For more information, see the “Replacing supplies” section of the *User’s Guide*.

Replace missing [type] imaging kit [31.xy]

Note: The type can be a black imaging kit, or a black and color imaging kit.

Install the indicated imaging kit to clear the message. For more information, see the “Replacing supplies” section of the *User’s Guide*.

Replace missing waste toner bottle [82.xy]

Install the missing waste toner bottle to clear the message. For more information, see the instruction sheet that came with the supply.

Replace unsupported [color] cartridge [32.xy]

Remove the toner cartridge, and then install a supported one to clear the message.

Note: If you do not have a replacement cartridge, then see the “Ordering supplies” section of the *User’s Guide* or visit www.lexmark.com.

Replace unsupported [type] imaging kit [32.xy]

Note: The type can be a black imaging kit, or a black and color imaging kit.

Remove the indicated imaging kit, and then install a supported one to clear the message.



Note: If you do not have a replacement imaging kit, then see the “Ordering supplies” section of the *User’s Guide* or visit www.lexmark.com.

Replace waste toner bottle [82.xy]

Replace the waste toner bottle to clear the message.

Restore held jobs?

Try one or more of the following:

- Select **Restore** on the printer control panel to restore all held jobs stored in the printer hard disk. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.
- Select **Do not restore** if you do not want any print jobs to be restored. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.

Scanner automatic feeder cover open

Close the ADF cover.

Scanner disabled by admin [840.01]

Print without the scanner, or contact your system support person.

Scanner disabled. Contact system administrator if problem persists. [840.02]

From the printer control panel, try one or more of the following:

- Select **Continue with scanner disabled** to return to the home screen, and then contact your system support person.
- Select **Reboot and automatically enable scanner** to cancel the job.

Note: This attempts to enable the scanner.

- For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.


Scanner jam, remove all originals from the scanner [2yy.xx]

Remove the jammed paper from the scanner.

Scanner jam, remove jammed originals from the scanner [2yy.xx]


Remove the jammed paper from the scanner.

Some held jobs were not restored

From the printer control panel, select **Continue** to clear the message. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.

Note: Held jobs that are not restored remain in the printer hard disk and are inaccessible.


SMTP server not set up. Contact system administrator.

From the printer control panel, press  to clear the message.


Note: If the message appears again, then contact your system support person.

Standard network software error [54]

Try one or more of the following:

- From the printer control panel, select **Continue** to continue printing. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.
- Turn off the printer and then turn it back on.
- Update the network firmware in the printer or print server. For more information, visit the Lexmark support Web site at <http://support.lexmark.com>.

Standard USB port disabled [56]


From the printer control panel, select **Continue** to clear the message. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.

Notes:

- The printer discards any data received through the USB port.
- Make sure the USB Buffer menu is not set to Disabled.

Supply needed to complete job

Try one or more of the following:

- From the printer control panel, touch **Prompt for supplies** to view all error messages that indicate what supplies are needed to continue processing the current job. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to clear the message and continue printing.
 - 1 Order the missing supply immediately.
 - 2 Install the supply. For more information, see the instruction sheet that came with the supply.
- Cancel the print job, then install the missing supply, and then resend the print job.

Too many flash options installed [58]


- 1 Turn off the printer.
- 2 Unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet.
- 3 Remove the extra flash memory.
- 4 Connect the power cord to a properly grounded electrical outlet.
- 5 Turn the printer back on.

Too many trays attached [58]

- 1 Turn off the printer.
- 2 Unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet.
- 3 Remove the extra trays.
- 4 Connect the power cord to a properly grounded electrical outlet.
- 5 Turn the printer back on.


[Type] imaging kit low [84.xy]

Note: The type can be a black imaging kit, or a black and color imaging kit.

You may need to order an imaging kit. If necessary, select **Continue** on the printer control panel to clear the message and continue printing. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.

[Type] imaging kit nearly low [84.xy]


Note: The type can be a black imaging kit, or a black and color imaging kit.

If necessary, select **Continue** on the printer control panel to clear the message and continue printing. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.

[Type] imaging kit very low, [x] estimated pages remain [84.xy]


Note: The type can be a black imaging kit, or a black and color imaging kit.

You may need to replace the imaging kit very soon. For more information, see the “Replacing supplies” section of the *User’s Guide*.

If necessary, select **Continue** on the printer control panel to clear the message and continue printing. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.


Unformatted flash detected [53]

Try one or more of the following:


- From the printer control, select **Continue** to stop the defragmentation and continue printing. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.
- Format the flash memory.

Note: If the error message remains, then the flash memory may be defective and need to be replaced.

Waste toner bottle nearly full [82.xy]

You may need to order a waste toner bottle. If necessary, select **Continue** on the printer control panel to clear the message and continue printing. For non-touch-screen printer models, press  to confirm.

Weblink server not set up. Contact system administrator.

From the printer control panel, press  to clear the message.

Note: If the message appears again, then contact your system support person.

Solving printer problems

- “Basic printer problems” on page 272
- “Option problems” on page 275
- “Paper feed problems” on page 277

Basic printer problems

The printer is not responding

Action	Yes	No
Step 1 Make sure the printer is turned on. Is the printer turned on?	Go to step 2.	Turn on the printer.
Step 2 Check if the printer is in Sleep mode or Hibernate mode. Is the printer in Sleep mode or Hibernate mode?	Press the Sleep button to wake the printer from Sleep mode or Hibernate mode.	Go to step 3.

Action	Yes	No
Step 3 Check if one end of the power cord is plugged into the printer and the other to a properly grounded electrical outlet. Is the power cord plugged into the printer and a properly grounded electrical outlet?	Go to step 4.	Plug one end of the power cord into the printer and the other to a properly grounded electrical outlet.
Step 4 Check other electrical equipment plugged into the electrical outlet. Does other electrical equipment work?	Unplug the other electrical equipment, and then turn on the printer. If the printer does not work, then reconnect the other electrical equipment.	Go to step 5.
Step 5 Check if the cables connecting the printer and the computer are inserted in the correct ports. Are the cables inserted in the correct ports?	Go to step 6.	Make sure to match the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The USB symbol on the cable with the USB symbol on the printer • The appropriate Ethernet cable with the Ethernet port
Step 6 Make sure the electrical outlet is not turned off by a switch or breaker. Is the electrical outlet turned off by a switch or breaker?	Turn on the switch or reset the breaker.	Go to step 7.
Step 7 Check if the printer is plugged into any surge protectors, uninterruptible power supplies, or extension cords. Is the printer plugged into any surge protectors, uninterruptible power supplies, or extension cords?	Connect the printer power cord directly to a properly grounded electrical outlet.	Go to step 8.
Step 8 Check if one end of the printer cable is plugged into a port on the printer and the other to the computer, print server, option, or other network device. Is the printer cable securely attached to the printer and the computer, print server, option, or other network device?	Go to step 9.	Connect the printer cable securely to the printer and the computer, print server, option, or other network device.
Step 9 Make sure to install all hardware options properly and remove any packing material. Are all hardware options properly installed and all packing material removed?	Go to step 10.	Turn off the printer, remove all packing materials, then reinstall the hardware options, and then turn on the printer.

Action	Yes	No
Step 10 Check if you have selected the correct port settings in the printer driver. Are the port settings correct?	Go to step 11.	Use correct printer driver settings.
Step 11 Check the installed printer driver. Is the correct printer driver installed?	Go to step 12.	Install the correct printer driver.
Step 12 Turn off the printer, then wait for about 10 seconds, and then turn the printer back on. Is the printer working?	The problem is solved.	Contact customer support .

Printer display is blank

Action	Yes	No
Step 1 Press the Sleep button on the printer control panel. Does Ready appear on the printer display?	The problem is solved.	Go to step 2.
Step 2 Turn off the printer, then wait for about 10 seconds, and then turn the printer back on. Do Please wait and Ready appear on the printer display?	The problem is solved.	Turn off the printer, and then contact customer support .

Option problems

Cannot detect internal option

Action	Yes	No
Step 1 Turn off the printer, then wait for about 10 seconds, and then turn on the printer. Does the internal option operate correctly?	The problem is solved.	Go to step 2.
Step 2 Check if the internal option is properly installed in the controller board. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a Turn off the printer using the power switch, and then unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet. b Make sure the internal option is installed in the appropriate connector in the controller board. c Connect the power cord to the printer, then to a properly grounded electrical outlet, and then turn on the printer. Is the internal option properly installed in the controller board?	Go to step 3.	Connect the internal option to the controller board.
Step 3 Print a menu settings page, and then check to see if the internal option is listed in the Installed Features list. Is the internal option listed in the menu settings page?	Go to step 4.	Reinstall the internal option.
Step 4 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a Check if the internal option is selected. It may be necessary to manually add the internal option in the printer driver to make it available for print jobs. For more information, see “Updating available options in the printer driver” on page 37. b Resend the print job. Does the internal option operate correctly?	The problem is solved.	Contact customer support .

Cannot detect memory card

Action	Yes	No
<p>Make sure the memory card is installed.</p> <p>a Install the memory card. For more information, see “Installing a memory card” on page 29.</p> <p>Note: Check if the memory card is securely connected to the printer controller board.</p> <p>b Print a menu settings page, and then check if the card is listed in the Installed Options list.</p> <p>Is the card listed in the Installed Options list?</p>	The problem is solved.	Contact customer support .


Tray problems

Action	Yes	No
<p>Step 1</p> <p>a Pull out the tray, and then do one or more of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check for paper jams or misfeeds. • Check if the paper size indicators on the paper guides are aligned with the paper size indicators on the tray. • If you are printing on custom-size paper, then make sure that the paper guides rest against the edges of the paper. • Make sure the paper is below the maximum paper fill indicator. • Make sure paper lies flat in the tray. <p>b Check if the tray closes properly.</p> <p>Is the tray working?</p>	The problem is solved.	Go to step 2.
<p>Step 2</p> <p>a Turn off the printer, then wait about 10 seconds, and then turn the printer back on.</p> <p>b Resend the print job.</p> <p>Is the tray working?</p>	The problem is solved.	Go to step 3.
<p>Step 3</p> <p>Check if the tray is installed and recognized by the printer.</p> <p>Print a menu settings page, and then check if the tray is listed in the Installed Features list.</p> <p>Is the tray listed in the menu settings page?</p>	Go to step 4.	Reinstall the tray. For more information, see the setup documentation that came with the tray.

Action	Yes	No
Step 4 Check if the tray is available in the printer driver. Note: If necessary, manually add the tray in the printer driver to make it available for print jobs. For more information, see “Updating available options in the printer driver” on page 37 . Is the tray available in the printer driver?	The problem is solved.	Contact customer support .

Paper feed problems

Jammed pages are not reprinted

Action	Yes	No
Turn on Jam Recovery. a From the home screen, navigate to:  > Settings > General Settings > Print Recovery b From the Jam Recovery menu, touch the arrows to scroll to On or Auto . c Touch Submit . Do pages reprint after a jam?	The problem is solved.	Contact customer support .

Paper frequently jams

Action	Yes	No
Step 1 a Pull out the tray, and then do one or more of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Make sure paper lies flat in the tray. • Check if the paper size indicators on the paper guides are aligned with the paper size indicators on the tray. • Check if the paper guides are aligned against the edges of the paper. • Make sure the paper is below the maximum paper fill indicator. • Check if you are printing on a recommended paper size and type. b Insert the tray properly. If jam recovery is enabled, then the print jobs will reprint automatically. Do paper jams still occur frequently?	Go to step 2.	The problem is solved.

Action	Yes	No
Step 2 a Load paper from a fresh package. Note: Paper absorbs moisture due to high humidity. Store paper in its original wrapper until you use it. b Resend the print job. Do paper jams still occur frequently?	Go to step 3.	The problem is solved.
Step 3 a Review the tips on avoiding jams. For more information, see “Avoiding jams” on page 241 . b Follow the recommendations, and then resend the print job. Do paper jams still occur frequently?	Contact customer support .	The problem is solved.

Paper jam message remains after jam is cleared

Action	Yes	No
Check the entire paper path for jammed paper. a Remove any jammed paper. b From the printer control panel, touch Continue to clear the message. Does the paper jam message remain?	Contact customer support .	The problem is solved.

Solving print problems

Printing problems

Confidential and other held jobs do not print

Note: Confidential, Verify, Reserve, and Repeat print jobs may be deleted if the printer requires extra memory to process additional held jobs.

Action	Yes	No
<p>Step 1</p> <p>Open the held jobs folder on the printer display, and then verify that your print job is listed.</p> <p>Is your print job listed in the held jobs folder?</p>	Go to step 2.	Select one of the Print and Hold options, and then resend the print job. For more information, see “Printing confidential and other held jobs” on page 69.
<p>Step 2</p> <p>The print job may contain a formatting error or invalid data.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Delete the print job, and then send it again. For PDF files, generate a new PDF, and then print it again. <p>If you are printing from the Internet, then the printer may be reading multiple job titles as duplicates and deleting all jobs except the first one.</p> <p>For Windows users</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Open the Print Properties folder. From the Print and Hold dialog, select the “Keep duplicate documents” check box. Enter a PIN number. <p>For Macintosh users</p> <p>Save each print job, name each job differently, and then send the individual jobs to the printer.</p> <p>Does the job print?</p>	The problem is solved.	Go to step 3.
<p>Step 3</p> <p>Free up additional printer memory by deleting some of the held jobs.</p> <p>Does the job print?</p>	The problem is solved.	Add additional printer memory.

Error message about reading the flash drive appears

Action	Yes	No
Step 1 Check if the flash drive is inserted into the front USB port. Note: The flash drive will not work if it is inserted into the rear USB port. Is the flash drive inserted into the front USB port?	Go to step 2.	Insert the flash drive into the front USB port.
Step 2 Check if the indicator light on the printer control panel is blinking green. Note: A green blinking light indicates that the printer is busy. Is the indicator light blinking green?	Wait until the printer is ready, then view the held jobs list, and then print the documents.	Go to step 3.
Step 3 a Check for an error message on the display. b Clear the message. Does the error message still appear?	Go to step 4.	The problem is solved.
Step 4 Check if the flash drive is supported. For more information on tested and approved USB flash drives, see “Supported flash drives and file types” on page 67 . Does the error message still appear?	Go to step 5.	The problem is solved.
Step 5 Check if the USB port is disabled by the system support person. Does the error message still appear?	Contact customer support .	The problem is solved.

Incorrect characters print

Action	Yes	No
Step 1 Make sure the printer is not in Hex Trace mode. Note: If Ready Hex appears on the printer display, then turn off the printer, and then turn it back on to deactivate Hex Trace mode. Is the printer in Hex Trace mode?	Deactivate Hex Trace mode.	Go to step 2.
Step 2 a From the printer control panel, select Standard Network or Network [x] , and then set SmartSwitch to On. b Resend the print job. Do incorrect characters print?	Contact customer support .	The problem is solved.

Job prints from the wrong tray or on the wrong paper

Action	Yes	No
Step 1 a Check if you are printing on paper that is supported by the tray. b Resend the print job. Did the job print from the correct tray or on the correct paper?	The problem is solved.	Go to step 2.
Step 2 a From the Paper menu on the printer control panel, set the paper size and type to match the paper loaded in the tray. b Resend the print job. Did the job print from the correct tray or on the correct paper?	The problem is solved.	Go to step 3.
Step 3 a Depending on your operating system, open Printing Preferences or the Print dialog, and then specify the paper type. b Resend the print job. Did the job print from the correct tray or on the correct paper?	The problem is solved.	Go to step 4.
Step 4 a Check if the trays are not linked. b Resend the print job. Did the job print from the correct tray or on the correct paper?	The problem is solved.	Contact customer support .

Large jobs do not collate

Action	Yes	No
Step 1 a From the Finishing menu on the printer control panel, set Collate to (1,2,3) (1,2,3). b Resend the print job. Did the job print and collate correctly?	The problem is solved.	Go to step 2.
Step 2 a From the printer software, set Collate to (1,2,3) (1,2,3). Note: Setting Collate to (1,1,1) (2,2,2) in the software overrides the setting in the Finishing menu. b Resend the print job. Did the job print and collate correctly?	The problem is solved.	Go to step 3.

Action	Yes	No
Step 3 Reduce the complexity of the print job by eliminating the number and size of fonts, the number and complexity of images, and the number of pages in the job. Did the job print and collate correctly?	The problem is solved.	Contact customer support .

Multiple-language PDF files do not print

Action	Yes	No
Step 1 a Check if the print options for the PDF output are set to embed all fonts. For more information, see the documentation that came with Adobe Acrobat. b Generate a new PDF file, and then resend the print job. Do the files print?	The problem is solved.	Go to step 2.
Step 2 a Open the document you want to print in Adobe Acrobat. b Click File > Print > Advanced > Print As Image > OK > OK . Do the files print?	The problem is solved.	Contact customer support .

Printing slows down

Notes:

- When printing using narrow paper, the printer prints at a reduced speed to prevent damage to the fuser.
- The printer speed may be reduced if printing for long periods of time, or printing at elevated temperatures.

Action	Yes	No
Place letter- or A4-size paper in the tray, and then resend the print job. Does the print speed increase?	The problem is solved.	Contact customer support .

Print jobs do not print

Action	Yes	No
Step 1 a From the document you are trying to print, open the Print dialog and check if you have selected the correct printer. Note: If the printer is not the default printer, then you must select the printer for each document that you want to print. b Resend the print job. Do the jobs print?	The problem is solved.	Go to step 2.
Step 2 a Check if the printer is plugged in and turned on, and if Ready appears on the printer display. b Resend the print job. Do the jobs print?	The problem is solved.	Go to step 3.
Step 3 If an error message appears on the printer display, then clear the message. Note: The printer continues to print after clearing the message. Do the jobs print?	The problem is solved.	Go to step 4.
Step 4 a Check if the ports (USB, serial, or Ethernet) are working and if the cables are securely connected to the computer and the printer. Note: For more information, see the setup documentation that came with the printer. b Resend the print job. Do the jobs print?	The problem is solved.	Go to step 5.
Step 5 a Turn off the printer, then wait for about 10 seconds, and then turn the printer back on. b Resend the print job. Do the jobs print?	The problem is solved.	Go to step 6.
Step 6 a Remove, and then reinstall the printer software. For more information, see “Installing the printer software” on page 36 . Note: The printer software is available at http://support.lexmark.com . b Resend the print job. Do the jobs print?	The problem is solved.	Contact customer support .

Print job takes longer than expected

Action	Yes	No
Step 1 Change the environmental settings of the printer. a From the printer control panel, navigate to: Settings > General Settings b Select Eco-Mode or Quiet Mode , and then select Off . Note: Disabling Eco-Mode or Quiet Mode may increase the consumption of energy or supplies, or both. Did the job print?	The problem is solved.	Go to step 2.
Step 2 Reduce the number and size of fonts, the number and complexity of images, and the number of pages in the print job, and then resend the job. Did the job print?	The problem is solved.	Go to step 3.
Step 3 a Remove held jobs stored in the printer memory. b Resend the print job. Did the job print?	The problem is solved.	Go to step 4.
Step 4 a Disable the Page Protect feature. From the printer control panel, navigate to: Settings > General Settings > Print Recovery > Page Protect > Off b Resend the print job. Did the job print?	The problem is solved.	Go to step 5.
Step 5 a Check if the cable connections to the printer and print server are secure. For more information, see the setup documentation that came with the printer. b Resend the print job. Did the job print?	The problem is solved.	Go to step 6.
Step 6 Install additional printer memory, and then resend the print job. Did the job print?	The problem is solved.	Contact customer support .


Tray linking does not work

Notes:

- The trays can detect paper length.
- The multipurpose feeder does not automatically detect the paper size. You must set the size from the Paper Size/Type menu.

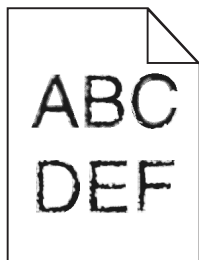
Action	Yes	No
Step 1 a Open the trays, and then check if they contain paper of the same size and type. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check if the paper guides are in the correct positions for the size of the paper loaded in each tray. • Check if the paper size indicators on the paper guides are aligned with the paper size indicators on the tray. b Resend the print job. Do the trays link correctly?	The problem is solved.	Go to step 2.
Step 2 a From the printer control panel, set the paper size and type in the Paper menu to match the paper loaded in the trays to be linked. Note: The paper size and type must match for trays to be linked. b Resend the print job. Do the trays link correctly?	The problem is solved.	Contact customer support .

Unexpected page breaks occur

Action	Yes	No
Increase the printing timeout. a From the home screen, navigate to:  > Settings > General Settings > Timeouts b Increase the Print Timeout setting, and then touch Submit . c Resend the print job. Did the file print correctly?	The problem is solved.	Check the original file for manual page breaks.

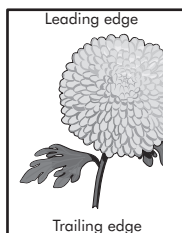
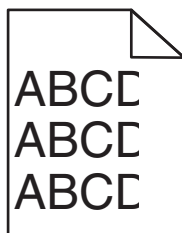
Print quality problems

Characters have jagged or uneven edges



Action	Yes	No
Step 1 a Print a font sample list to check if the fonts you are using are supported by the printer. 1 From the printer control panel, navigate to: Menus > Reports > Print Fonts 2 Select PCL Fonts or PostScript Fonts . b Resend the print job. Are you using fonts that are supported by the printer?	Go to step 2.	Select a font that is supported by the printer.
Step 2 Check if the fonts installed on the computer are supported by the printer. Are the fonts installed on the computer supported by the printer?	The problem is solved.	Contact customer support .

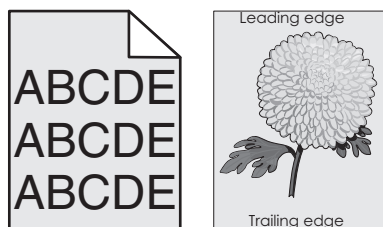
Clipped pages or images



Action	Yes	No
Step 1 a Move the width and length guides in the tray to the correct positions for the paper loaded. b Resend the print job. Is the page or image clipped?	Go to step 2.	The problem is solved.

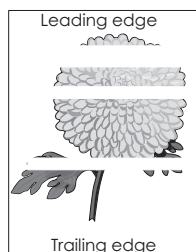
Action	Yes	No
Step 2 From the printer control panel, set the paper size and type in the Paper menu to match the paper loaded in the tray. Does the paper size match the paper loaded in the tray?	Go to step 3.	Do one or more of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> From the printer control panel, change the paper size to match the paper loaded in the tray. From the printer control panel, change the paper type to match the paper loaded in the tray.
Step 3 a Depending on your operating system, specify the paper size from Printing Preferences or from the Print dialog. b Resend the print job. Is the page or image clipped?	Go to step 4.	The problem is solved.
Step 4 a Remove, and then reinstall the imaging kit. Warning—Potential Damage: Do not expose the imaging kit to direct light for more than 10 minutes. Extended exposure to light may cause print quality problems. Warning—Potential Damage: Do not touch the underside of the imaging kit. This could damage the imaging kit. b Resend the print job. Is the page or image clipped?	Contact customer support .	The problem is solved.

Gray background on prints



Action	Yes	No
Step 1 Reduce the toner darkness. a From the Quality menu on the printer control panel, reduce the toner density. Note: 4 is the factory default setting. b Resend the print job. Did the gray background disappear?	The problem is solved.	Go to step 2.
Step 2 a Remove, and then reinstall the imaging kit. Warning—Potential Damage: Do not expose the imaging kit to direct light for more than 10 minutes. Extended exposure to light may cause print quality problems. Warning—Potential Damage: Do not touch the underside of the imaging kit. This could damage the imaging kit. b Resend the print job. Did the gray background disappear?	The problem is solved.	Contact customer support .

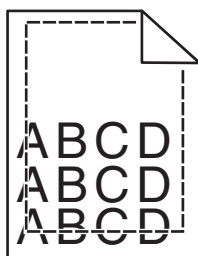
Horizontal voids appear on prints



Action	Yes	No
Step 1 a Make sure your software program is using a correct fill pattern. b Resend the print job. Do horizontal voids appear on prints?	Go to step 2.	The problem is solved.
Step 2 a Load the specified tray or feeder with a recommended type of paper. b Resend the print job. Do horizontal voids appear on prints?	Go to step 3.	The problem is solved.

Action	Yes	No
Step 3 a Remove, and then reinstall the imaging kit. Warning—Potential Damage: Do not expose the imaging kit to direct light for more than 10 minutes. Extended exposure to light may cause print quality problems. Warning—Potential Damage: Do not touch the underside of the imaging kit. This could damage the imaging kit. b Resend the print job. Do horizontal voids appear on prints?	Go to step 4.	The problem is solved.
Step 4 Replace the imaging kit, and then resend the print job. Do horizontal voids appear on prints?	Contact customer support .	The problem is solved.

Incorrect margins on prints



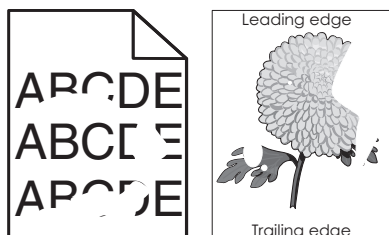
Action	Yes	No
Step 1 a Move the width and length guides in the tray to the correct positions for the paper size loaded. b Resend the print job. Are the margins correct?	The problem is solved.	Go to step 2.
Step 2 From the printer control panel, set the paper size in the Paper menu to match the paper loaded in the tray. Does the paper size match the paper loaded in the tray?	Go to step 3.	Do one or more of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Specify the paper size from the tray settings to match the paper loaded in the tray. Change the paper loaded in the tray to match the paper size specified in the tray settings.

Action	Yes	No
Step 3 a Depending on your operating system, specify the paper size from Printing Preferences or from the Print dialog. b Resend the print job. Are the margins correct?	The problem is solved.	Contact customer support .

Paper curl

Action	Yes	No
Step 1 Move the width and length guides in the tray to the correct positions for the size of the paper loaded. Are the width and length guides positioned correctly?	Go to step 2.	Adjust the width and length guides.
Step 2 From the printer control panel, set the paper type and weight in the Paper menu to match the paper loaded in the tray. Do the paper type and weight match the type and weight of the paper in the tray?	Go to step 3.	Specify the paper type and weight from the tray settings to match the paper loaded in the tray.
Step 3 a Depending on your operating system, specify the paper type and weight from Printing Preferences or from the Print dialog. b Resend the print job. Is the paper still curled?	Go to step 4.	The problem is solved.
Step 4 a Remove the paper from the tray, and then turn it over. b Resend the print job. Is the paper still curled?	Go to step 5.	The problem is solved.
Step 5 a Load paper from a fresh package. Note: Paper absorbs moisture due to high humidity. Store paper in its original wrapper until you use it. b Resend the print job. Is the paper still curled?	Contact customer support .	The problem is solved.

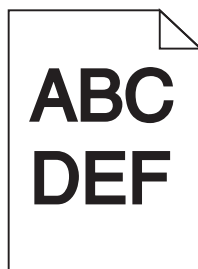
Print irregularities



Action	Yes	No
Step 1 a Move the width and length guides in the tray to the correct positions for the size of the paper loaded in the tray. b Resend the print job. Do print irregularities still appear?	Go to step 2.	The problem is solved.
Step 2 From the printer control panel, set the paper size and type in the Paper menu to match the paper loaded in the tray. Is the tray set to the size and type of the paper loaded in the tray?	Go to step 3.	Do one or more of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Specify the paper size from the tray settings to match the paper loaded in the tray. Change the paper loaded in the tray to match the paper size specified in the tray settings.
Step 3 a Depending on your operating system, specify the paper type and weight from Printing Preferences or from the Print dialog. b Resend the print job. Do print irregularities still appear?	Go to step 4.	The problem is solved.
Step 4 Check if the paper loaded in the tray has texture or rough finishes. Are you printing on textured or rough paper?	From the printer control panel, set the paper texture in the Paper menu to match the paper loaded in the tray.	Go to step 5.
Step 5 a Load paper from a fresh package. Note: Paper absorbs moisture due to high humidity. Store paper in its original wrapper until you use it. b Resend the print job. Do print irregularities still appear?	Go to step 6.	The problem is solved.

Action	Yes	No
Step 6 Replace the imaging kit, and then resend the print job. Do print irregularities still appear?	Contact customer support .	The problem is solved.

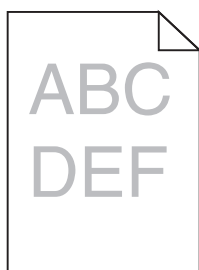
Print is too dark



Action	Yes	No
Step 1 a From the Quality menu on the printer control panel, select Color Adjust . b Resend the print job. Is the print still too dark?	Go to step 2.	The problem is solved.
Step 2 a From the Quality menu on the printer control panel, reduce the toner darkness. Note: 4 is the factory default setting. b Resend the print job. Is the print still too dark?	Go to step 3.	The problem is solved.
Step 3 a From the printer control panel, set the paper type, texture, and weight in the Paper menu to match the paper loaded in the tray. b Resend the print job. Is the tray set to the type, texture, and weight of the paper loaded?	Go to step 4.	Change the paper loaded in the tray to match the paper type, texture, and weight specified in the tray settings.
Step 4 a Depending on your operating system, specify the paper type, texture and weight from Printing Preferences or from the Print dialog. b Resend the print job. Is the print still too dark?	Go to step 5.	The problem is solved.

Action	Yes	No
Step 5 Check if the paper loaded in the tray has texture or rough finishes. Are you printing on textured or rough paper?	From the printer control panel, set the paper texture in the Paper menu to match the paper loaded on the tray.	Go to step 6.
Step 6 a Load paper from a fresh package. Note: Paper absorbs moisture due to high humidity. Store paper in its original wrapper until you use it. b Resend the print job. Is the print still too dark?	Go to step 7.	The problem is solved.
Step 7 Replace the imaging kit, and then resend the print job. Is the print still too dark?	Contact customer support .	The problem is solved.

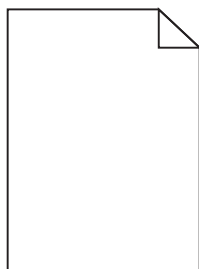
Print is too light



Action	Yes	No
Step 1 a From the Quality menu on the printer control panel, select Color Adjust . b Resend the print job. Is the print still too light?	Go to step 2.	The problem is solved.
Step 2 a From the Quality menu on the printer control panel, increase the toner darkness. Note: 4 is the factory default setting. b Resend the print job. Is the print still too light?	Go to step 3.	The problem is solved.

Action	Yes	No
Step 3 From the printer control panel, set the paper type, texture, and weight in the Paper menu to match the paper loaded in the tray. Is the tray set to the type, texture, and weight of the paper loaded?	Go to step 4.	Specify the paper type, texture, and weight from the tray settings to match the paper loaded in the tray.
Step 4 a Depending on your operating system, specify the paper type, texture, and weight from Printing Preferences or from the Print dialog. b Resend the print job. Is the print still too light?	Go to step 5.	The problem is solved.
Step 5 Make sure that the paper has no texture or rough finishes. Are you printing on textured or rough paper?	From the printer control panel, set the paper texture in the Paper menu to match the paper loaded in the tray	Go to step 5.
Step 6 a Load paper from a fresh package. Note: Paper absorbs moisture due to high humidity. Store paper in its original wrapper until you use it. b Resend the print job. Is the print still too light?	Go to step 7.	The problem is solved.
Step 7 Replace the imaging kit, and then resend the print job. Is the print still too light?	Contact customer support .	The problem is solved.

Printer is printing blank pages



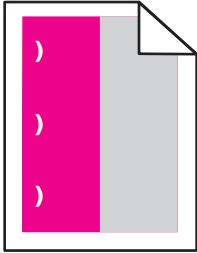
Action	Yes	No
Step 1 a Check if there is packing material left on the imaging kit. 1 Remove the imaging kit. 2 Check if the packing material is properly removed from the imaging kit. Warning—Potential Damage: Do not expose the imaging kit to direct light for more than 10 minutes. Extended exposure to light may cause print quality problems. Warning—Potential Damage: Do not touch the underside of the imaging kit. This could damage the imaging kit. 3 Reinstall the imaging kit. b Resend the print job. Is the printer still printing blank pages?	Go to step 2.	The problem is solved.
Step 2 Replace the imaging kit, and then resend the print job. Is the printer still printing blank pages?	Contact customer support .	The problem is solved.

Printer is printing solid black pages



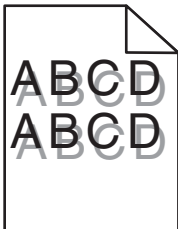
Action	Yes	No
Step 1 a Remove, and then reinstall the imaging kit. Warning—Potential Damage: Do not expose the imaging kit to direct light for more than 10 minutes. Extended exposure to light may cause print quality problems. Warning—Potential Damage: Do not touch the underside of the imaging kit. This could damage the imaging kit. b Resend the print job. Is the printer printing solid black pages?	Go to step 2.	The problem is solved.
Step 2 Replace the imaging kit, and then resend the print job. Is the printer printing solid black pages?	Contact customer support .	The problem is solved.

Repeating defects appear on prints



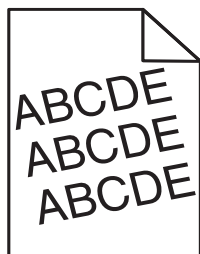
Action	Yes	No
<p>Step 1</p> <p>Measure the distance between the defects.</p> <p>Check for a distance between the defects that equals:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 25.1 mm (0.98 in.) • 29.8 mm (1.17 in.) • 43.9 mm (1.72 in.) • 45.5 mm (1.79 in.) • 94.2 mm (3.70 in.) <p>Is the distance between defects equal to one of the listed measurements?</p>	Go to step 2.	<p>1 Check if the distance between the defects is equal to one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 37.7 mm (1.48 in.) • 78.5 mm (3.09 in.) • 95 mm (3.74 in.) <p>2 Take note of the distance, and then contact customer support or your service representative.</p>
<p>Step 2</p> <p>Replace the imaging kit, and then resend the print job.</p> <p>Do the repeating defects still appear?</p>	Contact customer support .	The problem is solved.

Shadow images appear on prints



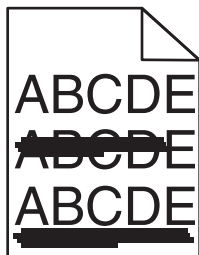
Action	Yes	No
Step 1 Check if the paper loaded in the tray has the correct paper type and weight. Is paper with the correct paper type and weight loaded in the tray?	Go to step 2.	Load paper with the correct paper type and weight in the tray.
Step 2 From the printer control panel, set the paper type and weight in the Paper menu to match the paper loaded in the tray. Do the printer settings match the type and weight of the paper loaded?	Go to step 3.	Change the paper type and weight to match the paper loaded in the tray.
Step 3 a Depending on your operating system, specify the paper type and weight from Printing Preferences or from the Print dialog. b Resend the print job. Do shadow images still appear on prints?	Go to step 4.	The problem is solved.
Step 4 Replace the imaging kit, and then resend the print job. Do shadow images still appear on prints?	Contact customer support .	The problem is solved.

Skewed print



Action	Yes	No
Step 1 a Move the width and length guides in the tray to the correct positions for the size of the paper loaded. b Resend the print job. Is the print still skewed?	Go to step 2.	The problem is solved.
Step 2 a Check if you are printing on a paper that is supported by the tray. b Resend the print job. Is the print still skewed?	Contact customer support .	The problem is solved.

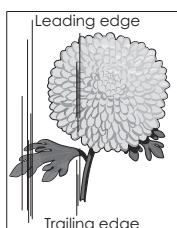
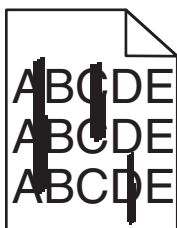
Streaked horizontal lines appear on prints



Action	Yes	No
Step 1 a Depending on your operating system, specify the tray or feeder from Printing Preferences or the Print dialog. b Resend the print job. Do streaked horizontal lines appear on prints?	Go to step 2.	The problem is solved.
Step 2 From the printer control panel, set the paper type and weight in the Paper menu to match the paper loaded in the tray. Do the paper type and weight match the paper in the tray?	Go to step 3.	Do one or more of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Specify the paper type and weight from the tray settings to match the paper loaded in the tray. Change the paper loaded in the tray to match the paper type and weight specified in the tray settings.
Step 3 a Load paper from a fresh package. Note: Paper absorbs moisture due to high humidity. Store paper in its original wrapper until you use it. b Resend the print job. Do streaked horizontal lines appear on prints?	Go to step 4.	The problem is solved.

Action	Yes	No
Step 4 a Remove, and then reinstall the imaging kit. Warning—Potential Damage: Do not expose the imaging kit to direct light for more than 10 minutes. Extended exposure to light may cause print quality problems. Warning—Potential Damage: Do not touch the underside of the imaging kit. This could damage the imaging kit. b Resend the print job. Do streaked horizontal lines appear on prints?	Go to step 5.	The problem is solved.
Step 5 Replace the imaging kit, and then resend the print job. Do streaked horizontal lines appear on prints?	Contact customer support .	The problem is solved.

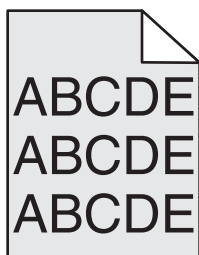
Streaked vertical lines appear on prints



Action	Yes	No
Step 1 a Depending on your operating system, specify the paper type, texture, and weight from Printing Preferences or from the Print dialog. b Resend the print job. Do streaked vertical lines appear on prints?	Go to step 2.	The problem is solved.
Step 2 From the printer control panel, set the paper texture, type, and weight in the Paper menu to match the paper loaded in the tray. Do the paper texture, type, and weight match the paper in the tray?	Go to step 3.	Do one or more of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Specify the paper texture, type, and weight from the tray settings to match the paper loaded in the tray. Change the paper loaded in the tray to match the paper size specified in the tray settings.

Action	Yes	No
Step 3 a Load paper from a fresh package. Note: Paper absorbs moisture due to high humidity. Store paper in its original wrapper until you use it. b Resend the print job. Do streaked vertical lines appear on prints?	Go to step 4.	The problem is solved.
Step 4 a Remove, and then reinstall the imaging kit. Warning—Potential Damage: Do not expose the imaging kit to direct light for more than 10 minutes. Extended exposure to light may cause print quality problems. Warning—Potential Damage: Do not touch the underside of the imaging kit. This could damage the imaging kit. b Resend the print job. Do streaked vertical lines appear on prints?	Go to step 5.	The problem is solved.
Step 5 Replace the imaging kit, and then resend the print job. Do streaked vertical lines appear on prints?	Contact customer support .	The problem is solved.

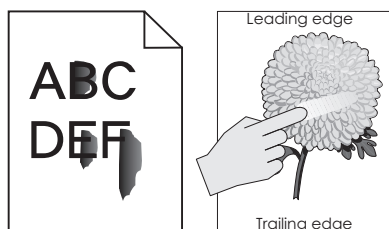
Toner fog or background shading appears on prints



Action	Yes	No
Step 1 a Remove, and then reinstall the imaging kit. Warning—Potential Damage: Do not expose the imaging kit to direct light for more than 10 minutes. Extended exposure to light may cause print quality problems. Warning—Potential Damage: Do not touch the underside of the imaging kit. This could damage the imaging kit. b Resend the print job. Does fog or shading disappear from the prints?	The problem is solved.	Go to step 2.

Action	Yes	No
Step 2 Replace the imaging kit, and then resend the print job. Does fog or shading disappear from the prints?	The problem is solved.	Contact customer support .

Toner rubs off



Action	Yes	No
Step 1 From the Paper menu on the printer control panel, check the paper type and weight. Do the paper type and texture match the paper loaded in the tray?	Go to step 2.	Specify the paper type and weight from the tray settings to match the paper loaded in the tray.
Step 2 Check if you are printing on paper with texture or rough finishes. Are you printing on textured or rough paper?	From the Paper menu on the printer control panel, set the paper texture.	Contact customer support .

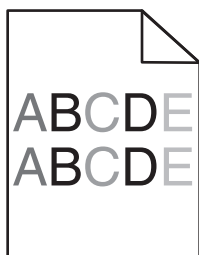
Toner specks appear on prints

Action	Yes	No
Replace the imaging kit, and then resend the print job. Do toner specks appear on prints?	Contact customer support .	The problem is solved.

Transparency print quality is poor

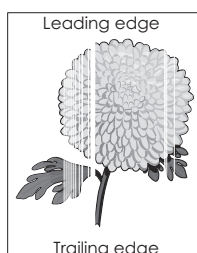
Action	Yes	No
Step 1 From the printer control panel, set the paper type in the Paper menu to match the paper loaded in the tray. Is the paper type for the tray set to Transparency?	Go to step 2.	Set the paper type to Transparency.
Step 2 a Check if you are using a recommended type of transparency. b Resend the print job. Is the print quality still poor?	Contact customer support .	The problem is solved.

Uneven print density



Action	Yes	No
Replace the imaging kit, and then resend the print job. Is the print density uneven?	Contact customer support .	The problem is solved.

Vertical voids appear on prints



Action	Yes	No
Step 1 a Check if your software program is using a correct fill pattern. b Resend the print job. Do vertical voids appear on prints?	Go to step 2.	The problem is solved.

Action	Yes	No
Step 2 a From the Paper Menu on the printer control panel, check the paper type and paper weight. b Resend the print job. Do vertical voids appear on prints?	Go to step 3.	The problem is solved.
Step 3 Check if you are using a recommended type of paper. a Load paper source with a recommended type of paper. b Resend the print job. Do vertical voids appear on prints?	Go to step 4.	The problem is solved.
Step 4 a Remove, and then reinstall the imaging kit. Warning—Potential Damage: Do not expose the imaging kit to direct light for more than 10 minutes. Extended exposure to light may cause print quality problems. Warning—Potential Damage: Do not touch the underside of the imaging kit. This could damage the imaging kit. b Resend the print job. Do vertical voids appear on prints?	Go to step 5.	The problem is solved.
Step 5 Replace the imaging kit, and then resend the print job. Do vertical voids appear on prints?	Contact customer support .	The problem is solved.

Color quality problems

FAQ about color printing

What is RGB color?

Red, green, and blue light can be added together in various amounts to produce a large range of colors observed in nature. For example, red and green can be combined to create yellow. Televisions and computer monitors create colors in this manner. RGB color is a method of describing colors by indicating the amount of red, green, or blue needed to produce a certain color.

What is CMYK color?

Cyan, magenta, yellow, and black inks or toners can be printed in various amounts to produce a large range of colors observed in nature. For example, cyan and yellow can be combined to create green. Printing presses, inkjet printers, and color laser printers create colors in this manner. CMYK color is a method of describing colors by indicating the amount of cyan, magenta, yellow, and black needed to reproduce a particular color.

How is color specified in a document to be printed?

Software programs typically specify the document color using RGB or CMYK color combinations. Additionally, they let users modify the color of each object in a document. For more information, see the help information of your operating system.

How does the printer know what color to print?

When a user prints a document, information describing the type and color of each object is sent to the printer. The color information is passed through color conversion tables that translate the color into the appropriate amounts of cyan, magenta, yellow, and black toner needed to produce the color you want. The object information determines the application of color conversion tables. For example, it is possible to apply one type of color conversion table to text while applying a different color conversion table to photographic images.

What is manual color correction?

When manual color correction is enabled, the printer employs user-selected color conversion tables to process objects. However, Color Correction must be set to Manual, or no user-defined color conversion will be implemented. Manual color correction settings are specific to the type of object being printed (text, graphics, or images), and how the color of the object is specified in the software program (RGB or CMYK combinations).

Notes:

- Manual color correction is not useful if the software program does not specify colors with RGB or CMYK combinations. It is also not effective in situations in which the software program or the computer operating system controls the adjustment of colors.
- When **Auto Color Correction** is selected, the color conversion tables will generate preferred colors used for the majority of the documents.

To manually apply a different color conversion table, do the following:

- 1 From the Quality menu on the printer control panel, select **Color Correction**, and then select **Manual**.
- 2 From the Quality menu on the printer control panel, select **Manual Color**, and then select the appropriate color conversion table for the affected object type.

Object type	Color conversion tables
RGB Image RGB Text RGB Graphics	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Vivid—Produces brighter, more saturated colors and may be applied to all incoming color formats. • sRGB Display—Produces an output that approximates the colors displayed on a computer monitor. Note: Black toner usage is optimized for printing photographs. • Display—True Black—Produces an output that approximates the colors displayed on a computer monitor. This uses only black toner to create all levels of neutral gray. • sRGB Vivid—Provides an increased color saturation for the sRGB Display color correction. Note: Black toner usage is optimized for printing business graphics. • Off—No color correction is implemented.

Object type	Color conversion tables
CMYK Image CMYK Text CMYK Graphics	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • US CMYK—Applies color correction to approximate the SWOP (Specifications for Web Offset Publishing) color output. • Euro CMYK—Applies color correction to approximate Euroscale color output. • Vivid CMYK—Increases the color saturation of the US CMYK color correction setting. • Off—No color correction is implemented.

How can I match a particular color (such as a corporate logo)?

Nine types of Color Samples sets are available from the Quality menu on the printer control panel. These are also available from the Color Samples page of the Embedded Web Server. Selecting any sample set generates a multiple-page printout consisting of hundreds of colored boxes. Either a CMYK or RGB combination is located on each box, depending on the table selected. The observed color of each box is obtained by passing the CMYK or RGB combination labeled on the box through the selected color conversion table.

By examining Color Samples sets, you can identify the box whose color is the closest to the color you want. The color combination labeled on the box can then be used for modifying the color of the object in a software program. For more information, see the help information of your operating system.

Note: Manual color correction may be necessary to utilize the selected color conversion table for the particular object.

Selecting which Color Samples set to use for a particular color-matching problem depends on the Color Correction setting being used, the type of object being printed, and how the color of the object is specified in the software program. When Color Correction is set to Off, the color is based on the print job information, and no color conversion is implemented.

Note: The Color Samples pages are not useful if the software program does not specify colors with RGB or CMYK combinations. Additionally, certain situations exist in which the software program or the computer operating system adjusts the RGB or CMYK combinations specified in the program through color management. The resulting printed color may not be an exact match of the Color Samples pages.

Prints on color transparencies appear dark when projected

Note: This problem occurs when projecting transparencies with reflective overhead projectors. To obtain the highest projected color quality, transmissive overhead projectors are recommended.

Action	Yes	No
Step 1 From the printer control panel, make sure the paper type setting is set to Transparency. Is the paper type setting correct?	Go to step 2.	Set the paper type to Transparency.
Step 2 Reduce the toner darkness, and then resend the print job. Does the print on the color transparency look lighter?	The problem is solved.	Go to step 3.

Action	Yes	No
Step 3 Make sure you are using a recommended type of color transparency, and then resend the print job. Does the print on the color transparency look lighter?	The problem is solved.	Contact customer support .

The color of the print does not match the color of the original file

Note: The color conversion tables used in Auto Color Correction mode generally approximate the colors of a standard computer monitor. However, because of technology differences that exist between printers and monitors, there are many colors that can also be affected by monitor variations and lighting conditions.

Action	Yes	No
Step 1 a Set Color Correction to Off. Note: When the printer color correction is disabled, the color is based on the print job information, and no color conversion is implemented. b Resend the print job. Does the color of the print match the color of the file on the computer screen?	The problem is solved.	Go to step 2.
Step 2 From the Quality menu on the printer control panel, do the following: a Select Color Correction , and then select Manual . b Select Manual Color , and then select the appropriate color conversion table for the affected object type. c Resend the print job. Does the color of the print match the color of the file on the computer screen?	The problem is solved.	Contact customer support .

The print appears tinted

Action	Yes	No
Adjust the color balance. a From the Color Balance menu on the printer control panel, increase or decrease the values for cyan, magenta, yellow, and black. b Resend the print job. Does the print still appear tinted?	The problem is solved.	Contact customer support .

Solving copy problems

- “Copier does not respond” on page 307

- “Scanner unit does not close” on page 307
- “Poor copy quality” on page 308
- “Partial document or photo copies” on page 309

Copier does not respond

Action	Yes	No
Step 1 Check if an error or status message appears on the display. Does an error or status message appear?	Clear the error or status message.	Go to step 2.
Step 2 Check if the power cord is plugged into the printer and a properly grounded electrical outlet. Is the power cord plugged into the printer and a properly grounded electrical outlet?	Go to step 3.	Connect the power cord to the printer and a properly grounded electrical outlet.
Step 3 Turn off the printer, then wait for about 10 seconds, and then turn it back on. Did Performing Self Test and Ready appear?	The problem is solved.	Contact customer support .

Scanner unit does not close

Action	Yes	No
Check if there are no obstructions between the scanner unit and the printer. a Lift the scanner unit. b Remove any obstruction that keeps the scanner unit open. c Lower the scanner unit. Did the scanner unit close properly?	The problem is solved.	Contact customer support .

Poor copy quality

Action	Yes	No
Step 1 Check if an error or status message appears on the display. Does an error or status message appear?	Clear the error or status message.	Go to step 2.
Step 2 Check the quality of the original document. Is the quality of the original document satisfactory?	Go to step 3.	Increase the scan resolution setting for a higher-quality output.
Step 3 If dark marks appear on prints, then clean the scanner glass and the ADF glass using a clean, lint-free cloth dampened with water. Is the scanner glass clean?	Go to step 4.	See “Cleaning the scanner glass” on page 212.
Step 4 Send a print job, and then check for print quality problems. a From the General Settings menu, adjust the Eco-Mode settings. b From the Copy menu, adjust the Darkness setting. c If the print remains faded, then replace the toner cartridge. Is the print quality satisfactory?	Go to step 5.	See “Print quality problems” on page 286.
Step 5 Check the placement of the document or photo. Make sure the document or photo is loaded facedown on the scanner glass in the upper left corner. Is the document or photo loaded correctly?	Go to step 6.	Place the document or photo facedown on the scanner glass in the upper left corner.
Step 6 Check the copy settings. From the Copy screen, check if the Content Type and Content Source settings are correct for the document being scanned. Are the Content Type and Content Source settings correct for the document being scanned?	Go to step 7.	Change the Content Type and Content Source settings to match the document being scanned.
Step 7 Check for patterns on print. a From the printer control panel, navigate to: Copy > Sharpness > select a lower setting Note: Make sure no scaling is being selected. b Resend the copy job. Do patterns appear on prints?	Go to step 8.	The problem is solved.

Action	Yes	No
Step 8 Check for missing or faded text on prints. a From the Copy screen, adjust the settings of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sharpness—Increase the sharpness setting. • Contrast—Increase the contrast setting. b Resend the copy job. Do prints have missing or faded text?	Go to step 9.	The problem is solved.
Step 9 Check for washed-out or overexposed output. a From the Copy screen, adjust the settings of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Background Removal—Reduce the current setting. • Darkness—Increase the current setting. b Resend the copy job. Do pages show washed-out or overexposed prints?	Contact customer support .	The problem is solved.

Partial document or photo copies

Action	Yes	No
Step 1 Check the placement of the document or photo. Make sure the document or photo is loaded facedown on the scanner glass in the upper left corner. Is the document or photo loaded correctly?	Go to step 2.	Place the document or photo facedown on the scanner glass in the upper left corner.
Step 2 Check if the paper size setting matches the size of the paper loaded in the tray. From the Paper menu on the printer control panel, check the Paper Size setting. Does the paper size setting match the size of the paper loaded in the tray.	Go to step 3.	Change the paper size setting to match the paper loaded in the tray, or load the tray with paper that matches the paper size setting.
Step 3 a Specify the paper size. Depending on your operating system, specify the paper size in Printing Preferences or the Print dialog. b Resend the print job. Do copies print properly?	The problem is solved.	Contact customer support .

Solving fax problems

Caller ID is not shown

Action	Yes	No
<p>Contact your telephone company to check if your telephone line is subscribed to the caller ID service.</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If your region supports multiple caller ID patterns, then you may have to change the default setting. There are two settings available: FSK (pattern 1) and DTMF (pattern 2). • The availability of these settings in the Fax menu depends on whether your country or region supports multiple caller ID patterns. • Contact your telephone company to determine which pattern or switch setting to use. <p>Does the caller ID appear?</p>	The problem is solved.	Contact customer support .

Cannot send or receive a fax

Action	Yes	No
<p>Step 1</p> <p>Check if an error or status message appears on the display.</p> <p>Is there an error or status message on the display?</p>	Clear the error or status message.	Go to step 2.
<p>Step 2</p> <p>Check if the power cord is plugged into the printer and a properly grounded electrical outlet.</p> <p>Is the power cord plugged into the printer and a properly grounded electrical outlet?</p>	Go to step 3.	Connect the power cord to the printer and a properly grounded electrical outlet.
<p>Step 3</p> <p>Check the power.</p> <p>Check if the printer is plugged in and turned on, and if Ready appears on the display.</p> <p>Is the printer turned on, and does Ready appear on the display?</p>	Go to step 4.	Turn on the printer, and then wait until Ready appears on the display.

Action	Yes	No
<p>Step 4</p> <p>Check the printer connections.</p> <p>If applicable, check if the cable connections for the following equipment are secure:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Telephone • Handset • Answering machine <p>Are the cable connections secure?</p>	Go to step 5.	Securely connect the cables.
<p>Step 5</p> <p>a Check the telephone wall jack.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Plug the telephone cable into the wall jack. 2 Listen for a dial tone. 3 If you do not hear a dial tone, then plug a different telephone cable into the wall jack. 4 If you still do not hear a dial tone, then plug the telephone cable into a different wall jack. 5 If you hear a dial tone, then connect the printer to that wall jack. <p>b Try sending or receiving a fax.</p> <p>Can you send or receive a fax?</p>	The problem is solved.	Go to step 6.
<p>Step 6</p> <p>Check if the printer is connected to an analog phone service or the correct digital connector.</p> <p>The fax modem is an analog device. Certain devices can be connected to the printer so that digital telephone services can be used.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If you are using an ISDN telephone service, then connect the printer to an analog telephone port (an R-interface port) on an ISDN terminal adapter. For more information and to request an R-interface port, contact your ISDN provider. • If you are using DSL, then connect to a DSL filter or router that will support analog use. For more information, contact your DSL provider. • If you are using a PBX telephone service, then make sure you are connecting to an analog connection on the PBX. If none exists, then consider installing an analog telephone line for the fax machine. <p>Is the printer connected to an analog phone service or the correct digital connector?</p>	Go to step 7.	Connect the printer to an analog phone service or the correct digital connector.

Action	Yes	No
Step 7 Check for a dial tone. Did you hear a dial tone?	Go to step 8.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Try calling the fax number to make sure that it is working properly. • If the telephone line is being used by another device, then wait until the other device is finished before sending a fax. • If you are using the On Hook Dial feature, then turn up the volume to check if you hear a dial tone.
Step 8 Temporarily disconnect other equipment (such as answering machines, computers with modems, or telephone line splitters) between the printer and the telephone line, and then try sending or receiving a fax. Can you send or receive a fax?	The problem is solved.	Go to step 9.
Step 9 a Temporarily disable call waiting. Contact your telephone company to obtain the keypad sequence for temporarily disabling call waiting. b Try sending or receiving a fax. Can you send or receive a fax?	The problem is solved.	Go to step 10.
Step 10 a Temporarily disable voice mail service. For more information, contact your telephone company. Note: If you want to use both voice mail and the printer, then consider adding a second telephone line for the printer. b Try sending or receiving a fax. Can you send or receive a fax?	The problem is solved.	Go to step 11.
Step 11 Scan the original document one page at a time. a Dial the fax number. b Scan the document one page at a time. Can you send or receive a fax?	The problem is solved.	Contact customer support .

Can send but not receive faxes

Action	Yes	No
Step 1 Check the tray or feeder. If empty, then load paper in the tray or feeder. Can you receive faxes?	The problem is solved.	Go to step 2.
Step 2 Check the ring count delay settings. a Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> View the printer IP address on the printer home screen. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123. If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly. b Click Settings > Fax Settings > Analog Fax Setup . c In the “Rings to Answer” field, enter the number of times you want the phone to ring before the printer answers. d Click Submit . Can you receive faxes?	The problem is solved.	Go to step 3.
Step 3 Replace the toner cartridge. For more information, see the instruction sheet that came with the supply. Can you receive faxes?	The problem is solved.	Contact customer support .

Can receive but not send faxes



Action	Yes	No
Step 1 Check if the printer is in Fax mode. From the home screen, touch Fax to put the printer in Fax mode, and then send the fax. Note: The Multi Send application does not support the XPS output type. To use XPS, use the regular faxing method. Can you send faxes?	The problem is solved.	Go to step 2.

Action	Yes	No
Step 2 Load the original document properly. Load the original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF tray or facedown on the scanner glass in the upper left corner. Note: Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF tray. Place these items on the scanner glass. Can you send faxes?	The problem is solved.	Go to step 3.
Step 3 Set up the shortcut number properly. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check if the shortcut number has been set for the telephone number that you want to dial. • Dial the telephone number manually. Can you send faxes?	The problem is solved.	Contact customer support .

Fax and e-mail functions are not set up

Notes:

- Before you troubleshoot, check if the fax cables are connected.
- The indicator light is blinking red until you set up fax and e-mail.

Action	Yes	No
a From the home screen, navigate to:  > Settings > General Settings > Run initial setup > Yes > Submit b Turn off the printer, and then turn it back on. The "Select your language" screen appears on the printer display. c Select a language, and then touch  . d Select a country or region, and then touch Next . e Select a time zone, and then touch Next . f Select Fax and E-mail , and then touch Next . Are fax and e-mail functions set up?	The problem is solved.	Contact customer support .

Received fax has poor print quality

Action	Yes	No
Step 1 Ask the person who sent you the fax to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a Check if the quality of the original document is satisfactory. b Increase the fax scan resolution, if possible. c Resend the fax. Is the fax print quality satisfactory?	The problem is solved.	Go to step 2.
Step 2 Decrease the incoming fax transmission speed. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • View the printer IP address on the printer home screen. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123. • If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly. • Print a network setup page or menu settings page, and then locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> b Click Settings > Fax Settings > Analog Fax Setup. c In the Max Speed menu, click one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 2400 • 4800 • 9600 • 14400 • 33600 d Click Submit, and then resend the fax. Is the fax print quality satisfactory?	The problem is solved.	Go to step 3.
Step 3 Replace the toner cartridge. When Cartridge low [88.xy] appears, replace the cartridge, and then resend the fax. Is the fax print quality satisfactory?	The problem is solved.	Contact customer support .

Solving scanner problems

- “The scanner does not respond” on page 316
- “Scan job was not successful” on page 317
- “Scanner unit does not close” on page 317

- “Scanning takes too long or freezes the computer” on page 318
- “Poor scanned image quality” on page 318
- “Partial document or photo scans” on page 319
- “Cannot scan from a computer” on page 319

The scanner does not respond

Action	Yes	No
Step 1 Check if the printer is turned on. Is the printer turned on?	Go to step 2.	Turn on the printer.
Step 2 Check if the printer cable is securely attached to the printer and the computer, print server, option, or other network device. Is the printer cable securely attached to the printer and the computer, print server, option, or other network device?	Go to step 3.	Connect the printer cable securely to the printer and the computer, print server, option, or other network device.
Step 3 Check if the power cord is plugged into the printer and a properly grounded electrical outlet. Is the power cord plugged into the printer and a properly grounded electrical outlet?	Go to step 4.	Connect the power cord to the printer and a properly grounded electrical outlet.
Step 4 Check if the electrical outlet is turned off by a switch or breaker. Is the electrical outlet turned off by a switch or breaker?	Turn on the switch or reset the breaker.	Go to step 5.
Step 5 Check if the printer is plugged into any surge protectors, uninterruptible power supplies, or extension cords. Is the printer plugged into any surge protectors, uninterruptible power supplies, or extension cords?	Connect the printer power cord directly to a properly grounded electrical outlet.	Go to step 6.
Step 6 Check other electrical equipment plugged into the outlet. Are the other electrical equipment working?	Unplug the other electrical equipment and turn on the printer. If the printer does not work, then reconnect the other electrical equipment and then go to step 6.	Go to step 7.

Action	Yes	No
Step 7 Turn off the printer, then wait for about 10 seconds, and then turn the printer back on. Are the printer and scanner working?	The problem is solved.	Contact customer support .

Scan job was not successful

Action	Yes	No
Step 1 Check the cable connections. Make sure the Ethernet or USB cable is securely connected to the computer and the printer. Are the cables securely connected?	Go to step 2.	Connect the cables properly.
Step 2 Check if the file name is already in use. Is the file name already in use?	Change the file name.	Go to step 3.
Step 3 Check if the document or photo you want to scan is open in another application or being used by another user. Is the file you want to scan open by another application or user?	Close the file you are scanning.	Go to step 4.
Step 4 Check if either the Append time stamp or the Overwrite existing file check box is selected in the destination configuration settings. Is the Append time stamp or Overwrite existing file check box selected in the destination configuration settings?	Contact customer support .	Select the Append time stamp or Overwrite existing file check box in the destination configuration settings.

Scanner unit does not close

Action	Yes	No
Check if there are obstructions in the scanner unit. a Lift the scanner unit. b Remove any obstruction keeping the scanner unit open. c Lower the scanner unit. Did the scanner unit close correctly?	The problem is solved.	Contact customer support .

Scanning takes too long or freezes the computer

Action	Yes	No
Step 1 Check if other applications are interfering with the scan. Close all applications that are not being used. Does scanning still take too long or freeze the computer?	Go to step 2.	The problem is solved.
Step 2 Select a lower scan resolution. Does scanning still take too long or freeze the computer?	Contact customer support .	The problem is solved.

Poor scanned image quality

Action	Yes	No
Step 1 Check if an error message appears on the display. Is there an error message on the printer display?	Clear the error message.	Go to step 2.
Step 2 Check the quality of the original document. Is the quality of the original document satisfactory?	Go to step 3.	Increase the scan resolution settings for a higher-quality output.
Step 3 Clean the scanner glass and the ADF glass using a clean, lint-free cloth dampened with water. Is the scanner glass clean?	Go to step 4.	See “Cleaning the scanner glass” on page 212 .
Step 4 Check the placement of the document or photo. Make sure the document or photo is loaded facedown on the scanner glass in the upper left corner. Is the document or photo loaded correctly?	Go to step 5.	Place the document or photo facedown on the scanner glass in the upper left corner.
Step 5 Send a print job, and then check for print quality problems. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> From the General Settings menu, adjust the Eco-Mode settings. From the Copy menu, adjust the Darkness setting. When the print becomes faded, replace the toner cartridge. Is the print quality satisfactory?	Go to step 6.	See “Print quality problems” on page 286 .

Action	Yes	No
Step 6 Check the scan settings. From the Scan screen, make sure the Content Type and Content Source settings are correct for the document being scanned. Are the Content Type and Content Source settings correct for the document being scanned?	Go to step 7.	Change the Content Type and Content Source settings to match the document being scanned.
Step 7 Increase the scan resolution settings for a higher-quality output. Did the increased resolution produce a higher-quality output?	Problem solved.	Contact customer support .

Partial document or photo scans

Action	Yes	No
Check the placement of the document or photo. Make sure the document or photo is loaded facedown on the scanner glass in the upper left corner. Is the document or photo loaded correctly?	Contact customer support .	Load the document or photo facedown on the scanner glass in the upper left corner.

Cannot scan from a computer

Action	Yes	No
Step 1 Make sure the printer is turned on and that Ready appears on the printer display before scanning a job. Does Ready appear before scanning the job?	Go to step 3.	Go to step 2.
Step 2 Turn off the printer, then wait for about 10 seconds, and then turn the printer back on. Is there an error message on the printer display?	Clear the error message.	Go to step 3.
Step 3 Check the cable connections between the printer and the print server to make sure they are secure. For more information, see the setup documentation that came with the printer. Are the cable connections between the printer and the print server secure?	Contact customer support .	Tighten the cable connections.

Solving home screen applications problems

- “An application error has occurred” on page 320

An application error has occurred

Action	Yes	No
Step 1 Check the system log for relevant details. a Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field. If you do not know the IP address of the printer, then you can: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • View the IP address on the printer home screen. • Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages, and then locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section. Note: An IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123. b Click Settings > Apps > Apps Management > System tab > Log . c From the Filter menu, select an application status. d From the Application menu, select an application, and then click Submit . Does an error message appear in the log?	Go to step 2.	Contact customer support .
Step 2 Resolve the error. Is the application working now?	The problem is solved.	Contact customer support .

Embedded Web Server does not open

Action	Yes	No
Step 1 a Turn on the printer. b Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address. c Press Enter . Does the Embedded Web Server open?	The problem is solved.	Go to step 2.

Action	Yes	No
<p>Step 2</p> <p>Make sure the printer IP address is correct.</p> <p>a View the printer IP address:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> From the TCP/IP section in the Network/Ports menu By printing a network setup page or menu settings page, and then finding the TCP/IP section <p>Note: An IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.</p> <p>b Open a Web browser, and then type the IP address.</p> <p>Note: Depending on the network settings, you may need to type "https://" instead of "http://" before the printer IP address to access the Embedded Web Server.</p> <p>c Press Enter.</p> <p>Does the Embedded Web Server open?</p>	The problem is solved.	Go to step 3.
<p>Step 3</p> <p>Check if the network is working.</p> <p>a Print a network setup page.</p> <p>b Check the first section of the network setup page and confirm that the status is Connected.</p> <p>Note: If the status is Not Connected, then the connection may be intermittent, or the network cable may be defective. Contact your system support person for a solution, and then print another network setup page.</p> <p>c Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address.</p> <p>d Press Enter.</p> <p>Does the Embedded Web Server open?</p>	The problem is solved.	Go to step 4.
<p>Step 4</p> <p>Check if the cable connections to the printer and print server are secure.</p> <p>a Connect the cables properly. For more information, see the setup documentation that came with the printer.</p> <p>b Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address.</p> <p>c Press Enter.</p> <p>Does the Embedded Web Server open?</p>	The problem is solved.	Go to step 5.
<p>Step 5</p> <p>Temporarily disable the Web proxy servers.</p> <p>Proxy servers may block or restrict you from accessing certain Web sites including the Embedded Web Server.</p> <p>Does the Embedded Web Server open?</p>	The problem is solved.	Contact your system support person.

Contacting customer support

When you contact customer support, you will need to be able to describe the problem you are experiencing, the message on the printer display, and the troubleshooting steps you have already taken to find a solution.

You need to know your printer model type and serial number. For more information, see the label at the back of the printer. The serial number is also listed on the menu settings page.

Lexmark has various ways to help you solve your printing problem. Visit the Lexmark Web site at <http://support.lexmark.com>, and then select one of the following:

Tech Library	You can browse our library of manuals, support documentation, drivers, and other downloads to help you solve common problems.
E-mail	You can send an e-mail to the Lexmark team, describing your problem. A service representative will respond and provide you with information to solve your problem.
Live chat	You can chat directly with a service representative. They can work with you to solve your printer problem or provide assistance through Assisted Service where the service representative can remotely connect to your computer through the Internet to troubleshoot problems, install updates, or complete other tasks to help you successfully use your Lexmark product.

Telephone support is also available. In the U.S. or Canada, call 1-800-539-6275. For other countries or regions, visit <http://support.lexmark.com>.

Notices

Product information

Product name:

Lexmark CX410e and CX410de

Machine type:

7527

Model(s):

415, 436

Edition notice

June 2013

The following paragraph does not apply to any country where such provisions are inconsistent with local law:

LEXMARK INTERNATIONAL, INC., PROVIDES THIS PUBLICATION "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. Some states do not allow disclaimer of express or implied warranties in certain transactions; therefore, this statement may not apply to you.

This publication could include technical inaccuracies or typographical errors. Changes are periodically made to the information herein; these changes will be incorporated in later editions. Improvements or changes in the products or the programs described may be made at any time.

References in this publication to products, programs, or services do not imply that the manufacturer intends to make these available in all countries in which it operates. Any reference to a product, program, or service is not intended to state or imply that only that product, program, or service may be used. Any functionally equivalent product, program, or service that does not infringe any existing intellectual property right may be used instead. Evaluation and verification of operation in conjunction with other products, programs, or services, except those expressly designated by the manufacturer, are the user's responsibility.

For Lexmark technical support, visit <http://support.lexmark.com>.

For information on supplies and downloads, visit www.lexmark.com.

© 2013 Lexmark International, Inc.

All rights reserved.

GOVERNMENT END USERS

The Software Program and any related documentation are "Commercial Items," as that term is defined in 48 C.F.R. 2.101, "Computer Software" and "Commercial Computer Software Documentation," as such terms are used in 48 C.F.R. 12.212 or 48 C.F.R. 227.7202, as applicable. Consistent with 48 C.F.R. 12.212 or 48 C.F.R. 227.7202-1 through 227.7202-4, as applicable, the Commercial Computer Software and Commercial Software Documentation are licensed to the U.S. Government end users (a) only as Commercial Items and (b) with only those rights as are granted to all other end users pursuant to the terms and conditions herein.

Licensing notices

All licensing notices associated with this product can be viewed from the root directory of the installation software CD.

Trademarks

Lexmark, Lexmark with diamond design, MarkNet, and MarkVision are trademarks of Lexmark International, Inc., registered in the United States and/or other countries.

Mac and the Mac logo are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

PCL® is a registered trademark of the Hewlett-Packard Company. PCL is Hewlett-Packard Company's designation of a set of printer commands (language) and functions included in its printer products. This printer is intended to be compatible with the PCL language. This means the printer recognizes PCL commands used in various application programs, and that the printer emulates the functions corresponding to the commands.

The following terms are trademarks or registered trademarks of these companies:

Albertus	The Monotype Corporation plc
Antique Olive	Monsieur Marcel OLIVE
Apple-Chancery	Apple Computer, Inc.
Arial	The Monotype Corporation plc
CG Times	Based on Times New Roman under license from The Monotype Corporation plc, is a product of Agfa Corporation
Chicago	Apple Computer, Inc.
Clarendon	Linotype-Hell AG and/or its subsidiaries
Eurostile	Nebiolo
Geneva	Apple Computer, Inc.
GillSans	The Monotype Corporation plc
Helvetica	Linotype-Hell AG and/or its subsidiaries
Hoefler	Jonathan Hoefler Type Foundry
ITC Avant Garde Gothic	International Typeface Corporation
ITC Bookman	International Typeface Corporation
ITC Mona Lisa	International Typeface Corporation
ITC Zapf Chancery	International Typeface Corporation
Joanna	The Monotype Corporation plc
Marigold	Arthur Baker
Monaco	Apple Computer, Inc.
New York	Apple Computer, Inc.
Oxford	Arthur Baker
Palatino	Linotype-Hell AG and/or its subsidiaries
Stempel Garamond	Linotype-Hell AG and/or its subsidiaries

Taffy	Agfa Corporation
Times New Roman	The Monotype Corporation plc
Univers	Linotype-Hell AG and/or its subsidiaries

All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

AirPrint and the AirPrint logo are trademarks of Apple, Inc.

Noise emission levels

The following measurements were made in accordance with ISO 7779 and reported in conformance with ISO 9296.

Note: Some modes may not apply to your product.

1-meter average sound pressure, dBA	
Printing	51 dBA
Scanning	50 dBA
Copying	50 dBA
Ready	16 dBA

Values are subject to change. See www.lexmark.com for current values.

Waste from Electrical and Electronic Equipment (WEEE) directive



The WEEE logo signifies specific recycling programs and procedures for electronic products in countries of the European Union. We encourage the recycling of our products.

If you have further questions about recycling options, visit the Lexmark Web site at www.lexmark.com for your local sales office phone number.

Product disposal

Do not dispose of the printer or supplies in the same manner as normal household waste. Consult your local authorities for disposal and recycling options.

Static sensitivity notice



This symbol identifies static-sensitive parts. Do not touch in the areas near these symbols without first touching the metal frame of the printer.

ENERGY STAR

Any Lexmark product bearing the ENERGY STAR emblem on the product or on a start-up screen is certified to comply with Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) ENERGY STAR requirements as configured when shipped by Lexmark.



Temperature information

Ambient operating temperature	15.6 to 32.2°C (60 to 90°F)
Shipping temperature	-40 to 43.3°C (-40 to 110°F)
Storage temperature and relative humidity	2 to 35°C (34 to 95°F) 8 to 80% RH

Laser notice

The printer is certified in the U.S. to conform to the requirements of DHHS 21 CFR, Chapter I, Subchapter J for Class I (1) laser products, and elsewhere is certified as a Class I laser product conforming to the requirements of IEC 60825-1.

Class I laser products are not considered to be hazardous. The printer contains internally a Class IIIb (3b) laser that is nominally a 7 milliwatt gallium arsenide laser operating in the wavelength of 655-675 nanometers. The laser system and printer are designed so there is never any human access to laser radiation above a Class I level during normal operation, user maintenance, or prescribed service condition.

Laser advisory label

A laser notice label may be affixed to this printer as shown:

DANGER - Invisible laser radiation when cartridges are removed and interlock defeated. Avoid exposure to laser beam.

PERIGO - Radiação a laser invisível será liberada se os cartuchos forem removidos e o lacre rompido. Evite a exposição aos feixes de laser.

Opasnost - Nevidljivo lasersko zračenje kada su kasete uklonjene i poništena sigurnosna veza. Izbjegavati izlaganje zracima.

NEBEZPEČÍ - Když jsou vyjmuty kazety a je odblokována pojistka, ze zařízení je vysíláno neviditelné laserové záření. Nevystavujte se působení laserového paprsku.

FARE - Usynlig laserstrålning, når patroner fjernes, og spærreanordningen er slået fra. Undgå at blive udsat for laserstrålen.

GEVAAR - Onzichtbare laserstraling wanneer cartridges worden verwijderd en een vergrendeling wordt genegeerd. Voorkom blootstelling aan de laser.

DANGER - Rayonnements laser invisibles lors du retrait des cartouches et du déverrouillage des loquets. Eviter toute exposition au rayon laser.

VAARA - Näkymätöntä lasersäteilyä on varottava, kun värikasetit on poistettu ja lukitus on auki. Vältä lasersäteelle altistumista.

GEFAHR - Unsichtbare Laserstrahlung beim Herausnehmen von Druckkassetten und offener Sicherheitssperre. Laserstrahl meiden.

ΚΙΝΔΥΝΟΣ - Εκκυσση αόρατης ακτινοβολίας laser κατά την αφαίρεση των κασετών και την απασφάλιση της μανδάλωσης. Αποφεύγετε την έκθεση στην ακτινοβολία laser.

VESZÉLY - Nem látható lézersugárzás fordulhat elő a patronok eltávolításakor és a zárószekerek felbontásakor. Kerülje a lézersugárnak való kitettséget.

PERICOLO - Emissioni di radiazioni laser invisibili durante la rimozione delle cartucce e del blocco. Evitare l'esposizione al raggio laser.

FARE - Usynlig laserstrålning når kassetene tas ut og sperren er satt ut av spill. Unngå eksponering for laserstrålen.

NIEBEZPIECZEŃSTWO - niewidzialne promieniowanie laserowe podczas usuwania kaset i blokady. Należy unikać naświetlenia promieniem lasera.

ОПАСНО! - Невидимое лазерное излучение при извлеченных картриджах и снятии блокировки. Избегайте воздействия лазерных лучей.

Pozor - Nebezpečnostvo neviditeľného laserového žiarenia pri odobratých kazetách a odblokovanej poistke. Nevystavujte sa lúčom.

PELIGRO - Se producen radiaciones láser invisibles al extraer los cartuchos con el interbloqueo desactivado. Evite la exposición al haz de láser.

FARA - Osynlig laserstrålning när patroner tas ur och spärrmekanismen är upphävd. Undvik exponering för laserstrålen.

危険 - 当移除碳粉盒及互锁失效时会产生看不见的激光辐射, 请避免暴露在激光光束下。

危険 - 移除碳粉匣與安全連續開關失效時會產生看不見的雷射輻射。請避免暴露在雷射光束下。

危険 - カートリッジが取り外され、内部ロックが無効になると、見えないレーザー光が放射されます。このレーザー光に当たらないようにしてください。

Power consumption

Product power consumption

The following table documents the power consumption characteristics of the product.

Note: Some modes may not apply to your product.

Mode	Description	Power consumption (Watts)
Printing	The product is generating hard-copy output from electronic inputs.	600 (one-sided); 380 (two-sided)
Copy	The product is generating hard-copy output from hard-copy original documents.	640
Scan	The product is scanning hard-copy documents.	55
Ready	The product is waiting for a print job.	35
Sleep Mode	The product is in a high-level energy-saving mode.	6
Hibernate	The product is in a low-level energy-saving mode.	0.5
Off	The product is plugged into an electrical outlet, but the power switch is turned off.	0

The power consumption levels listed in the previous table represent time-averaged measurements. Instantaneous power draws may be substantially higher than the average.

Values are subject to change. See www.lexmark.com for current values.

Sleep Mode

This product is designed with an energy-saving mode called *Sleep Mode*. The Sleep Mode saves energy by lowering power consumption during extended periods of inactivity. The Sleep Mode is automatically engaged after this product is not used for a specified period of time, called the *Sleep Mode Timeout*.

Factory default Sleep Mode Timeout for this product (in minutes):	30 minutes
---	------------

By using the configuration menus, the Sleep Mode Timeout can be modified between 1 minute and 120 minutes. Setting the Sleep Mode Timeout to a low value reduces energy consumption, but may increase the response time of the product. Setting the Sleep Mode Timeout to a high value maintains a fast response, but uses more energy.

Hibernate Mode

This product is designed with an ultra-low power operating mode called *Hibernate mode*. When operating in Hibernate Mode, all other systems and devices are powered down safely.

The Hibernate mode can be entered in any of the following methods:

- Using the Hibernate Timeout
- Using the Schedule Power modes
- Using the Sleep/Hibernate button

Factory default Hibernate Timeout for this product in all countries or regions except for EU countries and Switzerland	N/A
Factory default value for this product in EU countries or regions and Switzerland	3 days

The amount of time the printer waits after a job is printed before it enters Hibernate mode can be modified between one hour and one month.

Off mode

If this product has an off mode which still consumes a small amount of power, then to completely stop product power consumption, disconnect the power supply cord from the electrical outlet.

Total energy usage

It is sometimes helpful to calculate the total product energy usage. Since power consumption claims are provided in power units of Watts, the power consumption should be multiplied by the time the product spends in each mode in order to calculate energy usage. The total product energy usage is the sum of each mode's energy usage.

Regulatory notices for electromagnetic compatibility

This section contains regulatory information pertaining to electromagnetic compatibility.

Federal Communications Commission (FCC) compliance information statement

This product has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

The FCC Class B limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference when the equipment is operated in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult your point of purchase or service representative for additional suggestions.

The manufacturer is not responsible for radio or television interference caused by using other than recommended cables or by unauthorized changes or modifications to this equipment. Unauthorized changes or modifications could void the user's authority to operate this equipment.

Note: To assure compliance with FCC regulations on electromagnetic interference for a Class B computing device, use a properly shielded and grounded cable such as Lexmark part number 1021231 for parallel attach or 1021294 for USB attach. Use of a substitute cable not properly shielded and grounded may result in a violation of FCC regulations.

Any questions regarding this compliance information statement should be directed to:

Director of Lexmark Technology & Services
Lexmark International, Inc.
740 West New Circle Road
Lexington, KY 40550
(859) 232-3000

Industry Canada compliance statement

This Class B digital apparatus meets all requirements of the Canadian Interference-Causing Equipment Standard ICES-003.

Avis de conformité aux normes de l'industrie du Canada

Cet appareil numérique de classe B est conforme aux exigences de la norme canadienne relative aux équipements pouvant causer des interférences NMB-003.

日本の VCCI 規定

製品にこのマークが表示されている場合、次の要件を満たしています。



この装置は、クラス B 情報技術装置です。この装置は、家庭環境で使用することを目的としていますが、この装置がラジオやテレビジョン受信機に近接して使用されると、受信障害を引き起こすことがあります。

取扱説明書に従って正しい取り扱いをしてください。

VCCI-B

European Community (EC) directives conformity

This product is in conformity with the protection requirements of EC Council directives 2004/108/EC, 2006/95/EC and 2009/125/EC on the approximation and harmonization of the laws of the Member States relating to electromagnetic compatibility, safety of electrical equipment designed for use within certain voltage limits and the ecodesign of energy-related products.

The manufacturer of this product is: Lexmark International, Inc., 740 West New Circle Road, Lexington, KY, 40550 USA. The authorized representative is: Lexmark International Technology Hungária Kft., 8 Lechner Ödön fasor, Millennium Tower III, 1095 Budapest HUNGARY, A declaration of conformity to the requirements of the Directives is available upon request from the Authorized Representative.

This product satisfies the Class B limits of EN 55022 and safety requirements of EN 60950.

Regulatory notices for telecommunication terminal equipment

This section contains regulatory information pertaining to products that contain telecommunication terminal equipment such as facsimile.

Notice to users of the US telephone network: FCC requirements

This equipment complies with Part 68 of the FCC rules and the requirements adopted by the Administrative Council for Terminal Attachments (ACTA). On the back of this equipment is a label that contains, among other information, a product identifier in the format US:AAAEQ##TXXXX. If requested, this number must be provided to your telephone company.

This equipment uses the RJ-11C Universal Service Order Code (USOC) jack.

A plug and jack used to connect this equipment to the premises' wiring and telephone network must comply with the applicable FCC Part 68 rules and requirements adopted by the ACTA. A compliant telephone cord and modular plug is provided with this product. It is designed to be connected to a compatible modular jack that is also compliant. See your setup documentation for more information.

The Ringer Equivalence Number (REN) is used to determine the number of devices that may be connected to a telephone line. Excessive RENs on a telephone line may result in the devices not ringing in response to an incoming call. In most but not all areas, the sum of RENs should not exceed five (5.0). To be certain of the number of devices that may be connected to a line, as determined by the total RENs, contact your local telephone company. For products approved after July 23, 2001, the REN for this product is part of the product identifier that has the format US:AAAEQ##TXXXX. The digits represented by ## are the REN without a decimal point (for example, 03 is a REN of 0.3). For earlier products, the REN is shown separately on the label.

If this equipment causes harm to the telephone network, the telephone company will notify you in advance that temporary discontinuance of service may be required. If advance notice is not practical, the telephone company will notify the customer as soon as possible. You will also be advised of your right to file a complaint with the FCC.

The telephone company may make changes in its facilities, equipment, operations or procedures that could affect the operation of this equipment. If this happens, the telephone company will provide advance notice in order for you to make necessary modifications to maintain uninterrupted service.

If you experience trouble with this equipment, for repair or warranty information, contact Lexmark International, Inc. at www.lexmark.com or your Lexmark representative. If the equipment is causing harm to the telephone network, the telephone company may request that you disconnect the equipment until the problem is resolved.

This equipment contains no user serviceable parts. For repair and warranty information, contact Lexmark International, Inc. See the previous paragraph for contact information.

Connection to party line service is subject to state tariffs. Contact the state public utility commission, public service commission, or corporation commission for information.

If your home has specially wired alarm equipment connected to the telephone line, ensure the installation of this equipment does not disable your alarm equipment. If you have questions about what will disable alarm equipment, consult your telephone company or a qualified installer.

Telephone companies report that electrical surges, typically lightning transients, are very destructive to customer terminal equipment connected to AC power sources. This has been identified as a major nationwide problem. It is recommended that the customer install an appropriate AC surge arrestor in the AC outlet to which this device is connected. An appropriate AC surge arrestor is defined as one that is suitably rated, and certified by UL (Underwriter's Laboratories), another NRTL (Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory), or a recognized safety certification body in the country/region of use. This is to avoid damage to the equipment caused by local lightning strikes and other electrical surges.

The Telephone Consumer Protection Act of 1991 makes it unlawful for any person to use a computer or other electronic device, including fax machines, to send any message unless said message clearly contains in a margin at the top or bottom of each transmitted page or on the first page of the transmission, the date and time it is sent and an identification of the business or other entity, or other individual sending the message, and the telephone number of the sending machine or such business, other entity, or individual. (The telephone number provided may not be a 900 number or any other number for which charges exceed local or long-distance transmission charges.)

See your user documentation in order to program this information into your fax machine.

Notice to users of the Canadian telephone network

This product meets the applicable Industry Canada technical specifications. The Ringer Equivalence Number (REN) is an indication of the maximum number of terminals allowed to be connected to a telephone interface. The terminus of an interface may consist of any combination of devices, subject only to the requirement that the sum of the RENs of all the devices does not exceed five. The modem REN is located on the rear of the equipment on the product labeling.

Telephone companies report that electrical surges, typically lightning transients, are very destructive to customer terminal equipment connected to AC power sources. This has been identified as a major nationwide problem. It is recommended that the customer install an appropriate AC surge arrestor in the AC outlet to which this device is connected. An appropriate AC surge arrestor is defined as one that is suitably rated, and certified by UL (Underwriter's Laboratories), another NRTL (Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory), or a recognized safety certification body in the country/region of use. This is to avoid damage to the equipment caused by local lightning strikes and other electrical surges.

This equipment uses CA11A telephone jacks.

Avis réservé aux utilisateurs du réseau téléphonique du Canada

Ce produit est conforme aux spécifications techniques d'Industrie Canada. Le numéro REN (ringer equivalence number : numéro d'équivalence de sonnerie) fournit une indication du nombre maximum de terminaux pouvant être connectés à l'interface téléphonique. En bout de ligne, le nombre d'appareils qui peuvent être connectés n'est pas directement limité, mais la somme des REN de ces appareils ne doit pas dépasser cinq. Le numéro REN du modem est indiqué sur l'étiquette produit située à l'arrière de l'équipement.

Les compagnies de téléphone constatent que les surtensions électriques, en particulier celles dues à la foudre, entraînent d'importants dégâts sur les terminaux privés connectés à des sources d'alimentation CA. Il s'agit-là d'un problème majeur d'échelle nationale. En conséquence, il vous est recommandé de brancher un parasurtenseur dans

la prise de courant à laquelle l'équipement est connecté. Utilisez un parasurtenseur répondant à des caractéristiques nominales satisfaisantes et certifié par le laboratoire d'assureurs UL (Underwriter's Laboratories), un autre laboratoire agréé de type NRTL (Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory) ou un organisme de certification agréé dans votre région ou pays. Ceci prévient tout endommagement de l'équipement causé par les orages et autres surtensions électriques.

Cet équipement utilise des prises de téléphone CA11A.

Industry Canada (Canada)

This device complies with Industry Canada specification RSS-210. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

This device has been designed to operate only with the antenna provided. Use of any other antenna is strictly prohibited per regulations of Industry Canada.

To prevent radio interference to the licensed service, this device is intended to be operated indoors and away from windows to provide maximum shielding. Equipment (or its transmit antenna) that is installed outdoors is subject to licensing.

The installer of this radio equipment must ensure that the antenna is located or pointed such that it does not emit RF fields in excess of Health Canada limits for the general population; consult Safety Code 6, obtainable from Health Canada's Web site www.hc-sc.gc.ca/rpb.

The term "IC:" before the certification/registration number only signifies that the Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

Industry Canada (Canada)

Cet appareil est conforme à la norme RSS-210 d'Industry Canada. Son fonctionnement est soumis aux deux conditions suivantes :

(1) cet appareil ne doit pas provoquer d'interférences et (2) il doit accepter toute interférence reçue, y compris celles risquant d'altérer son fonctionnement.

Cet appareil a été conçu pour fonctionner uniquement avec l'antenne fournie. L'utilisation de toute autre antenne est strictement interdite par la réglementation d'Industry Canada.

En application des réglementations d'Industry Canada, l'utilisation d'une antenne de gain supérieur est strictement interdite.

Pour empêcher toute interférence radio au service faisant l'objet d'une licence, cet appareil doit être utilisé à l'intérieur et loin des fenêtres afin de garantir une protection optimale.

Si le matériel (ou son antenne d'émission) est installé à l'extérieur, il doit faire l'objet d'une licence.

L'installateur de cet équipement radio doit veiller à ce que l'antenne soit implantée et dirigée de manière à n'émettre aucun champ HF dépassant les limites fixées pour l'ensemble de la population par Santé Canada. Reportez-vous au Code de sécurité 6 que vous pouvez consulter sur le site Web de Santé Canada www.hc-sc.gc.ca/rpb.

Le terme « IC » précédant le numéro de d'accréditation/inscription signifie simplement que le produit est conforme aux spécifications techniques d'Industry Canada.

Notice to users of the New Zealand telephone network

The following are special conditions for the Facsimile User Instructions. The grant of a telepermit for any item of terminal equipment indicates only that Telecom has accepted that the item complies with minimum conditions for connection to its network. It indicates no endorsement of the product by Telecom, nor does it provide any sort of warranty. Above all, it provides no assurance that any item will work correctly in all respects with another item of telepermitted equipment of a different make or model, nor does it imply that any product is compatible with all of Telecom's network services.

This equipment shall not be set up to make automatic calls to the Telecom's 111 Emergency Service.

This equipment may not provide for the effective hand-over of a call to another device connected to the same line.


This equipment should not be used under any circumstances that may constitute a nuisance to other Telecom customers.

Some parameters required for compliance with Telecom's telepermit requirements are dependent on the equipment associated with this device. The associated equipment shall be set to operate within the following limits for compliance to Telecom's specifications:

- There shall be no more than 10 call attempts to the same number within any 30 minute period for any single manual call initiation, and
- The equipment shall go on-hook for a period of not less than 30 seconds between the end of one attempt and the beginning of the next call attempt.
- The equipment shall be set to ensure that automatic calls to different numbers are spaced such that there is not less than 5 seconds between the end of one call attempt and the beginning of another.

Japanese telecom notice

The installed optional modem is in compliance with Japanese Telecommunication Law and has been Certified by JATE, with Certification Number A11-0160001.

	Lexmark International, Inc.
	LEX-M03-002
	A11-0160001JP

Using this product in Switzerland

This product requires a Swiss billing tone filter (Lexmark part number 80D1877) to be installed on any line which receives metering pulses in Switzerland. The filter must be used, as metering pulses are present on all analog telephone lines in Switzerland.

Utilisation de ce produit en Suisse

Cet appareil nécessite l'utilisation d'un filtre de tonalité de facturation suisse (n° de référence Lexmark : 80D1877) devant être installé sur toute ligne recevant des impulsions de comptage en Suisse. Ce filtre doit être utilisé pour toute installation car ces impulsions existent sur toutes les lignes téléphoniques suisses.

Verwendung dieses Produkts in der Schweiz

Für dieses Produkt muss ein schweizerischer Billing Tone Filter zur Zählzeichenübertragung (Lexmark Teilenummer 80D1877) für jede Leitung installiert werden, über die in der Schweiz Zeitsteuertakte übertragen werden. Die Verwendung des Filters ist obligatorisch, da in allen analogen Telefonleitungen in der Schweiz Zeitsteuertakte vorhanden sind.

Uso del prodotto in Svizzera

Questo prodotto richiede un filtro toni Billing svizzero, (codice Lexmark 80D1877) da installare su tutte le linee che ricevono impulsi remoti in Svizzera. È necessario utilizzare il filtro poiché gli impulsi remoti sono presenti su tutte le linee analogiche in Svizzera.

Notice to Users in the European Union

Products bearing the CE mark are in conformity with the protection requirements of EC Council directives 2004/108/EC, 2006/95/EC, 1999/5/EC, and 2009/125/EC on the approximation and harmonization of the laws of the Member States relating to electromagnetic compatibility, safety of electrical equipment designed for use within certain voltage limits, radio equipment and telecommunications terminal equipment and on the ecodesign of energy-related products.

Compliance is indicated by the CE marking.



The manufacturer of this product is: Lexmark International, Inc., 740 West New Circle Road, Lexington, KY, 40550 USA. The authorized representative is: Lexmark International Technology Hungária Kft., 8 Lechner Ödön fasor, Millennium Tower III, 1095 Budapest HUNGARY, A declaration of conformity to the requirements of the Directives is available upon request from the Authorized Representative.

This product satisfies the Class B limits of EN 55022 and safety requirements of EN 60950.

Refer to the table at the end of the Notices section for further compliance information.

Regulatory notices for wireless products

This section contains the following regulatory information pertaining to wireless products that contain transmitters, for example, but not limited to, wireless network cards or proximity card readers.

Modular component notice

This product may contain the following modular component(s):

Lexmark Regulatory Type/Model LEX-M01-005, FCC ID: IYLLEXM01005; IC:2376A-M01005

Exposure to radio frequency radiation

The radiated output power of this device is far below the radio frequency exposure limits of the FCC and other regulatory agencies. A minimum separation of 20 cm (8 inches) must be maintained between the antenna and any persons for this device to satisfy the RF exposure requirements of the FCC and other regulatory agencies.

Notice to users in the European Union

This product is in conformity with the protection requirements of EC Council directives 2004/108/EC, 2006/95/EC, 1999/5/EC, and 2009/125/EC on the approximation and harmonization of the laws of the Member States relating to electromagnetic compatibility, safety of electrical equipment designed for use within certain voltage limits, radio equipment and telecommunications terminal equipment and on the ecodesign of energy-related products.

Compliance is indicated by the CE marking.



The manufacturer of this product is: Lexmark International, Inc., 740 West New Circle Road, Lexington, KY, 40550 USA. The authorized representative is: Lexmark International Technology Hungária Kft., 8 Lechner Ödön fasor, Millennium Tower III, 1095 Budapest HUNGARY, A declaration of conformity to the requirements of the Directives is available upon request from the Authorized Representative.

This product satisfies the Class B limits of EN 55022 and safety requirements of EN 60950.

Products equipped with 2.4GHz Wireless LAN option are in conformity with the protection requirements of EC Council directives 2004/108/EC, 2006/95/EC, 1999/5/EC, and 2009/125/EC on the approximation and harmonization of the laws of the Member States relating to electromagnetic compatibility, safety of electrical equipment designed for use within certain voltage limits and on radio equipment and telecommunications terminal equipment and on the ecodesign of energy-related products.

Compliance is indicated by the CE marking.



Operation is allowed in all EU and EFTA countries, but is restricted to indoor use only.

The manufacturer of this product is: Lexmark International, Inc., 740 West New Circle Road, Lexington, KY, 40550 USA. The authorized representative is: Lexmark International Technology Hungária Kft., 8 Lechner Ödön fasor, Millennium Tower III, 1095 Budapest HUNGARY, A declaration of conformity to the requirements of the Directives is available upon request from the Authorized Representative.

This product may be used in the countries indicated in the table below.

AT	BE	BG	CH	CY	CZ	DE	DK	EE
EL	ES	FI	FR	HR	HU	IE	IS	IT
LI	LT	LU	LV	MT	NL	NO	PL	PT
RO	SE	SI	SK	TR	UK			

Česky	Společnost Lexmark International, Inc. tímto prohlašuje, že výrobek tento výrobek je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.
Dansk	Lexmark International, Inc. erklærer herved, at dette produkt overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Deutsch	Hiermit erklärt Lexmark International, Inc., dass sich das Gerät dieses Gerät in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.
Ελληνική	ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ Η LEXMARK INTERNATIONAL, INC. ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ ΑΥΤΟ ΤΟ ΠΡΟΪΟΝ ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/EK.
English	Hereby, Lexmark International, Inc., declares that this type of equipment is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
Español	Por medio de la presente, Lexmark International, Inc. declara que este producto cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Eesti	Käesolevaga kinnitab Lexmark International, Inc., et seade see toode vastab direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele muudele asjakohastele sätetele.
Suomi	Lexmark International, Inc. vakuuttaa täten, että tämä tuote on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja muiden sitä koskevien direktiivin ehtojen mukainen.
Français	Par la présente, Lexmark International, Inc. déclare que l'appareil ce produit est conforme aux exigences fondamentales et autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.
Magyar	Alulírott, Lexmark International, Inc. nyilatkozom, hogy a termék megfelel a vonatkozó alapvető követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb előírásainak.
Íslenska	Hér með lýsir Lexmark International, Inc. yfir því að þessi vara er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.
Italiano	Con la presente Lexmark International, Inc. dichiara che questo prodotto è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
Latviski	Ar šo Lexmark International, Inc. deklarē, ka šis izstrādājums atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
Lietuvių	Šiuo Lexmark International, Inc. deklaruojama, kad šis produktas atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB direktyvos nuostatas.
Malti	Bil-preżenti, Lexmark International, Inc., jiddikjara li dan il-prodott huwa konformi mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma dispożizzjonijiet oħrajn relevanti li jinsabu fid-Direttiva 1999/5/KE.
Nederlands	Hierbij verklaart Lexmark International, Inc. dat het toestel dit product in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
Norsk	Lexmark International, Inc. erklærer herved at dette produktet er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

Polski	Niniejszym Lexmark International, Inc. oświadcza, że niniejszy produkt jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.
Português	A Lexmark International Inc. declara que este produto está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Diretiva 1999/5/CE.
Slovensky	Lexmark International, Inc. týmto vyhlasuje, že tento produkt spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia smernice 1999/5/ES.
Slovensko	Lexmark International, Inc. izjavlja, da je ta izdelek v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.
Svenska	Härmed intygar Lexmark International, Inc. att denna produkt står i överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.

STATEMENT OF LIMITED WARRANTY FOR LEXMARK LASER PRINTERS, LEXMARK LED PRINTERS, AND LEXMARK MULTIFUNCTION LASER PRINTERS

Lexmark International, Inc., Lexington, KY

This limited warranty applies to the United States and Canada. For customers outside the U.S., refer to the country-specific warranty information that came with your product.

This limited warranty applies to this product only if it was originally purchased for your use, and not for resale, from Lexmark or a Lexmark Remarketer, referred to in this statement as “Remarketer.”

Limited warranty

Lexmark warrants that this product:

- Is manufactured from new parts, or new and serviceable used parts, which perform like new parts
- Is, during normal use, free from defects in material and workmanship

If this product does not function as warranted during the warranty period, contact a Remarketer or Lexmark for repair or replacement (at Lexmark's option).

If this product is a feature or option, this statement applies only when that feature or option is used with the product for which it was intended. To obtain warranty service, you may be required to present the feature or option with the product.

If you transfer this product to another user, warranty service under the terms of this statement is available to that user for the remainder of the warranty period. You should transfer proof of original purchase and this statement to that user.

Limited warranty service

The warranty period starts on the date of original purchase as shown on the purchase receipt and ends 12 months later provided that the warranty period for any supplies and for any maintenance items included with the printer shall end earlier if it, or its original contents, are substantially used up, depleted, or consumed. Fuser Units, Transfer/Transport Units, Paper Feed items, if any, and any other items for which a Maintenance Kit is available are substantially consumed when the printer displays a “Life Warning” or “Scheduled Maintenance” message for such item.

To obtain warranty service you may be required to present proof of original purchase. You may be required to deliver your product to the Remarketer or Lexmark, or ship it prepaid and suitably packaged to a Lexmark designated location. You are responsible for loss of, or damage to, a product in transit to the Remarketer or the Lexmark designated location.

When warranty service involves the exchange of a product or part, the item replaced becomes the property of the Remarketer or Lexmark. The replacement may be a new or repaired item.

The replacement item assumes the remaining warranty period of the original product.

Replacement is not available to you if the product you present for exchange is defaced, altered, in need of a repair not included in warranty service, damaged beyond repair, or if the product is not free of all legal obligations, restrictions, liens, and encumbrances.

As part of your warranty service and/or replacement, Lexmark may update the firmware in your printer to the latest version. Firmware updates may modify printer settings and cause counterfeit and/or unauthorized products, supplies, parts, materials (such as toners and inks), software, or interfaces to stop working. Authorized use of genuine Lexmark products will not be impacted.

Before you present this product for warranty service, remove all print cartridges, programs, data, and removable storage media (unless directed otherwise by Lexmark).

For further explanation of your warranty alternatives and the nearest Lexmark authorized servicer in your area contact Lexmark on the World Wide Web.

Remote technical support is provided for this product throughout its warranty period. For products no longer covered by a Lexmark warranty, technical support may not be available or only be available for a fee.

Extent of limited warranty

Lexmark does not warrant uninterrupted or error-free operation of any product or the durability or longevity of prints produced by any product.

Warranty service does not include repair of failures caused by:

- Modification or unauthorized attachments
- Accidents, misuse, abuse or use inconsistent with Lexmark user's guides, manuals, instructions or guidance
- Unsuitable physical or operating environment
- Maintenance by anyone other than Lexmark or a Lexmark authorized servicer
- Operation of a product beyond the limit of its duty cycle
- Use of printing media outside of Lexmark specifications
- Refurbishment, repair, refilling or remanufacture by a third party of products, supplies or parts
- Products, supplies, parts, materials (such as toners and inks), software, or interfaces not furnished by Lexmark

TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NEITHER LEXMARK NOR ITS THIRD PARTY SUPPLIERS OR REMARKETERS MAKE ANY OTHER WARRANTY OR CONDITION OF ANY KIND, WHETHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, WITH RESPECT TO THIS PRODUCT, AND SPECIFICALLY DISCLAIM THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, AND SATISFACTORY QUALITY. ANY WARRANTIES THAT MAY NOT BE DISCLAIMED UNDER APPLICABLE LAW ARE LIMITED IN DURATION TO THE WARRANTY PERIOD. NO WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, WILL APPLY AFTER THIS PERIOD. ALL INFORMATION, SPECIFICATIONS, PRICES, AND SERVICES ARE SUBJECT TO CHANGE AT ANY TIME WITHOUT NOTICE.

Limitation of liability

Your sole remedy under this limited warranty is set forth in this document. For any claim concerning performance or nonperformance of Lexmark or a Remarketer for this product under this limited warranty, you may recover actual damages up to the limit set forth in the following paragraph.

Lexmark's liability for actual damages from any cause whatsoever will be limited to the amount you paid for the product that caused the damages. This limitation of liability will not apply to claims by you for bodily injury or damage to real property or tangible personal property for which Lexmark is legally liable. **IN NO EVENT WILL LEXMARK BE LIABLE FOR ANY LOST PROFITS, LOST SAVINGS, INCIDENTAL DAMAGE, OR OTHER ECONOMIC OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES.** This is true even if you advise Lexmark or a Remarketer of the possibility of such damages. Lexmark is not liable for any claim by you based on a third party claim.

This limitation of remedies also applies to claims against any Suppliers and Remarketers of Lexmark. Lexmark's and its Suppliers' and Remarketers' limitations of remedies are not cumulative. Such Suppliers and Remarketers are intended beneficiaries of this limitation.

Additional rights

Some states do not allow limitations on how long an implied warranty lasts, or do not allow the exclusion or limitation of incidental or consequential damages, so the limitations or exclusions contained above may not apply to you.

This limited warranty gives you specific legal rights. You may also have other rights that vary from state to state.

Patent acknowledgment

The use of this product or service is subject to the reasonable, non-discriminatory terms in the Intellectual Property Rights (IPR) Disclosure of Certicom Corp. at the IETF for Elliptic Curve Cryptography (ECC) Cipher Suites for Transport Layer Security (TLS) implemented in the product or service.

The use of this product or service is subject to the reasonable, non-discriminatory terms in the Intellectual Property Rights (IPR) Disclosure of Certicom Corp. at the IETF for TLS Elliptic Curve Cipher Suites with SHA-256/382 and AES Galois Counter Mode (GCM) implemented in the product or service.

The use of this product or service is subject to the reasonable, non-discriminatory terms in the Intellectual Property Rights (IPR) Disclosure of Certicom Corp. at the IETF for TLS Suite B Profile for Transport Layer Security (TLS) implemented in the product or service.

The use of this product or service is subject to the reasonable, non-discriminatory terms in the Intellectual Property Rights (IPR) Disclosure of Certicom Corp. at the IETF for Addition of the Camellia Cipher Suites to Transport Layer Security (TLS) implemented in the product or service.

The use of certain patents in this product or service is subject to the reasonable, non-discriminatory terms in the Intellectual Property Rights (IPR) Disclosure of Certicom Corp. at the IETF for AES-CCM ECC Cipher Suites for TLS implemented in the product or service.

The use of this product or service is subject to the reasonable, non-discriminatory terms in the Intellectual Property Rights (IPR) Disclosure of Certicom Corp. at the IETF for IKE and IKEv2 Authentication Using the Elliptic Curve Digital Signature Algorithm (ECDSA) implemented in the product or service.

The use of this product or service is subject to the reasonable, non-discriminatory terms in the Intellectual Property Rights (IPR) Disclosure of Certicom Corp. at the IETF for Suite B Cryptographic Suites for IPsec implemented in the product or service.

The use of this product or service is subject to the reasonable, non-discriminatory terms in the Intellectual Property Rights (IPR) Disclosure of Certicom Corp. at the IETF for Algorithms for Internet Key Exchange version 1 (IKEv1) implemented in the product or service.

Index

Numerics

- 250-sheet tray
 - loading 44
- 550-sheet tray
 - installing 33
 - loading 44
- 650-sheet duo tray
 - installing 33
 - loading 44, 48

Symbols

- [Color] cartridge low [88.xy] 259
- [Color] cartridge nearly low [88.xy] 259
- [Color] cartridge very low, [x] estimated pages remain [88.xy] 259
- [Type] imaging kit low [84.xy] 271
- [Type] imaging kit nearly low [84.xy] 271
- [Type] imaging kit very low, [x] estimated pages remain [84.xy] 271
- [x]-page jam, open front door [20y.xx] 250
- [x]-page jam, open front door to clear fuser [202.xx] 247
- [x]-page jam, clear manual feeder [251.xx] 254
- [x]-page jam, clear multipurpose feeder [250.xx] 254
- [x]-page jam, clear standard bin [203.xx] 244
- [x]-page jam, open automatic feeder top cover. [28y.xx] 256
- [x]-page jam, open front door to clear duplex [23y.xx] 251
- [x]-page jam, open tray [x] [24y.xx] 252

A

- accessing the Embedded Web Server 19
- Active NIC menu 135
- adapter plug 101
- ADF
 - copying using 72

- Adjust ADF Skew
 - copy options 84
 - e-mail options 91
 - fax options 114
 - scan options 122
- adjusting brightness
 - Embedded Web Server 204
 - printer control panel 204
- Adjusting color 258
- adjusting copy quality 77
- adjusting display brightness 204
- adjusting Sleep mode 202
- adjusting toner darkness 65
- administrator settings
 - Embedded Web Server 237
- advanced duplex
 - copy options 82
- advanced imaging
 - copy options 83
 - e-mail options 91
 - fax options 114
 - scan screen 121
- answering machine
 - setting up 94
- AppleTalk menu 140
- applications
 - home screen 20
 - understanding 20
- attaching cables 35
- available internal options 26
- avoiding jams 60
- avoiding paper jams 241

B

- black-and-white printing 64
- blocking junk faxes 111
- buttons, touch screen
 - using 16

C

- cables
 - Ethernet 35
 - USB 35
- cancel button
 - printer control panel 14
- canceling
 - print job, from computer 71
- canceling a copy job 80

- canceling a print job
 - from a computer 71
 - from the printer control panel 71
- canceling an e-mail 89
- cannot open Embedded Web Server 320
- Card Copy
 - setting up 21
- card stock
 - loading 49
 - tips 57
- Change [paper source] to [custom string] 258
- Change [paper source] to [custom type name] 258
- Change [paper source] to [paper type] [paper size] 258
- checking an unresponsive printer 272
- checking status of parts and supplies 213
- checking the status of parts and supplies 213
- checking the virtual display
 - using the Embedded Web Server 237
- cleaning
 - exterior of the printer 211
 - interior of the printer 211
 - scanner glass 212
- cleaning the printer 211
- clear all / reset button
 - printer control panel 14
- Close door 258
- Close flatbed cover and load originals if restarting job [2yy.xx] 259
- collate
 - copy options 81
- collating copies 78
- color quality troubleshooting
 - color of print and color on computer screen do not match 306
 - prints on color transparencies appear dark when projected 305
- color quality, troubleshooting
 - print appears tinted 306

- Complex page, some data may not have printed [39] 259
- confidential data
 - information on securing 210
- confidential jobs
 - modifying print settings 70, 239
- confidential print jobs 68
 - printing from a Macintosh computer 69
 - printing from Windows 69
- Confidential Print menu 144
- Configuration change, some held jobs were not restored [57] 260
- configuration information
 - wireless network 40
- configurations
 - printer 11
- configuring
 - multiple printers 239
 - supply notifications, imaging kit 238
 - supply notifications, maintenance kit 238
 - supply notifications, toner cartridge 238
 - supply notifications, waste toner bottle 238
- configuring supply notifications from the Embedded Web Server 238
- connecting printer to distinctive ring service 105
- connecting to a wireless network
 - using PIN (Personal Identification Number) method 41
 - using Push Button Configuration method 41
 - using the Embedded Web Server 42
 - using wireless setup wizard 41
- conservation settings
 - brightness, adjusting 204
 - Eco-Mode 201
 - Hibernate Mode 203
 - Hibernate Timeout 203
 - Quiet Mode 201
 - Schedule Power Modes 204
 - Sleep Mode 202
- conserving supplies 200
- contacting customer support 322
- content
 - e-mail settings 90
 - content source
 - e-mail settings 90
 - fax options 113
 - content type
 - e-mail settings 90
 - fax options 113
 - control panel, printer
 - indicator light 16
 - Sleep button light 16
 - controller board
 - accessing 27
 - copies
 - copy options 81
 - copy job, canceling
 - using the ADF 80
 - using the scanner glass 80
 - copy options
 - Adjust ADF Skew 84
 - advanced duplex 82
 - advanced imaging 83
 - collate 81
 - copies 81
 - cover page setup 83
 - create booklet 83
 - custom job 83
 - darkness 81
 - header/footer 83
 - overlay 83
 - paper saver 83
 - Save As Shortcut 82
 - separator sheets 83
 - sides (duplex) 81
 - copy quality
 - adjusting 77
 - copy screen
 - content source 82
 - content type 82
 - options 81, 82
 - Copy Settings menu 156
 - copy troubleshooting
 - copier does not respond 307
 - partial document or photo
 - copies 309
 - poor copy quality 308
 - poor scanned image quality 318
 - scanner unit does not close 307, 317
 - copying
 - adding an overlay message 80
 - adjusting quality 77
 - canceling a copy job 80
 - collating copies 78
 - creating shortcuts using the printer control panel 74
 - different paper sizes 75
 - enlarging 76
 - inserting a header or footer 79
 - multiple pages on one sheet 79
 - on both sides of the paper (duplexing) 76
 - on letterhead 74
 - on transparencies 73
 - photos 73
 - placing separator sheets between copies 78
 - quick copy 72
 - reducing 76
 - selecting a tray 75
 - to a different size 74
 - using the ADF 72
 - using the scanner glass 73
 - copying different paper sizes 75
 - copying multiple pages on one sheet 79
 - copying on both sides of the paper (duplexing) 76
 - copying on letterhead 74
 - copying on transparencies 73
 - cover page setup
 - copy options 83
 - create booklet
 - copy options 83
 - creating a fax destination shortcut using the Embedded Web Server 109
 - creating an FTP shortcut using the Embedded Web Server 115
 - creating custom name
 - paper type 52
 - custom job
 - copy options 83
 - e-mail options 91
 - fax options 114
 - scan options 121
 - custom name
 - configuring 53
 - Custom Names menu 133
 - custom paper type name
 - assigning 53
 - Custom Scan Sizes menu 133
 - Custom Type [x]
 - changing paper type 53
 - creating custom name 52

Custom Types menu 133

customer support
contacting 322

D

darkness

- copy options 81
- e-mail options 90
- fax options 112
- scan options 120

date and time, fax
setting 106

daylight saving time, setting 106

Default Source menu 125

Defective flash detected [51] 260

delayed send

- fax options 114

developer unit

- replacing 220, 229

device and network settings

information

- erasing 208

different paper sizes, copying 75

Digital Subscriber Line (DSL)

- fax setup 98

digital telephone service

- fax setup 100

directory list

- printing 70

Disk full 62 260

Disk must be formatted for use in
this device 260

disk wiping 209

display

- printer control panel 14

display troubleshooting

- printer display is blank 274

display, printer control panel

- adjusting brightness 204

disposing of printer hard disk 207

distinctive ring service, fax

- connecting to 105

documents, printing

- from Macintosh 64

- from Windows 64

DSL filter 98

duplexing 76

E

Eco-Mode setting 201

edge erase

- e-mail options 91

- fax options 114

- scan options 121

embedded solutions information

- erasing 208

Embedded Web Server 238

- accessing 19

- administrator settings 237

- checking the status of parts 213

- checking the status of

 - supplies 213

- copying settings to other

 - printers 239

- creating a fax destination

 - shortcut 109

- creating an FTP shortcut 115

- creating e-mail shortcuts 85

- initial fax setup 93

- modifying confidential print

 - settings 70, 239

- networking settings 237

- problem accessing 320

- scanning to a computer using 117

- setting up e-mail alerts 237

Embedded Web Server

Administrator's Guide

- where to find 210

Embedded Web Server — Security:

Administrator's Guide

- where to find 237

emission

notices 325, 328, 329, 330, 332,
335

encrypting the printer hard

disk 209

enlarging a copy 76

envelopes

- loading 47, 49

- tips on using 56

environmental settings 200

- display brightness, adjusting 204

- Eco-Mode 201

- Hibernate Mode 203

- Hibernate Timeout 203

- Quiet Mode 201

- Schedule Power Modes 204

- Sleep Mode 202

Erase Temporary Data Files

menu 145

erasing hard disk memory 209

erasing non-volatile memory 208

erasing volatile memory 208

Error reading USB drive. Remove
USB. 260

Error reading USB hub. Remove
hub. 260

Ethernet network

- preparing to set up for Ethernet
printing 38

Ethernet network setup

- using Macintosh 38

- using Windows 38

Ethernet networking

- Macintosh 38

- Windows 38

Ethernet port 35

Ethernet setup

- preparing for an 38

exporting a configuration

- using the Embedded Web

 - Server 24

EXT port 35

exterior of the printer

- cleaning 211

e-mail

- canceling 89

e-mail alerts

- low supply levels 237

- paper jam 237

- setting up 237

e-mail function

- setting up 85

e-mail options

- Adjust ADF Skew 91

- advanced imaging 91

- custom job 91

- darkness 90

- edge erase 91

- message 89

- original size 89

- page setup 91

- recipient(s) 89

- resolution 90

- Save As Shortcut 89

- send as 90

- subject 89

- transmission log 91

e-mail screen

- options 89, 90, 91

E-mail Settings menu 171

e-mail shortcuts, creating

- using the Embedded Web

 - Server 85

- e-mail, sending
 - using a shortcut number 87
 - using the address book 87
- e-mailing
 - adding message line 88
 - adding subject line 88
 - changing output file type 88
 - creating shortcuts using the Embedded Web Server 85
 - creating shortcuts using the printer control panel 86
 - setting up e-mail function 85
 - using a shortcut number 87
 - using the address book 87
 - using the printer control panel 86

F

- factory defaults
 - restoring 239
- FAQ about color printing 303
- fax
 - sending 107
 - sending using the printer control panel 106
- fax and e-mail functions
 - setting up 314
- fax and e-mail functions are not set up 314
- fax log
 - viewing 110
- Fax Mode (Analog Fax Setup) menu 161
- Fax Mode (Fax Server Setup) menu 169
- fax name, setting 105
- fax number, setting 105
- fax options
 - Adjust ADF Skew 114
 - advanced imaging 114
 - content source 113
 - content type 113
 - custom job 114
 - darkness 112
 - delayed send 114
 - edge erase 114
 - page setup 113
 - resolution 113
 - scan preview 114
 - transmission log 114
- fax screen
 - options 113

- fax setup
 - country- or region-specific 101
 - digital telephone service 100
 - DSL connection 98
 - standard telephone line connection 94
 - VoIP 99
- fax troubleshooting
 - caller ID is not shown 310
 - can receive but not send faxes 313
 - can send but not receive faxes 313
 - cannot send or receive a fax 310
 - received fax has poor print quality 315
- faxing
 - blocking junk faxes 111
 - canceling a fax job 111
 - changing resolution 110
 - configuring the printer to observe daylight saving time 106
 - creating shortcuts using the Embedded Web Server 109
 - creating shortcuts using the printer control panel 109
 - distinctive ring service 105
- fax setup 93
- forwarding faxes 112
- holding faxes 111
- making a fax lighter or darker 110
- sending a fax at a scheduled time 108
- setting the date and time 106
- setting the fax number 105
- setting the outgoing fax name 105
- viewing a fax log 110

FCC notices 328, 330, 335

- file name
 - scan options 119
- finding more information about the printer 9
- finding printer IP address 19
- Finishing menu 186
- firmware card 26
- flash drive
 - printing from 66
- flash drives
 - supported file types 67
- font sample list
 - printing 70

- footer
 - inserting 79
- Forms and Favorites
 - setting up 20
- forwarding faxes 112
- FTP address
 - creating shortcuts using the printer control panel 116
- FTP options 119
- FTP address, scanning to
 - using a shortcut number 116
 - using the printer control panel 116
- FTP options
 - FTP address 119
- FTP screen
 - options 120
- FTP Settings menu 176

G

- General Settings menu 147
- green settings
 - Eco-Mode 201
 - Hibernate Mode 203
 - Hibernate Timeout 203
 - Quiet Mode 201
 - Schedule Power Modes 204

H

- header
 - inserting 79
- header/footer
 - copy options 83
- held jobs 68
 - printing from a Macintosh computer 69
 - printing from Windows 69
- Help menu 198
- Hibernate Mode
 - using 203
- Hibernate Timeout
 - setting 203
- hiding icons on the home screen 19
- holding faxes 111
- home button
 - printer control panel 14
- home screen
 - buttons, understanding 14
 - customizing 19
 - hiding icons 19
 - showing icons 19

- home screen applications
 - configuring 20
 - finding information 20
- home screen buttons
 - understanding 14
- HTML menu 197

I

- icons on the home screen
 - hiding 19
 - showing 19
- Image menu 198
- imaging kit
 - replacing 220
- imaging kits
 - ordering 215
- importing a configuration
 - using the Embedded Web Server 24
- Incompatible tray [x] [59] 260
- Incorrect paper size, open [paper source] [34] 261
- indicator light
 - printer control panel 14
- individual settings information
 - erasing 208
- initial fax setup 93
 - using the Embedded Web Server 93
- Insert Tray [x] 261
- inserting a header or footer 79
- installing an optional card 31
- installing options
 - order of installation 32
- installing printer on a network
 - Ethernet networking 38
- installing printer software
 - adding options 37
- installing printer software (Windows) 36
- Insufficient memory for Flash Memory Defragment operation [37] 261
- Insufficient memory to collate job [37] 261
- Insufficient memory to support Resource Save feature [35] 261
- Insufficient memory, some Held Jobs were deleted [37] 261
- Insufficient memory, some held jobs will not be restored [37] 262

- interior of the printer
 - cleaning 211
- internal options 26
- IP address of computer
 - finding 18
- IP address, printer
 - finding 19
- IPv6 menu 139

J

- jams
 - avoiding 241
 - locating doors and trays 242
 - locations 242
 - messages 242
- jams, clearing
 - in automatic document feeder top cover 256
 - in fuser area 247
 - in manual feeder 254
 - in multipurpose feeder 254
 - in standard bin 244
 - Tray 1 252
 - Tray 2 252
- Job Accounting menu 191

K

- keypad
 - printer control panel 14

L

- labels, paper
 - tips 56
- letterhead
 - copying on 74
 - loading, multipurpose feeder 54
 - loading, trays 54
- line filter 98
- LINE port 35
- linking trays 51, 53
- Load [paper source] with [custom string] 262
- Load [paper source] with [custom type name] 262
- Load [paper source] with [paper size] 262
- Load [paper source] with [paper type] [paper size] 263
- Load Manual Feeder with [custom string] 263

- Load Manual Feeder with [custom type name] 263
- Load Manual Feeder with [paper size] 263
- Load Manual Feeder with [paper type] [paper size] 263
- loading
 - 250-sheet tray 44
 - 550-sheet tray 44
 - 650-sheet duo tray 44, 48
 - card stock 49
 - envelopes 47, 49
 - manual feeder 47
 - multipurpose feeder 49
 - transparencies 49
- loading letterhead
 - paper orientation 54
- lock, security 207

M

- maintenance kit
 - ordering 215
- Maintenance kit low [80.xy] 264
- Maintenance kit nearly low [80.xy] 264
- Maintenance kit very low, [x] estimated pages remain [80.xy] 264
- making copies using paper from selected tray 75
- manual feeder
 - loading 47
- Max Speed and Max Yield
 - using 65
- memory
 - types installed on printer 207
- memory card 26
 - installing 29
 - troubleshooting 276
- Memory full [38] 264
- menu settings
 - loading on multiple printers 239
- menu settings page
 - printing 43
- menus
 - Active NIC 135
 - AppleTalk 140
 - Confidential Print 144
 - Copy Settings 156
 - Custom Names 133
 - Custom Scan Sizes 133
 - Custom Types 133

- Default Source 125
- diagram of 123
- Erase Temporary Data Files 145
- E-mail Settings 171
- Fax Mode (Analog Fax Setup) 161
- Fax Mode (Fax Server Setup) 169
- Finishing 186
- FTP Settings 176
- General Settings 147
- Help 198
- HTML 197
- Image 198
- IPv6 139
- Job Accounting 191
- Miscellaneous 144
- Network [x] 135
- Network Card 137
- Network Reports 137
- Paper Loading 131
- Paper Size/Type 125
- Paper Texture 128
- Paper Weight 130
- PCL Emul 194
- PDF 193
- PostScript 193
- Print Settings 183
- Quality 188
- Reports 134
- Scan Settings 180
- Security Audit Log 146
- Set Date and Time 146
- Setup 185
- SMTP Setup menu 142
- Standard Network 135
- Standard USB 141
- Substitute Size 128
- Supplies 124
- TCP/IP 138
- Universal Setup 134
- Utilities 192
- Wireless 139
- XPS 193
- message
 - e-mail options 89
- Miscellaneous menu 144
- mobile device
 - printing from 68
- moving the printer 10, 235
- Multi Send
 - adding a profile 22
 - setting up 22

- multipurpose feeder
 - loading 49
- MyShortcut
 - about 22

N

- Network [x] menu 135
- Network [x] software error [54] 264
- Network Card menu 137
- Network Reports menu 137
- network settings
 - Embedded Web Server 237
- network setup page
 - printing 43
- Networking Guide
 - where to find 237
- noise emission levels 325
- Non-Lexmark [color] [supply type], see User's Guide [33.xy] 265
- non-volatile memory 207
 - erasing 208
- Not enough free space in flash memory for resources [52] 265
- notices 324, 325, 326, 327, 328, 329, 330, 331, 332, 333, 334, 335
- number of remaining pages
 - estimate 213

O

- optional card
 - installing 31
- options
 - 550-sheet tray 33
 - 650-sheet duo tray 33
 - firmware cards 26
 - memory card 29
 - memory cards 26
 - updating in printer driver 37
- options, copy screen
 - copy from 81
 - edge erase 82
 - margin shift 82
 - scale 81
- options, touch-screen
 - copy 81, 82
 - e-mail 89, 90, 91
 - fax 113
 - FTP 120
- ordering
 - imaging kits 215
 - maintenance kit 215
 - toner cartridges 214
 - waste toner bottle 216
- original size
 - e-mail options 89
 - scan options 120
- output file type
 - changing 88
- overlay
 - copy options 83

P

- page setup
 - e-mail options 91
 - fax options 113
 - scan options 121
- paper
 - characteristics 57
 - different sizes, copying 75
 - letterhead 59
 - preprinted forms 59
 - recycled 59, 200
 - saving 79
 - selecting 58
 - storing 60
 - unacceptable 58
 - Universal size setting 44
- paper feed troubleshooting
 - message remains after jam is cleared 278
- paper jams
 - avoiding 241
- paper jams, clearing
 - [x]-page jam, open front door [20y.xx] 250
 - [x]-page jam, open front door to clear fuser [202.xx] 247
 - [x]-page jam, open front door to clear duplex [23y.xx] 251
- in automatic document feeder top cover 256
- in fuser area 247
- in manual feeder 254
- in multipurpose feeder 254
- in standard bin 244
- Tray 1 252
- Tray 2 252

- Paper Loading menu 131
- paper saver
 - copy options 83
- paper size
 - setting 44

- Paper Size/Type menu 125
- paper sizes
 - supported by the printer 60
- Paper Texture menu 128
- paper type
 - setting 44
- paper types
 - supported by printer 62
 - where to load 62
- Paper Weight menu 130
- paper weights
 - supported by printer 62
- parts
 - checking status 213
 - checking, on the printer control panel 213
 - checking, using the Embedded Web Server 213
 - using genuine Lexmark 214
- PCL Emul menu 194
- PDF menu 193
- Personal Identification Number method
 - using 41
- phone splitter 99
- photos
 - copying 73
- placing separator sheets between copies 78
- PostScript menu 193
- power cord socket 35
- preparing to set up the printer on an Ethernet network 38
- print irregularities 291
- print job
 - canceling, from computer 71
- print quality
 - cleaning the scanner glass 212
 - replacing a developer unit 229
 - replacing imaging kit 220
 - replacing the waste toner bottle 216
- print quality troubleshooting
 - blank pages 294
 - characters have jagged edges 286
 - clipped pages or images 286
 - gray background on prints 287
 - horizontal voids appear on prints 288
 - print irregularities 291
 - print is too dark 292
 - print is too light 293
 - printer is printing solid black pages 295
 - repeating print defects 296
 - shadow images appear on prints 296
 - skewed print 297
 - streaked horizontal lines appear on prints 298
 - streaked vertical lines appear on prints 299
 - toner fog or background shading appears on prints 300
 - toner rubs off 301
 - toner specks appear on prints 301
 - transparency print quality is poor 302
 - uneven print density 302
 - vertical voids appear on prints 302
- Print Settings menu 183
- print troubleshooting
 - error reading flash drive 280
 - held jobs do not print 279
 - incorrect characters print 280
 - incorrect margins on prints 289
 - jammed pages are not reprinted 277
 - job prints from wrong tray 281
 - job prints on wrong paper 281
 - jobs do not print 283
 - Large jobs do not collate 281
 - multiple-language PDF files do not print 282
 - paper curl 290
 - paper frequently jams 277
 - print job takes longer than expected 284
 - printing slows down 282
 - tray linking does not work 285
 - unexpected page breaks occur 285
- printer
 - configurations 11
 - minimum clearances 10
 - models 11
 - moving 10, 235
 - selecting a location 10
 - shipping 236
- printer control panel
 - factory defaults, restoring 239
 - indicator light 16
 - Sleep button light 16
 - using 14
- printer control panel, virtual display
 - using the Embedded Web Server 237
- printer hard disk
 - disposing of 207
 - encrypting 209
 - wiping 209
- printer hard disk encryption 209
- printer hard disk memory
 - erasing 209
- printer information
 - where to find 9
- printer IP address
 - finding 19
- printer is printing blank pages 294
- printer messages
 - [Color] cartridge low [88.xy] 259
 - [Color] cartridge nearly low [88.xy] 259
 - [Color] cartridge very low, [x] estimated pages remain [88.xy] 259
 - [Type] imaging kit low [84.xy] 271
 - [Type] imaging kit nearly low [84.xy] 271
 - [Type] imaging kit very low, [x] estimated pages remain [84.xy] 271
 - [x]-page jam, clear manual feeder [251.xx] 254
 - [x]-page jam, clear multipurpose feeder [250.xx] 254
 - [x]-page jam, clear standard bin [203.xx] 244
 - [x]-page jam, open automatic feeder top cover. [28y.xx] 256
 - [x]-page jam, open tray [x] [24y.xx] 252
- Adjusting color 258
- Change [paper source] to [custom string] 258
- Change [paper source] to [custom type name] 258
- Change [paper source] to [paper type] [paper size] 258
- Close door 258
- Close flatbed cover and load originals if restarting job [2yy.xx] 259

- Complex page, some data may not have printed [39] 259
- Configuration change, some held jobs were not restored [57] 260
- Defective flash detected [51] 260
- Disk full 62 260
- Disk must be formatted for use in this device 260
- Error reading USB drive. Remove USB. 260
- Error reading USB hub. Remove hub. 260
- Incompatible tray [x] [59] 260
- Incorrect paper size, open [paper source] [34] 261
- Insert Tray [x] 261
- Insufficient memory for Flash Memory Defragment operation [37] 261
- Insufficient memory to collate job [37] 261
- Insufficient memory to support Resource Save feature [35] 261
- Insufficient memory, some Held Jobs were deleted [37] 261
- Insufficient memory, some held jobs will not be restored [37] 262
- Load [paper source] with [custom string] 262
- Load [paper source] with [custom type name] 262
- Load [paper source] with [paper size] 262
- Load [paper source] with [paper type] [paper size] 263
- Load Manual Feeder with [custom string] 263
- Load Manual Feeder with [custom type name] 263
- Load Manual Feeder with [paper size] 263
- Load Manual Feeder with [paper type] [paper size] 263
- Maintenance kit low [80.xy] 264
- Maintenance kit nearly low [80.xy] 264
- Maintenance kit very low, [x] estimated pages remain [80.xy] 264
- Memory full [38] 264
- Network [x] software error [54] 264
- Non-Lexmark [color] [supply type], see User's Guide [33.xy] 265
- Not enough free space in flash memory for resources [52] 265
- Reinstall missing or unresponsive [color] cartridge [31.xy] 265
- Reload printed pages in Tray [x] 266
- Remove defective disk [61] 267
- Remove packaging material, [area name] 266
- Remove paper from standard output bin 266
- Replace [color] cartridge, 0 estimated pages remain [88.xy] 266
- Replace [color] cartridge, printer region mismatch [42.xy] 266
- Replace [type] imaging kit, 0 estimated pages remain [84.xy] 267
- Replace all originals if restarting job. 267
- Replace defective [color] cartridge [31.xy] 267
- Replace defective [type] imaging kit [31.xy] 267
- Replace jammed originals if restarting job. 268
- Replace maintenance kit, 0 estimated pages remain [80.xy] 268
- Replace missing [color] cartridge [31.xy] 268
- Replace missing [type] imaging kit [31.xy] 268
- Replace missing or unresponsive [type] imaging kit [31.xy] 265
- Replace missing waste toner bottle [82.xy] 268
- Replace unsupported [color] cartridge [32.xy] 268
- Replace unsupported [type] imaging kit [32.xy] 269
- Replace waste toner bottle [82.xy] 269
- Restore held jobs? 269
- Scanner automatic feeder cover open 269
- Scanner disabled by admin [840.01] 269
- Scanner disabled. Contact system administrator if problem persists. [840.02] 269
- Scanner jam, remove all originals from the scanner [2yy.xx] 269
- Scanner jam, remove jammed originals from the scanner [2yy.xx] 269
- SMTp server not set up. Contact system administrator. 270
- Some held jobs were not restored 270
- Standard network software error [54] 270
- Standard USB port disabled [56] 270
- Supply needed to complete job 270
- Too many flash options installed [58] 271
- Too many trays attached [58] 271
- Unformatted flash detected [53] 272
- Unsupported USB hub, please remove 260
- Waste toner bottle nearly full [82.xy] 272
- Weblink server not set up. Contact system administrator. 272
- printer options troubleshooting internal option is not detected 275
- memory card 276
- tray problems 276
- printer problems, solving basic 272
- printer security information on 210
- printer software, installing (Windows) 36
- printing
- black-and-white 64
 - canceled, from printer control panel 71
 - directory list 70
 - font sample list 70
 - forms 64
 - from a mobile device 68
 - from flash drive 66
 - from Macintosh 64
 - from Windows 64

- Max Speed and Max Yield 65
- menu settings page 43
- network setup page 43
- printing a directory list 70
- printing a document 64
- printing a font sample list 70
- printing a menu settings page 43
- printing a network setup page 43
- printing confidential and other held jobs
 - from a Macintosh computer 69
 - from Windows 69
- printing forms 64
- printing from a flash drive 66
- printing from a mobile device 68
- printing in black and white 64
- publications
 - where to find 9
- Push Button Configuration method using 41

Q

- Quality menu 188
- Quiet Mode 201

R

- recipient(s)
 - e-mail options 89
- recycled paper
 - using 59, 200
- recycling
 - Lexmark packaging 205
 - Lexmark products 205
 - toner cartridges 205
- reducing a copy 76
- reducing noise 201
- Reinstall missing or unresponsive [color] cartridge [31.xy] 265
- Reload printed pages in Tray [x] 266
- remaining pages, number of
 - estimate 213
- Remote Operator Panel
 - setting up 24
- Remove defective disk [61] 267
- Remove packaging material, [area name] 266
- Remove paper from standard output bin 266

- repeat print jobs 68
 - printing from a Macintosh computer 69
 - printing from Windows 69
- repeating print defects 296
- Replace [color] cartridge, 0 estimated pages remain [88.xy] 266
- Replace [color] cartridge, printer region mismatch [42.xy] 266
- Replace [type] imaging kit, 0 estimated pages remain [84.xy] 267
- Replace all originals if restarting job. 267
- Replace defective [color] cartridge [31.xy] 267
- Replace defective [type] imaging kit [31.xy] 267
- Replace jammed originals if restarting job. 268
- Replace maintenance kit, 0 estimated pages remain [80.xy] 268
- Replace missing [color] cartridge [31.xy] 268
- Replace missing [type] imaging kit [31.xy] 268
- Replace missing or unresponsive [type] imaging kit [31.xy] 265
- Replace missing waste toner bottle [82.xy] 268
- Replace unsupported [color] cartridge [32.xy] 268
- Replace unsupported [type] imaging kit [32.xy] 269
- Replace waste toner bottle [82.xy] 269
- reports
 - viewing 237
- Reports menu 134
- reserve print jobs
 - printing from a Macintosh computer 69
 - printing from Windows 69
- resolution
 - e-mail options 90
 - fax options 113
 - scan options 120
- resolution, fax
 - changing 110
- Restore held jobs? 269

- restoring factory default settings 239
- RJ-11 adapter 101

S

- safety information 7, 8
- Save As Shortcut
 - copy options 82
 - e-mail options 89
 - scan options 120
- saving paper 79
- scan options
 - Adjust ADF Skew 122
 - custom job 121
 - darkness 120
 - edge erase 121
 - file name 119
 - original size 120
 - page setup 121
 - resolution 120
 - Save As Shortcut 120
 - Scan Preview 121
 - send as 120
 - transmission log 121
- Scan Preview
 - scan options 121
- scan preview
 - fax options 114
- scan screen
 - advanced imaging 121
 - content source 120
 - content type 120
- Scan Settings menu 180
- Scan to Computer
 - setting up 118
- Scan to Network
 - setting up 23
 - using 115
- scan troubleshooting
 - cannot scan from a computer 319
 - partial document or photo scans 319
 - scan job was not successful 317
 - scanner unit does not
 - close 307, 317
 - scanning takes too long or freezes the computer 318
- scanner
 - automatic document feeder (ADF) 13
 - functions 12
 - scanner glass 13

- Scanner automatic feeder cover open 269
- Scanner disabled by admin [840.01] 269
- Scanner disabled. Contact system administrator if problem persists. [840.02] 269
- scanner glass
 - cleaning 212
 - copying using 73
- Scanner jam, remove all originals from the scanner [2yy.xx] 269
- Scanner jam, remove jammed originals from the scanner [2yy.xx] 269
- scanning
 - from a flash drive 119
 - quick copy 72
 - to a computer 118
 - to a computer using the Embedded Web Server 117
- scanning to a computer 118
 - using the Embedded Web Server 117
- scanning to a flash drive 119
- scanning to an FTP address
 - creating shortcuts using the computer 115
 - using a shortcut number 116
 - using the printer control panel 116
- scanning to network destinations 115
- Schedule Power Modes using 204
- security
 - modifying confidential print settings 70, 239
- Security Audit Log menu 146
- security lock 207
- security lock port 35
- security settings information erasing 208
- security Web page
 - where to find 210
- selecting a location for the printer 10
- selecting paper 58
- send as
 - e-mail options 90
 - scan options 120
- sending a fax 107
 - control panel 106
- sending an e-mail using the printer control panel 86
- sending fax
 - using shortcuts 107
 - using the address book 108
- sending fax at a scheduled time 108
- separator sheets
 - copy options 83
- Set Date and Time menu 146
- setting
 - paper size 44
 - paper type 44
 - TCP/IP address 138
- setting Hibernate Timeout 203
- setting the fax number 105
- setting the outgoing fax name 105
- setting the Universal paper size 44
- setting up e-mail alerts 237
- setting up fax
 - country- or region-specific 101
 - digital telephone service 100
 - DSL connection 98
 - standard telephone line connection 94
 - VoIP connection 99
- setting up fax and e-mail functions 314
- setting up the printer
 - on an Ethernet network (Macintosh only) 38
 - on an Ethernet network (Windows only) 38
- Setup menu 185
- shipping the printer 236
- shortcuts, creating
 - copy screen 74
 - e-mail 85
 - e-mail screen 86
 - fax destination 109
 - FTP address 116
 - FTP destination 115
- showing icons on the home screen 19
- sides (duplex)
 - copy options 81
- sleep button
 - printer control panel 14
- Sleep Mode
 - adjusting 202
- SMTP server not set up. Contact system administrator. 270
- SMTP Setup menu 142
- Some held jobs were not restored 270
- Standard Network menu 135
- Standard network software error [54] 270
- standard tray
 - loading 44
- Standard USB menu 141
- Standard USB port disabled [56] 270
- start button
 - printer control panel 14
- statement of volatility 207
- status of parts
 - checking 213
- status of supplies
 - checking 213
- storing
 - paper 60
 - supplies 211
- storing print jobs 68
- streaked horizontal lines appear on prints 298
- streaked vertical lines appear on prints 299
- subject and message information
 - adding to e-mail 88
- Substitute Size menu 128
- supplies
 - checking status 213
 - checking, on the printer control panel 213
 - checking, using the Embedded Web Server 213
 - conserving 200
 - storing 211
 - using genuine Lexmark 214
 - using recycled paper 200
- Supplies menu 124
- supplies, ordering
 - imaging kits 215
 - maintenance kit 215
 - toner cartridges 214
 - waste toner bottle 216
- Supply needed to complete job 270
- supply notifications
 - configuring 238
- supported flash drives 67

T

TCP/IP menu 138
telecommunication
 notices 330, 331, 333, 334
 the scanner does not respond 316
tips
 card stock 57
 labels, paper 56
 on using envelopes 56
 on using letterhead 54
 transparencies 56
tips on using envelopes 56
tips on using letterhead 54
toner cartridges
 ordering 214
 recycling 205
 replacing 227
toner darkness
 adjusting 65
Too many flash options installed [58] 271
Too many trays attached [58] 271
touch screen
 buttons 16
transmission log
 e-mail options 91
 fax options 114
 scan options 121
transparencies
 copying on 73
 loading 49
 tips on using 56
trays
 linking 51, 53
 unlinking 51, 53
troubleshooting
 an application error has occurred 320
 cannot open Embedded Web Server 320
 checking an unresponsive printer 272
 contacting customer support 322
 FAQ about color printing 303
 fax and e-mail functions are not set up 314
 solving basic printer problems 272
 the scanner does not respond 316

troubleshooting, color quality
 color of print and color on computer screen do not match 306
 print appears tinted 306
 prints on color transparencies appear dark when projected 305
troubleshooting, copy
 copier does not respond 307
 partial document or photo copies 309
 poor copy quality 308
 poor scanned image quality 318
 scanner unit does not close 307, 317
troubleshooting, display
 printer display is blank 274
troubleshooting, fax
 caller ID is not shown 310
 can receive but not send faxes 313
 can send but not receive faxes 313
 cannot send or receive a fax 310
 received fax has poor print quality 315
troubleshooting, paper feed
 message remains after jam is cleared 278
troubleshooting, print
 error reading flash drive 280
 held jobs do not print 279
 incorrect characters print 280
 incorrect margins on prints 289
 jammed pages are not reprinted 277
 job prints from wrong tray 281
 job prints on wrong paper 281
 jobs do not print 283
 Large jobs do not collate 281
 multiple-language PDF files do not print 282
 paper curl 290
 paper frequently jams 277
 print job takes longer than expected 284
 printing slows down 282
 tray linking does not work 285
 unexpected page breaks occur 285
troubleshooting, print quality
 blank pages 294

 characters have jagged edges 286
 clipped pages or images 286
 gray background on prints 287
 horizontal voids appear on prints 288
 print irregularities 291
 print is too dark 292
 print is too light 293
 printer is printing solid black pages 295
 repeating print defects 296
 shadow images appear on prints 296
 skewed print 297
 streaked horizontal lines appear on prints 298
 streaked vertical lines appear on prints 299
 toner fog or background shading appears on prints 300
 toner rubs off 301
 toner specks appear on prints 301
 transparency print quality is poor 302
 uneven print density 302
 vertical voids appear on prints 302
troubleshooting, printer options
 internal option is not detected 275
 memory card 276
 tray problems 276
troubleshooting, scan
 cannot scan from a computer 319
 partial document or photo scans 319
 scan job was not successful 317
 scanner unit does not close 307, 317
 scanning takes too long or freezes the computer 318

U

understanding the home screen 14
uneven print density 302
Unformatted flash detected [53] 272
Universal Paper Size setting 44
Universal Setup menu 134
unlinking trays 51, 53

- Unsupported USB hub, please remove 260
- updating options in printer driver 37
- USB port 35
 - printer control panel 14
- using a shortcut number
 - scanning to an FTP address 116
- using Forms and Favorites 64
- using Hibernate Mode 203
- using Max Speed and Max Yield 65
- using Schedule Power Modes 204
- using shortcuts
 - sending fax 107
- using the address book
 - sending fax 108
- using the touch-screen buttons 16
- Utilities menu 192

V

- verify print jobs 68
 - printing from a Macintosh computer 69
 - printing from Windows 69
- vertical voids appear on prints 302
- viewing
 - reports 237
- viewing a fax log 110
- virtual display
 - checking, using Embedded Web Server 237
- voice mail
 - setting up 94
- Voice over Internet Protocol (VoIP)
 - fax setup 99
- VoIP adapter 99
- volatile memory 207
 - erasing 208
- volatility
 - statement of 207

W

- waste toner bottle
 - ordering 216
 - replacing 216
- Waste toner bottle nearly full [82.xy] 272
- Weblink server not set up. Contact system administrator. 272
- wiping the printer hard disk 209
- Wireless menu 139

- wireless network
 - configuration information 40
- wireless network setup
 - using the Embedded Web Server 42
- wireless setup wizard
 - using 41

X

- XPS menu 193